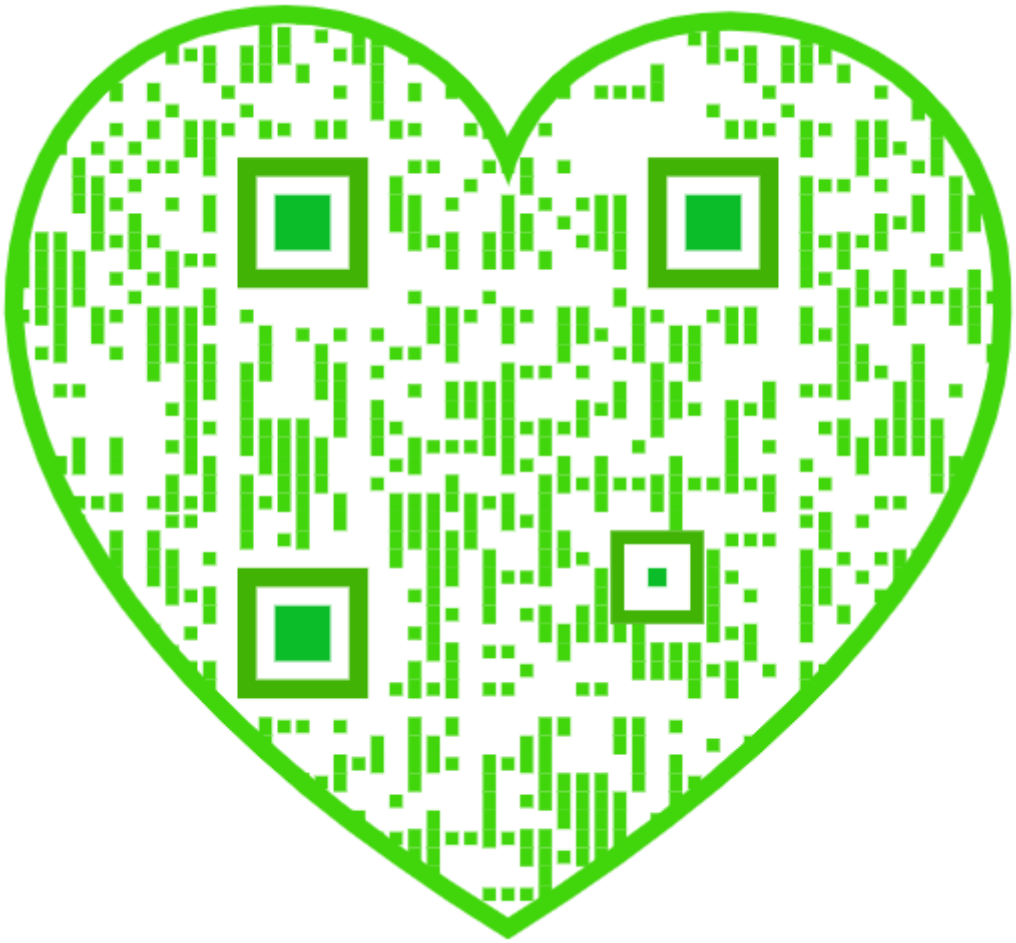


Class D103
Book H24
Copyright No.

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

QUEEN ELIZABETH

Behind her is busy, prosperous England with its encircling sea and its flying ships

OUR ANCESTORS IN EUROPE

AN INTRODUCTION TO AMERICAN HISTORY

BY

JENNIE HALL

FRANCIS W. PARKER SCHOOL, CHICAGO

EDITED BY

J. MONTGOMERY GAMBRILL

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF HISTORY, TEACHERS COLLEGE
COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

AND

LIDA LEE TALL

SUPERVISOR OF GRAMMAR GRADES, PUBLIC SCHOOLS
BALTIMORE COUNTY, MD.

SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

JI103
.H24

Copyright, 1916,
By SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

$0 75
JUN -7 1916

©CLA431410
no. 1.

INTRODUCTION

It is still generally admitted that the most important history for every child is that of his own country, but happily the old narrow conception of the American story as a thing apart from the rest of the world seems to be rapidly passing. The roots of American civilization are in Europe. Our beginnings and early development form a part of one of the most far-reaching changes of history: the expansion of Europe beyond the ancient limits of the Mediterranean world, the discovery of the American continents, the opening of direct sea routes to India and the far East, the commercial revolution, the first stages of the Europeanization of the world. Only in this larger setting can the history of the United States become really intelligible. If we are to understand our own country and how it came to be what it is, we must know something of the story of our ancestors in Europe and of the heritage we have received from them.

It was to serve the purpose of such an introduction to American history that the present volume was planned. The general field and larger topics have been chosen to meet the requirements for the sixth grade prescribed by the Committee of Eight of the American Historical Association, while that freedom in the choice and treatment of details which the Committee itself so wisely urges, has been exercised. The book may also serve its purpose apart from the Committee's course in any of the grammar grades or early years of the "junior high school."

Among the original proposals of the editors were the following: a special effort to combine historical accuracy with attractive style and adaptation to the understanding of children; concreteness of treatment with adequate detail for clear

visualization and the consequent sense of reality; vivid characterization of persons; the type-study idea; careful attention to the inter-relations of events and the concept of change in institutions and ways of living. As one important aid in realizing these aims it was suggested that the children be allowed to make the acquaintance of some of the most interesting contemporary writers. The words of Herodotus and Cæsar, of Einhard and Roger of Wendover, of Chaucer and Piers the Plowman, of Columbus and Hakluyt, have a unique interest and a value that no effort of the modern writer can replace. Such material Miss Hall has succeeded with remarkable skill in weaving smoothly into her story. Moreover, these old writings, the pictures drawn by people of ancient and medieval times, and the photographs of material remains, supply within the covers of this volume ready means for presenting simply and naturally the idea of evidence and of how historical knowledge is obtained.

Author and editors agree in dissenting strongly from the theory that the way to be simple is to be brief. Probably the chief vice of history textbooks has been the tendency to epitomize, to indulge in sweeping generalizations, to mislead through over-compactness. This book is accordingly somewhat longer than is usual, but in no sense heavier; on the contrary, it is more interesting and easier to study because the topics are limited in number, and sufficient space has been allowed to treat them clearly and vividly.

Miss Hall has given to her task not only several years of painstaking labor and the consideration of much searching criticism, but her rare skill as a teacher of children, her unusual gifts as a teller of stories, and the experience of travel in Greece and Italy. She has produced a book of distinctive character, one which children will read with pleasure as well as with profit and teachers will welcome as a contribution to the study of history in the grades.

J. MONTGOMERY GAMBRILL

TO TEACHERS

"HAVE we always been what we are?" "Why are we so like Europeans and unlike Chinamen?" "Men and animals grow; does civilization grow?" "Before America what was there?" Thoughtful children ask themselves such questions. Less thoughtful ones ought to be led to ask them. The inquiring attitude of mind, the question formed on the lips or in the brain, are the necessary preludes to right study. The moment when such a question is voiced is the psychological moment for opening this book. As the children continue to read, this initial question should pass through Protean changes and should become at every stage more definite. "What have we learned from the Greeks?" "How did men learn more about the earth than they knew at first?"

Under purposeful teaching, teaching that trains intelligence rather than crams with facts, such questions will be continually forming. Along beside them will come a host of little ones: "How long was a knight's spear?" "Did the Greeks kneel when they prayed?" "How large was Columbus' ship?" These are honest and intelligent questions, questions well worthy of answers. They show a mind active and eager for accuracy, for definiteness. Children hunger for details. They reason inductively. It is the vivid image that stirs them to make a generalization. I never saw a generalization stir them to anything but revolt.

This book tries to rouse these larger questions and the smaller ones, and it tries to give material for answering them. But it needs the help of an inspiring teacher to complete it. She must make the recitation a discussion, not a quiz. She must in scores of ways stimulate questioning and vivid imaging. She must alternate hard, close thinking

with gratification of the play instinct. She must see to it that children's hunger to express is satisfied. She must have supplementary material for investigating minds.

The thing that quickens and invigorates nature study is the fact that it makes absolutely necessary the use of real materials to be studied. The danger for history lies in the fact that most of its material is only a reflection preserved in books. We must search diligently for the real material, the substance of the reflection. The men we are reading about did things, said things, made things. Their deeds are gone, though hosts of books give us accounts of them. Can we hear any of the things they said, that we may judge the speakers? Their voices are dead, but their writings yet exist. Let us study them. Can we see any of the things they made? Fortunate the class whose teacher or members have traveled and seen the temples and castles of Europe. Fortunate the school in a city with a good museum, having armor, tapestry, lutes, illuminated manuscripts, models of old buildings. Lacking these good things, we still have the multiplicity of pictures with which our press supplies us. I hope, then, that this book will be a center about which will accumulate a little library especially of sources, a mass of mounted pictures, a small collection of illustrative models.

The making of those models will be a thing to save the souls of some hand-minded children, and the acquaintance with them will vivify and vitalize everybody's thinking. A Greek lyre, a Greek scroll, a Roman house, a catapult, a battering ram, a knight's shield, a castle, an illuminated page, a Viking boat, a tapestry frame, an astrolabe, a series of sketches illustrating a page's life — let us substitute these for description and dissertation. Let us in all ways possible give our classes a chance to make their own observations and to build their own generalizations.

I hope that after reading this book children will say: "What happened next? We are different in some things

from the people of 1600: how did these changes come about?" Children of twelve are not too young, I think, to begin to see human history as a series of changes, a series, too, without end. The point may take in their minds some such crude form as this: "When my father was a boy some things were different from what they are now. What things will be different when I am an old man from what they are now?" For a teacher to arouse this question would be a great accomplishment. To bring it about, the children's eyes must be turned from books to look questioningly upon the society about them, to see it as an elastic and flexible thing that is the outcome of great changes during the past and is inevitably destined to numberless changes in the future.

JENNIE HALL

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

THE writer has had the benefit of much assistance. Professor W.S. Ferguson of Harvard University has criticised the chapters dealing with the ancient world, and Professor George C. Sellery of the University of Wisconsin those on the Middle Ages. To Miss Lida Lee Tall, supervisor in the Baltimore County public schools, I am indebted for suggestions such as only a thoughtful, inspired teacher can give. Mrs. Eunice Fuller Barnard I gratefully acknowledge as the collector of the illustrations and as the painstaking editor of the entire book. Yet it is a pleasure to pay my largest debt of thanks to Mr. J. M. Gambrill of Teachers College, Columbia University. Not only has he performed most of the arduous labor necessary on the maps, but he has been the severe and stimulating critic of the whole manuscript. Upon none of these kind critics may I lay the responsibility for any of the faults of the book, but I send it out with more assurance because of their assistance.

J. H.

CONTENTS

PART I. THE ANCIENT WORLD

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	GREECE, THE EXPLORER AND TEACHER	1
	The World before Our Time	1
	Early Greek Exploration	3
	Ancient Peoples of the Mediterranean	11
	Colonization	13
II.	WHAT GREECE HAD TO TEACH THE WORLD	20
	Religion	20
	Art	21
	The Olympic Games	29
	Greek Cities	34
	Athens	38
	Education	45
	Government	51
III.	GREECE AND HER NEIGHBORS	53
	The Persian War	53
	The Delian Confederacy	59
	Macedon Conquers the World	62
	Greek Influence on Civilization	70
IV.	ROME GROWS STRONG	74
	Rome Conquers Italy	74
	Roman Life	77
V.	ROME CONQUERS THE WORLD	90
	How Rome Conquered Carthage	90
	Rome's Conquest of the East	96
	Cæsar's War in Gaul	99
	Conquest Changes the Romans	110
VI.	THE ROMAN EMPIRE	117
	How Rome Ruled the World	117
	A New Religion in the Ancient World	128
	Results of Roman Rule	135

PART II. THE NEWER NATIONS

CHAPTER		PAGE
VII.	THE BARBARIAN CONQUERORS	140
	The Germans	141
	The Conquests of the Goths	144
	The Franks	148
	Charlemagne's Empire	151
	The Vikings	157
VIII.	HOW GERMANY AND FRANCE BEGAN	161
	Charlemagne's Empire Divided	161
	Germany	163
	France	173
IX.	HOW ENGLAND BEGAN	181
	The Angles and Saxons Take Britain	181
	The Reign of King Alfred	187
	The Norman Conquest	192
	The Good Laws of Henry II	200
	King John and the Great Charter	205
X.	CASTLE LIFE	213
	Feudalism, or How Men Got Land	214
	The Castle	217
	A Siege	224
	The Warlike Spirit of the Age	228
	Knightly Ideals and Training	232
	Knightly Pleasures	239
	The Time of Chivalry	247
XI.	THE WORKERS	249
	Farmers	249
	Townsmen	263
	Traders	277
XII.	RELIGION IN THE MIDDLE AGES	296
	Christian Missionaries	296
	Church Organization	298
	Monasteries	300
	Saints and Pilgrimages	316
	Mohammedanism, the New Religion in Asia	322
	The Crusades	329

PART III. BEGINNINGS OF OUR OWN TIMES

CHAPTER PAGE

XIII. Great Changes 334
National States 334
How the World Began to Read 336
A Change in Religion 337

XIV. Ships in Strange Seas 341
Early Sailors and Their Ways 341
Wanted: A New Route to India 346
Portugal's Great Explorers 349
Spanish Ships in a New World 360
Rival Explorers 368
The Results of a Century's Work 377

XV. Spain and Her Rivals 379
Spaniards in America 379
Spain and Her Enemies: 1. France 385
Spain and Her Enemies: 2. The Netherlands . . 388
Spain and Her Enemies: 3. England 393
England in America 408
England's Rivals in the New World 412

Important Dates 417
Index 423

LIST OF MAPS AND PLANS

PAGE

GREECE ABOUT 500 B.C. 7
MAP SHOWING GREEK COLONIZATION 15
ATHENS AND THE BAY OF SALAMIS 45
THE PERSIAN EMPIRE ABOUT 490 B.C. 54
ALEXANDER'S EMPIRE 64
ITALY IN RELIEF 75
ROME AND HER HILLS 76
ROME AND CARTHAGE AT THE BEGINNING OF THE SECOND PUNIC WAR 93
ROME AND CARTHAGE AT THE END OF THE SECOND PUNIC WAR 95
A ROMAN CAMP 108
MODERN COUNTRIES INCLUDED IN ROMAN EMPIRE AT ITS GREATEST EXTENT 116
PART OF A ROMAN MAP OF THE WORLD. From a map of the 4th century. (Reproduced in Synge, *A Book of Discovery*) . 123
TRADING DISTRICTS OF THE ANCIENT WORLD 126
THE GERMANIC KINGDOMS 149
EMPIRE OF CHARLEMAGNE AND ITS DIVISIONS 162
EUROPE ABOUT THE CLOSE OF THE TWELFTH CENTURY *Between pp.* 212 *and* 213
A CASTLE. (After Viollet-le-duc, *Annals of a Fortress*) . . 218
PLAN OF A MANOR 251
TRADE ROUTES IN THE MIDDLE AGES 282–283
NINTH-CENTURY PLAN OF A MONASTERY (ST. GALL, SWITZERLAND) 315
EUROPE ABOUT THE MIDDLE OF THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY *Between pp.* 334 *and* 335
A MAP OF THE WORLD MADE IN ALEXANDRIA ABOUT 150 A.D. Ptolemy's map. (From Fiske, *Discovery of America*)* . 341
A SAILOR'S MAP OF EUROPE AND AFRICA, MADE IN 1351. From the Laurentian Portolano 343
EXPLORATION MOVES DOWN THE AFRICAN COAST. (From Fiske, *Discovery of America*)* 356
WESTERN AFRICA. From Martin Behaim's globe, 1492. (Reproduced in Synge, *A Book of Discovery*) 357
THE WORLD AS EUROPEANS KNEW IT BEFORE 1492 . . 360
PART OF A GLOBE MADE IN 1492, JUST BEFORE COLUMBUS SAILED. From Behaim's globe. (From Fiske, *Discovery of America*)* 362
PART OF A GLOBE MADE IN 1531. From the globe of Orontius Finaeus. (From Fiske, *Discovery of America*)* 370
THE GREAT DISCOVERIES, 1486 TO 1600 376

* By courtesy of Houghton Mifflin Company.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

In order that they may give accurate evidence of the life of other times, the illustrations in this book are taken, with few exceptions, from material contemporary with the periods described. Vase-paintings, statues, buildings, mosaics, illuminations from old manuscripts, early wood-cuts and engravings have all been drawn upon. This list gives the source in each instance, usually citing also the name of a modern work where the illustration in question and others of the same period may be found reproduced. For volumes referred to more than three times the following abbreviations have been used:

Baumeister = Baumeister, A., *Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums*, Munich, 1887.
Cutts = Cutts, E. L., *Scenes and Characters of the Middle Ages*, London, 1872.
Gardiner = Gardiner, S. R., *Students' History of England*, 1904.
Lacroix = Lacroix, Paul, *Manners, Customs and Dress during the Middle Ages*, London, 1876.
Lacroix et Séré = Lacroix et Séré, *Le Moyen Age et la Renaissance*, Paris.
Rawlinson = Rawlinson, George, *The Seven Great Monarchies of the Ancient Eastern World*, 1884.
Stothard = Stothard, C. A., *The Tapestry of Bayeux*, London, 1827.
Synge = Synge, M. B., *A Book of Discovery*, London, 1912.
Viollet-le-duc = Viollet-le-duc, *Dictionnaire raisonné du mobilier français*, Paris, 1875.

PAGE

QUEEN ELIZABETH. From an engraving published in 1596. *Frontispiece*
ASSYRIAN KING HUNTING. From a relief at Koyunjik. (*Rawlinson*) 2
ASSYRIAN LION HUNT. From a relief at Nimrud. (Reproduced in Layard, *Monuments of Nineveh*) 3
THE MONSTER SCYLLA. From an Etruscan urn. (*Baumeister*) 5
THE ACROPOLIS OF CORINTH 9
A GREEK SHIP. From a Greek vase-painting. (Reproduced in Chatterton, *Ships and Ways of Other Days*) 10
ZEUS, HERE, POSEIDON, DEMETER. From a Greek vase. (*Baumeister*) 20
THE PARTHENON IN RUINS 22
GREEK HORSEMEN. From a photograph of the Parthenon frieze 24
VENUS OF MELOS. From the statue in the Louvre, Paris . . 27
HERMES OF PRAXITELES. From the statue in the museum at Olympia 28
TEMPLE OF ZEUS AT OLYMPIA. (*Baumeister*) 31

PAGE

HARNESSING A CHARIOT. From a Greek vase. (*Baumeister*) . 33
THREE GREEKS. From the relief of Orpheus, Eurydice and Hermes in the Villa Albani, Rome 35
A GREEK POTTER AT WORK. From a Greek vase. (*Baumeister*) 37
THE ACROPOLIS OF ATHENS 39
A GREEK LADY AND HER SLAVE. From a grave relief in the National Museum, Athens 41
A GREEK SCHOOL. From a Greek vase. (*Baumeister*) 46 *and* 47
SOCRATES. From the bust in the National Museum, Naples . 48
PERSIAN SOLDIERS. From a relief at Persepolis. (*Rawlinson*) . 53
A PERSIAN KING. From a Greek vase. (*Baumeister*) . . 55
PERSIAN FOOT-SOLDIER. From a relief at Persepolis. (*Rawlinson*) 56
NOBLE PERSIAN GUARD. From a relief at Persepolis. (*Rawlinson*) 57
SOLDIER OF MARATHON. From a grave relief in the National Museum, Athens 58
DARIUS, THE PERSIAN KING, IN HIS WAR CHARIOT. From a mosaic at Pompeii. (*Baumeister*) 66
THE HARVARD UNIVERSITY STADIUM 71
A COURT IN A ROMAN HOUSE. At Pompeii 78
ROMANS GOING TO MAKE SACRIFICE. From reliefs in the Uffizi Gallery, Florence . . . . . 80 *and* 81
A ROMAN WOMAN SACRIFICING. From a statue in the National Museum, Naples 83
A ROMAN SACRIFICE BEFORE A TEMPLE. From a relief in the Palazzo dei Conservatori, Rome 85
A TRIREME. (*Baumeister*) 91
THE DYING GAUL. From the statue in the Capitoline Museum, Rome 100
A MOVABLE TOWER. (A modern drawing in Viollet-le-duc, *Annals of a Fortress*) 102
STORMING A TOWN. A modern drawing 104
A ROMAN WAR SCENE. A detail from Trajan's column, Rome. (*Baumeister*) 106
A TRIUMPHAL ARCH. A drawing of the Arch of Titus, Rome. (*Baumeister*) 112
THE COLD PLUNGE IN A ROMAN BATH-HOUSE. (*Viollet-le-duc*) . 119
WAX TABLET, INKHORN, SCROLL OR BOOK. (*Real Museo Borbonico*, 1824) 122
A STATUE OF THE EMPEROR CONSTANTINE. At Barletta, Italy . 134
A FRANKISH BARBARIAN OF EARLY TIMES. (*Lacroix*) . . 142
A GERMAN WARRIOR. (*Lacroix*) 143
CLOVIS. From a statue on his tomb formerly in the Abbey of St. Genevieve. (*Lacroix*) 150

PAGE

POPE CROWNING CHARLEMAGNE. From a 14th century manuscript. (*Lacroix*) 152
CHARLEMAGNE. From a miniature at the University of Paris. (*Lacroix*) 155
VIKING SHIP. From the reconstruction of Professor Montelius. (*Synge*) 158
HOLY ROMAN EMPEROR. From a 12th century manuscript. (*Synge*) 161
THE POPE ON HIS THRONE. From a 15th century manuscript. (*Cutts*) 165
THE GREATNESS OF THE EMPEROR. From a 9th century manuscript. (*Lacroix*) 167
A CARAVAN IN THE EAST. From a 14th century map. (*Synge*) 170
A KING OF THE FRANKS ON HIS CARVED CHAIR. From a 10th century manuscript. (*Viollet-le-duc*) 175
ST. LOUIS. From a 13th century manuscript. (*Lacroix et Séré*) 178
A SAXON WARRIOR. From a print in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 182
SAXON HORSEMEN. From the British Museum. (*Gardiner*) . 184
THE HOUSE OF PARLIAMENT IN ENGLAND TO-DAY . . . 186
NORMAN SHIP. From the Bayeux Tapestry. (*Stothard*) . . 193
SAXON FOOT-SOLDIERS AND NORMAN HORSEMEN. From the Bayeux Tapestry. (*Stothard*) 194
DEATH OF KING HAROLD. From the Bayeux Tapestry. (*Stothard*) 195
NORMAN HORSEMEN. From the Bayeux Tapestry. (*Stothard*) 196
KING WILLIAM'S SHIP. From the Bayeux Tapestry. (*Stothard*) 198
A NORMAN BANQUET. From the Bayeux Tapestry. (*Stothard*) 200
PILGRIMS LEAVING A TOWN. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 202
PAYING TOLL ON A BRIDGE. From a painted window at Tournay. (*Cutts*) 203
KING JOHN. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (Reproduced in Fairholt, *Costume in England*) 206
THE CASTLE OF AN ENGLISH BARON. A modern drawing . . 207
AN ENGLISH MERCHANT IN RICH CLOTHES. "Chaucer's merchant" from the Ellesmere manuscript. (Reproduced in Jusserand, *English Wayfaring Life*) 211
BEGINNING OF A TOURNAMENT. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 213
A VASSAL SWEARING FEALTY. From a 14th century manuscript. (*Lacroix*) 215
A SALLY ACROSS A DRAWBRIDGE. From a 14th century manuscript. (*Cutts*) 220

PAGE

A King Giving Orders to His Builder. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Gardiner*) 223
Besieging a Tower. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 225
Battering Ram. From a 15th century manuscript. (*Cutts*) . 226
A Tournament. From a 14th century manuscript. (*Cutts*) . 229
A Knight of the Thirteenth Century. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 231
Crossbowman. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 234
A Tournament of Froissart's Time. From a 15th century manuscript. (*Cutts*) 237
The Knighting. From a 13th century manuscript. (*Lacroix et Séré*) 238
A Gentleman Hawking. From the *Loutterell Psalter*. (*Gardiner*) 240
The King Dines. From an early 14th century manuscript. (*Cutts*) 243
A Lady. From a statue in Chartres Cathedral. (Reproduced in Gautier, *La Chevalerie*) 245
A Royal Harper. From an early 14th century manuscript. (*Cutts*) 246
A Knight. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 248
The Ox-plow. (This and the following illustrations of farm activities from the *Loutterell Psalter*. (*Gardiner*) . . 250
Cutting Grain 252
Stacking the Sheaves 252
Hauling the Cart-load Uphill. (Reproduced in Jusserand, *English Wayfaring Life in the Middle Ages*) 254
Harrowing 255
Threshing With Flails 259
John Ball. From a 15th century manuscript of Froissart's *Chronicles*. (*Cutts*) 261
Medieval Shops. (*Lacroix et Séré*) 264
A Goldsmith's Shop. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 266
An Old View of Florence. From a wood-cut in a Florentine manuscript dated 1495. (Reproduced in Staley, *The Guilds of Florence*, London, 1906) 269
A Corner of a Market in Florence. From a wood-cut in a Florentine manuscript dated 1495. (Reproduced in Staley, *The Guilds of Florence*) 270
A Street Corner in Florence. From the painting of St. Stephen preaching, by Fra Angelico 272

PAGE

THE BRONZE DOORS OF THE BAPTISTRY. In Florence . . 274
THE BELL TOWER. In Florence 275
THE ARMS OF THE APOTHECARIES AND PHYSICIANS. From the plaque by Luca della Robbia 276
LANDING AT A SEAPORT. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 279
MERCHANT SHIPS CARRYING SOLDIERS. From a 15th century manuscript of Froissart's *Chronicles*. (*Cutts*) . . . 280
TRADERS LANDING AT AN EASTERN TOWN. From the *Livre des Merveilles*, 14th century. (*Synge*) 286
A FAIR. From a painted window at Tournay. (*Cutts*) . . 289
THE DOGE OF VENICE GOING IN PROCESSION THROUGH THE CITY. From the engraving by J. Amman, 16th century. (*Lacroix*) 292
MERCHANTS WELCOMING A QUEEN. From a 15th century manuscript of Froissart's *Chronicles*. (*Cutts*) 294
MEMBERS OF THE CHOIR SITTING IN THEIR STALLS AT CHURCH. From the *Book of Hours of Richard II* in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 296
A BISHOP ORDAINING A PRIEST. From a 12th century manuscript. (*Gardiner*) 299
A CATHEDRAL OF THE MIDDLE AGES. From a photograph of the Cathedral at Rheims 301
A MONK WITH GIFTS FOR HIS MONASTERY. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 304
AN ABBOT. From the same. (*Cutts*) 305
THE CROWNING OF THE VIRGIN MARY. From the painting by Fra Angelico 306
A MONK IN A LIBRARY. From a manuscript in the Library of Soissons. (*Cutts*) 308
A PICTURE PAINTED BY A MONK IN AN OLD BOOK. From a miniature in the "Terence" of King Charles VI. (*Lacroix*) . 309
INITIAL LETTER FROM AN OLD MANUSCRIPT. (*Lacroix et Séré*) . 310
A GIFT TO THE MONASTERY. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 313
A MONASTERY CLOISTER. In the mission of San Juan Capistrano, California 314
A TOMB. In the church of Santa Maria del Popolo, Rome . 319
A PILGRIM. From a manuscript in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 320
A GREAT NOBLE GOES ON A PILGRIMAGE. From a manuscript *Life of Richard Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick*. (*Cutts*) . 321
A VISTA IN A SARACEN PALACE. The Alhambra in Spain . . 327
JERUSALEM. From a wood-cut in *Liber Chronicarum Mundi*, Nuremberg, 1493. (*Lacroix*) 331

PAGE

SOLDIER WITH AN EARLY FORM OF FIREARM. From a drawing in the British Museum. (*Cutts*) 335

A PRINTING OFFICE OF THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY. From a contemporary engraving 337

MARTIN LUTHER AS A MONK. From an engraving made in 1520 338

A PORTUGUESE SHIP. From a wood-cut of about 1516 in the British Museum. (*Synge*) 345

MARCO POLO. From a wood-cut in the first printed edition of his book, 1477. (*Synge*) 347

THE POLOS BEGIN THEIR JOURNEY. From the *Livre des Merveilles*, 14th century. (*Synge*) 348

KUBLAI KHAN. From an old Chinese encyclopedia. (*Synge*) . 349

HENRY THE NAVIGATOR. After a print by Simon de Passe. (Reproduced in Chatterton, *Ships and Ways of Other Days*) . 352

VASCO DA GAMA. From a contemporary portrait. (*Synge*) . 358

COLUMBUS, DEPARTING ON HIS FIRST VOYAGE, TAKES LEAVE OF THE KING AND QUEEN. An old print 364

THE *SANTA MARIA*. From a wood-cut of 1493. (Reproduced in Ruge, *Geschichte des Zeitalters der Entdeckungen*) 366

A FLEET OF MAGELLAN'S TIME. From Mercator's *Mappe Monde*, 1569. (*Synge*) 371

MAGELLAN'S VICTORIOUS SHIP. From Hulsius, *Collection of Voyages*, 1602 374

SPANISH CONQUEST OF MEXICO. From an ancient Aztec drawing. (*Synge*) 380

SAN DOMINGO IN 1586. From *A Summarie and True Discourse of Sir Francis Drake's West Indian Voyage* 383

EMPEROR CHARLES V. From the painting by Titian . . . 386

PHILIP II. From the painting by Titian 389

ENGLISH AND SPANISH. From De Bry, *Collections of Travels and Voyages*, 1599 395

FRANCIS DRAKE. From an engraving by Hondius, 1582 . . 397

THE *ARK ROYAL*. From an engraving in the British Museum . 403

THE ARMADA FIGHT. From Adams, *Series of Views of the Armada* in the British Museum 405

GOD'S PROVIDENCE HOUSE. In Chester, England 406

ROYAL PROCESSION OF QUEEN ELIZABETH TO VISIT A LORD. A painting. (Reproduced in Nichols, *Progresses and Public Processions of Queen Elizabeth*. London, 1823) 407

AN INDIAN OF VIRGINIA. From a water-color drawing by John White of Raleigh's expedition (1585). In the British Museum 410

THE TOWN OF NEW AMSTERDAM, OR NEW YORK, AS IT APPEARED IN 1673. From a contemporary engraving . 412-413

OLD SPANISH GATE AT ST. AUGUSTINE 414

OUR ANCESTORS IN EUROPE

PART I. THE ANCIENT WORLD

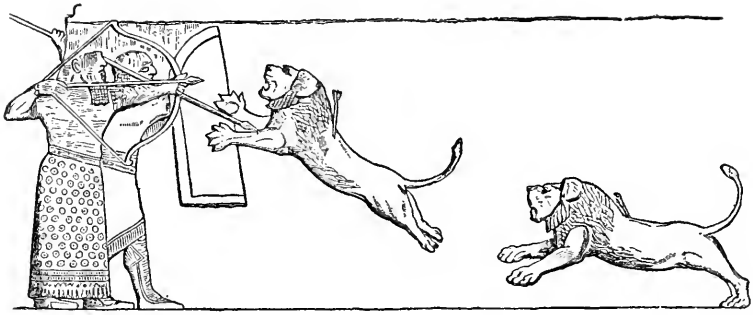
CHAPTER I

GREECE, THE EXPLORER AND TEACHER

The World before Our Time

As you very well know, there was a time when no white man lived in America. In 1500 Europe and Asia and northern Africa were the only homes of civilized people. Even in that small world the people of the East and the people of the West knew little of each other. France, Italy, Spain, Germany, England really made up a world of their own. Architects had filled these countries with beautiful churches and castles and palaces. Painters and sculptors had adorned them with pictures and statues. Poets and philosophers and historians were writing great books, and people all over Europe were reading and studying.

But it had not always been so. Fifteen hundred years before the discovery of America, northern Europe had been a wilderness inhabited by barbarians. There men had lived in mean little houses and had dressed in skins. They had wandered from place to place in search of new pastures for their cattle or of fresh fields for game. They had been unable to read or to write. It was Rome who had taught these barbarians

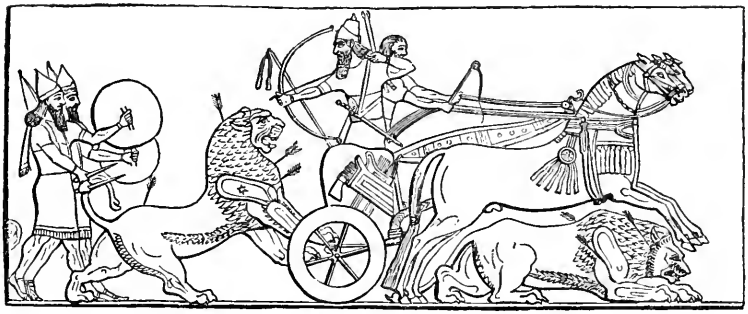


ASSYRIAN KING HUNTING

Carved on the wall of the king's palace about 2800 years ago. Notice the king's embroidered robe. Attendant protects him with spear and shield

and had civilized them. But long before that time Rome herself had been half barbarian and had had to learn from older nations. Greece was her great teacher. And Greece in turn had been ignorant and had been taught by Egypt, Phœnicia, Assyria.

When Greece was young, the civilized world was a narrow fringe around the eastern end of the Mediterranean. There men wore beautiful clothes of marvelously dyed and embroidered cloth. They lived in huge stone palaces gay with carved and painted walls. They drove in chariots and made great walled cities. They built monuments and carved histories upon them. They studied the stars. They dug mines for gold and silver and copper and made shining vases and cups and plates and bracelets and rings and crowns and necklaces. Their bodies and their walls were gorgeous with precious ornaments. Out of this rich old world grew up Greece, the queen of learning. All western peoples to-day look back to her as the mother of their thought and their art. To show a little how these teachers of civilization did their work and how others carried it on, is the purpose of this book.



ASSYRIAN LION HUNT

Notice the elaborate harness. The king carries a sword slung over his shoulder by a strap. Two attendants have bows across their shoulders

Early Greek Exploration

Greece is a sailor's country. Long arms of bays cut into the land and invite men to try the gentle water. Long points of land jut into the sea like ships' prows, and islands close together beckon a boat from one to another out from the mainland. So Greeks very early became seafaring people. Some of their oldest stories show them venturing into unknown waters, finding wild, uncivilized lands, and meeting many dangers. Jason and his friends, fifty young heroes, planned a search for a certain marvelous ram's fleece of gold, so the story goes. They built a boat of fifty oars — the greatest ship of her time — and when they had finished her, these inexperienced ship-builders could not launch her but had to lure her into the sea by magic songs, the story says. Then every hero took an oar, and they rowed toward the strange North, hugging the shore for safety or feeling their way out to near-by islands.

The Argonauts

They passed through the narrow Hellespont and on into the Propontis, where few Greeks had ever gone.

Here giants with six arms fell upon them at night and would have killed them except for godlike Herakles. And again some of the heroes had a battle with the monsters of the whirlwinds. After many days of bitter toil and danger, they came out into what we call the Black Sea, but they called it Axinus, or the Sea Unfriendly to Strangers; for it stretched before them broad and empty and shoreless. There were no snug harbors where they might hide from storms. No safe islands offered refuge and resting place. Mists hung over the marshy shores, and the sky was gloomy. Yet the heroes pushed on, and dangers enough they met, according to the old tale — hot rivers and savage people and wandering rocks that clashed together with a great spouting of the sea.

But at last, with magic help, they obtained that Golden Fleece and started homeward. Then adventures fell thick about them. For days a storm raged and hid the shores and the sky. Because they had no way to steer but by the sun in the daytime and the stars by night, they lost their course and wandered they knew not where. They met cannibals and the magic-singing sirens, who would have eaten them, and horrid Scylla, with six long necks and ravenous dogs' mouths that snatched at them as they passed her cave. They encountered shoals and fogs and quicksands and deserts. But at last they came to the island-sown Ægean Sea, where they were safe. After their many years of strange adventuring around the edges of the world, they finally reached home.

Odysseus

Another famous sailor of the old stories was Odysseus, who started out from Troy in Asia Minor on his homeward voyage to Ithaca, around on the western side of Greece. But the ships of those days were frail craft, and the storms crushed them. Sailors

did not know how to tack against the wind, and therefore unfriendly gales whirled Odysseus out of his way. For ten years he sailed about from unknown shore to unknown shore, visiting lands no other Greek had ever seen. He was buffeted by storms, attacked by savages, tempted by enchantresses. He saw such marvels as a one-eyed giant, the story says, and lazy people who drugged themselves with a flowery food, and men bewitched and changed to animals. He lost all his ships and men, but at last he, himself, reached home, full of tales of the wonderful lands outside of Greece.

THE MONSTER SCYLLA

She is snatching some of Odysseus' men. Odysseus wears a Greek sailor's cap

I cannot think that these stories are utterly untrue. Imagine yourself lost at sea and wrecked upon the shore of Greenland, the first white man to see it. What a marvelous tale you would tell when you again reached home! "It is a huge piece of ice floating in the sea," you would say. "Men there have hair all over their bodies. The sky burns." In your hurry to get away you had not waited to investigate very closely, and you had seen such wonders that you could not find fit words to tell of them. If some one who heard you should tell some one else the marvelous tale, and he should pass it on to another, the last story might be very astonishing and yet founded upon fact.

What These Stories Show

So it is, I think, with these old Greek stories. Man is a land animal, and the sea of old time was full of terrors for him. So the very monsters of these tales, told and

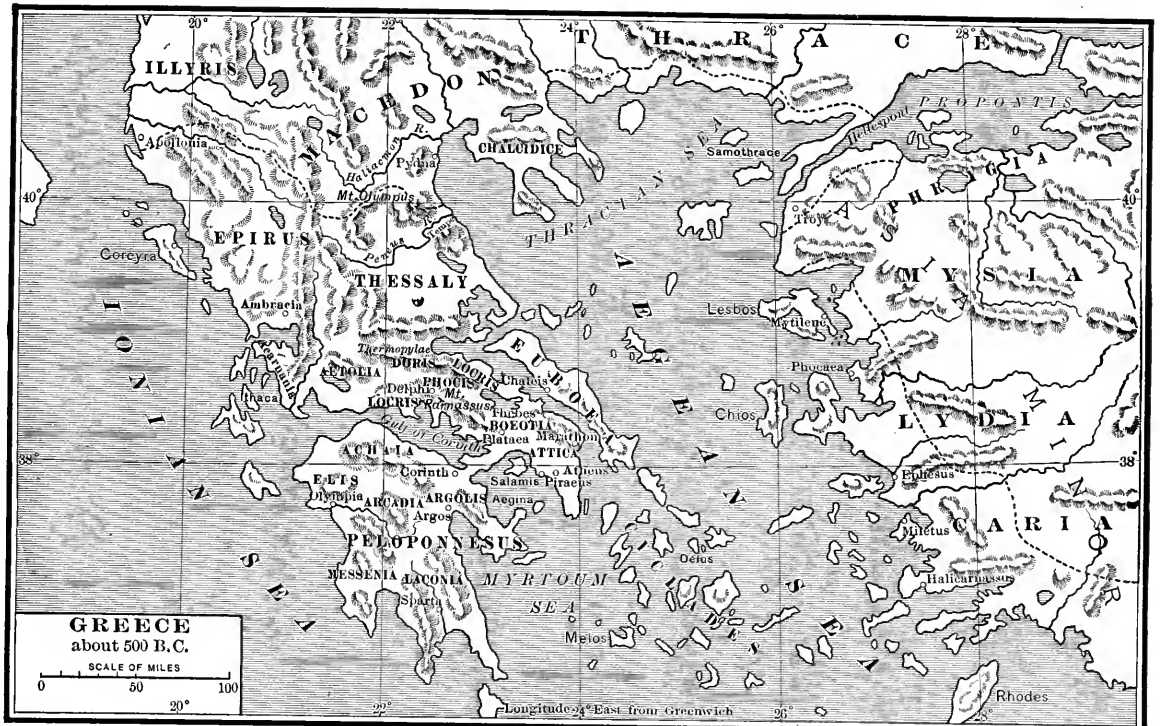
even written down as early as 800 B.C., hint that the ancient Greeks went exploring outside of their own Ægean, that they actually did find uncivilized lands, that they met whirlpools and whirlwinds and dangerous rocks, that they saw strange and warlike peoples, that they found gold and treasure.

When one man has traveled a new route and comes back with interesting stories, other men become ambitious to see the same wonders and to push a little farther. Many ships, therefore, followed in the wake of the first one that entered the Black Sea and of the first one that struck out into the open waters west of Greece. Besides men's natural curiosity and love of adventure, there were other reasons that drove the Greeks to exploring.

Reasons for Greek Exploration

Greece is a very beautiful land. It is a tangle of mountain chains, sharp and steep, with snow-capped peaks here and there. Between are little valleys with winding rivers. The rock is mostly limestone, and springs have cut it full of holes and caves. Long arms of the blue sea run inland and bring the sea air. Cliffs and headlands boldly rise from the water. Greek plants are lovely and interesting — grapes and currants and laurel on the hillsides, olives and figs and pomegranates in the valleys, oleanders and narcissus and violets and roses along the watercourses.

The Greeks, loving their land for its beauty, thought that it possessed every other virtue, even fertility. They spoke of it as "fruitful," "deep-soiled," "deep-bosomed." Yet in reality it is not a fertile country. Most of the land is mountainous and cannot be used for farming at all. The valleys are small. Thessaly, the largest plain in Greece, is not sixty miles square. And even in many of the valleys the soil is light. The climate, moreover,



The dotted lines show the boundaries between the Greeks and other peoples. Notice that the Greeks in general cling to the coasts

is dry, so that farmers have always had to irrigate. Yet ancient Greece was crowded with people living mostly in cities and villages, and busy with farming, mining, and manufacturing.

Therefore, although every piece of farming land was used for garden or orchard or vineyard, yet Greece could not raise enough wheat to feed herself, and she wanted more gold and silver and copper and iron than she could find in her own mines, and more fish than her own sea would furnish. Neither was there enough timber in the country for all the ship-building and house-building. So her men were forced to go exploring. The country became crowded, too, and young men were eager to try their fortunes in a new land.

The Earlier Explorers

Another thing that tempted the Greeks out into unknown waters was the example of still earlier and greater voyagers, the Phœnicians. These people had gone everywhere. They had built towns in Sicily and a great city called Carthage in Africa. They had a colony in Spain, at the very end of the world. They had even ventured out into the unknown great ocean past the Pillars of Hercules, and had sailed away north to Britain, where they worked rich tin mines. Herodotus, an ancient Greek historian, says, indeed, that they made a three years' voyage from the Red Sea around the whole of Africa, doubling its very southern end and coming northward and back into the Mediterranean through the Pillars of Hercules, which we call the Strait of Gibraltar.[1]

Phœnician merchants were continually landing, too, upon Greek coasts, telling of foreign lands and selling foreign goods. The quick-witted Greeks bought the goods, gave eager ear to the tales, studied the boats, and copied them. Soon they began to follow in the wake

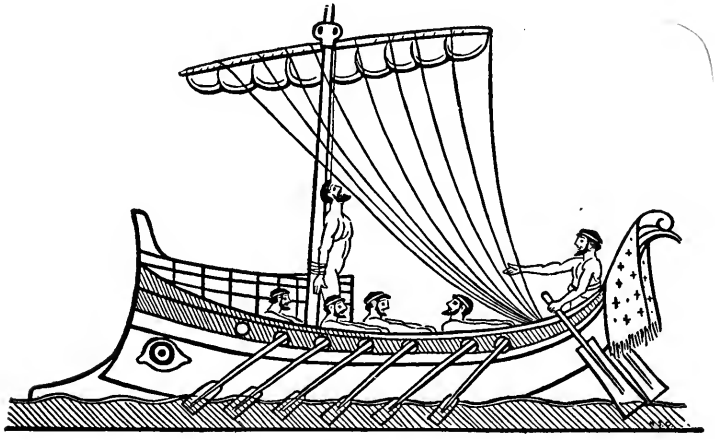
[1] See page 354.

THE ACROPOLIS OF CORINTH

The city of Corinth was on the plain at the foot of the mountain, with the gulf washing its edge — mountain, plain, and sea in the glance of an eye. In the left foreground is a modern village. The ruin is of a temple of Apollo. Americans are now excavating the site of the old town

of the daring vessels flying past into the strange waters of the North and the West.

The ships in which the Greeks did their voyaging were small, not often over a hundred feet long and perhaps a fourth as wide. They were, moreover, shallow,



A Greek Ship

The sail is furled, while the men row. The pilot uses oars instead of a rudder. Notice the eye painted on the prow, that the ship may see its way. There is a small decked cabin in the prow. A ship had more rowers than this, but the old vase-painter liked his picture better with few men. Read a story of Odysseus and the sirens, and you will understand about the man bound to the mast

carrying what would seem to us a very small cargo. One mast stood amidships and held a square sail.

Greek Ships

There was no centerboard, and every sailor knows what that means: the ship could only run before the wind. If the course lay north, and the wind was blowing from that direction, the sail was furled, the mast taken down and stowed away, and the men sat down to row; for the ship carried perhaps twenty or thirty long oars in case of need. There was no such rudder as we have, but a broad oar was fastened to the

ship's side and projected past the stern. With this the pilot steered, with no lighthouses to warn him off the rocks, no map to guide him, and no compass to give him directions.

When the ship reached its harbor, the men leaped out and pulled it up on the beach. They camped on shore, cooking at a bonfire and sleeping on the sand. On the voyage they must have lain on the open deck or in the hold, curled up among the cargo. It sounds like a camping party, living in the open and exploring the wilderness for the fun of the thing. Yet these were the great traders and sailors and civilizers of their time.

Ancient Peoples of the Mediterranean

The Mediterranean world which these early voyagers saw, eight, seven, six hundred years before Christ, was very different from what it is now. At the eastern end were the old and civilized nations of the world — the Egyptians in Africa, the Hebrews and the Phœnicians on the shore of Asia, the Lydians north of them, the Assyrians behind them. Still farther east was the half-known, mysterious India, and beyond that no man knew what. The Greeks, younger children of civilization, inhabited the western fringe of Asia Minor and the islands of the Ægean, as well as the mainland of Greece. But all of Europe except Greece, and all Africa except Egypt, was wilderness, inhabited by uncivilized warlike tribes.

Scythians

The Euxine Sea, that is, the Black Sea, says Herodotus, "except for the Scythians, exhibits the most ignorant nations." Then he describes the Scythians. "They have neither cities nor fortifications, but carry their houses with them. They are all equestrian archers, living not from the cultivation of the earth but from cattle, and their dwellings are wagons." And he goes

on to tell how after a battle they made drinking cups from the skulls of their slain enemies, hanging the scalps from the bridles of their horses.

Gauls and Africans

The people of Spain, and the Gauls in what is now France, were only a little less savage. The tribes of northern Africa were gentle brown people, most of them "nomads who eat flesh and drink milk," Herodotus tells us. Of one tribe he says, "In the summer they leave their cattle on the coast and go [inland] in order to gather the fruit of the palm trees." And others of them cut their hair in strange fashion and "bedaub their bodies with vermilion."

Romans

In the middle part of Italy were the Latins, from whom later came the great Romans. These people, when the Greeks began to colonize the West, seven hundred years before Christ, were already settled farmers, raising grain and grapes, making flour and wine. They spun and wove garments of wool. There were dyers to make the cloth beautiful, and fullers to clean their robes. They had sandal makers and goldsmiths and coppersmiths and carpenters and potters. They sailed the sea and traded with their neighbors. A king ruled over them with senators to help him make the laws; and those laws were good and just. Yet these people had no alphabet, and therefore could not read nor write; had no schools; and made no beautiful buildings or statues.

Trading Stations and Factories

To these half-civilized shores went the adventurous Greeks. Their trading parties carried with them gold jewelry, bronze pots, brilliant cloth, wine, oil, swords — such things as uncivilized people would be eager for. They made a tempting display of these goods on the shore and sent inland to invite the natives to come and buy. But

barbarian people never have money, so they brought down with them whatever they had — sheep, cattle, cheeses. A good trade was made, both sides were pleased, and the Greek ship went home laden with a new cargo to be sold in the city. Another time it returned and traded again. The merchant perhaps bought a little piece of shore from the natives, put up a storehouse and stocked it with goods, and left two or three men to keep up the trade with the barbarians while the ship went to and fro.

Sometimes the natives had nothing that the Greeks wanted, but the exploring trader might find veins of metal or forests where he could cut timber. At his next visit he would bring a company of men and establish a lumber camp or a mining camp and would get natives to help in the work. Or perhaps he would find broad, fertile plains that were good for raising wheat. He would bring seed and plows and workmen and plant a crop, and during a few seasons he would teach the people of the country to till the ground. Then he would be sure of a cargo that would sell well in any city of crowded little Greece.

Colonization

If trade or industry prospered at one of these stations, it would be talked of in Greece, and people would become interested, especially men who liked novelty, or who were in trouble of some kind. "We will begin over again in a new place," these men would say. Word would go about that a company was to start out from a certain city to found a colony in such and such a place, and other people who wanted to go would flock there.

But the Greeks, although they were great travelers, were also great lovers of home. They dreaded cutting

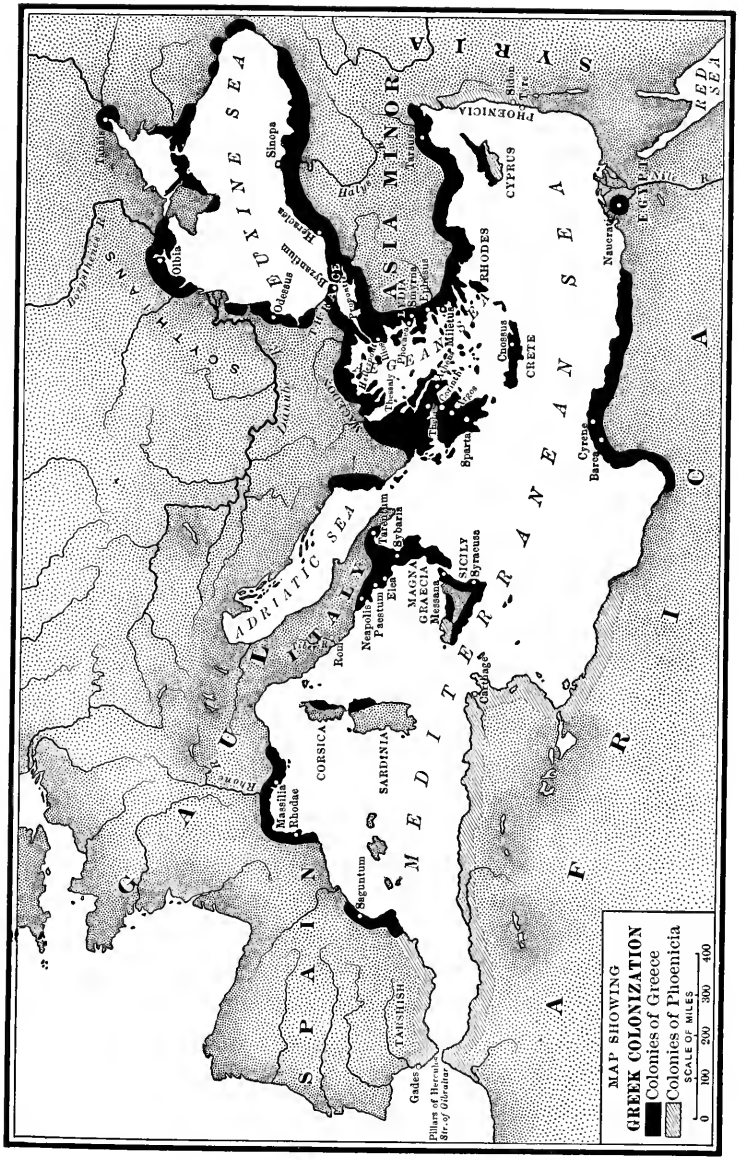
the ties that bound them to the place where their families had lived for generations. So before this company of colonists started, they went to the hearth of their city. For besides all other temples every Greek town had a little building with an altar, where burned always the sacred fire of the city that seemed like its very breath. A little of that holy fire the colonists took with them in their ship and carefully tended it on the voyage. And a little of the home earth from beneath the altar they took, and a priest. In the new land they spread out the handful of earth and planted the new altar upon it. Upon the altar they put the holy fire that they had brought. So the new town was born, and the people felt that she was the daughter of their old home city.

Starting a Colony

In this way hundreds of colonies were formed all around the edges of the Mediterranean. One city alone, Miletus in Asia Minor, was the mother of eighty towns, most of which were on the Black Sea. On the shores where once the Argonauts had found the Golden Fleece, Greek miners collected gold from the rivers and dug it from mines. In the mountains they found iron and cut timber.

Extent of Greek Colonization

On the level plains that border the sea at the north and west they grew wheat. Odessa, a Russian city of to-day and one of the greatest wheat markets of the world, is named after one of those old Greek colonies planted in the wheat region. The native Scythians about this district were shepherd people, and they traded beeves and hides and wool for armor and golden ornaments. To-day people are digging for the graves of these ancient barbarians, and they find in them, hundreds of miles from Greece though they are, beautiful Greek cups and necklaces and bracelets.


MAP SHOWING
GREEK COLONIZATION
Colonies of Greece
Colonies of Phoenicia
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400
EUXINE SEA
ASIA MINOR
SYRIA
PHOENICIA
Sidon
Tyre
RED SEA
CYPRUS
RHODES
CRETE
Cnossus
Miletus
Smyrna
Ephesus
Sinope
Heraclea
Byzantium
Odessus
Olbia
Tanais
Halys R.
Tarsus
Nauerat
EGYPT
Nile R.
Cyrene
Barca
Sparta
Argos
Thebes
Thessaly
Phocis
Thrace
Lydia
Lycia
Carmania
Mycenae
Macedonia
Danube R.
SCYTHIANS
Borysthenes R.
ADRIATIC SEA
ITALY
Tarentum
Sybaris
Elea
Paestum
Neapolis
Rome
MAGNA GRAECIA
Messana
SICILY
Syracuse
Carthage
CORSICA
SARDINIA
Massilia
Rhodae
Rhone R.
Saguntum
TARSHISH
Gades
Pillars of Hercules
Str. of Gibraltar
GAUL
SPAIN
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
AFRICA

Another of the greatest industries of this northern region was fishing. The Propontis (or Sea of Marmora) and the mouth of the Borysthenes (or Dnieper) River swarmed with tunny. Fleets of Greek fishing boats were busy here, and on the shores were lines of sheds, where the catch was dried and salted.

Towns of the Black Sea

Another commodity the Greeks got from the Black Sea district, — slaves. It is a terrible thought to us that men should be bought and sold like cattle, but the ancient world had not yet learned that all men have a right to freedom. Every nation used great numbers of slaves — to work mines, farms, and factories, to row ships, to help in the work of the house, and to serve as personal attendants. The people living north of the Black Sea were made up of many tribes that were continually at war with one another, and the victors were glad to carry their captives down to the shore and sell them to the Greeks.

Besides slaves, gold, iron, fish, and lumber, the Greeks got from the Black Sea country flax and pitch, wax and honey. Indeed, so full of treasures was this region that, in spite of the fact that the sea was still dangerous to navigate, the surrounding country often ice-covered, and some of the natives hostile, yet they changed its old name of "Sea Unfriendly to Strangers" and called it "Euxine," "Sea Friendly to Strangers"; and scores of Greek towns lined its shores.

Greek ships had gone west as well as north and had found Italy and the great fertile island of Sicily. It was the very kind of country to please these people — mountainous like their own, but with broader plains between the mountains. It had, too, the same jagged coast, full of harbors, and the same brilliant sky. So colony after colony was founded here about the

Sicily and Italy

shores of Sicily and of southern Italy, until the land was as Greek as Greece itself and even took the proud name of "Magna Græcia" or "Great Greece."

Many of the towns grew to be larger and richer than their own mother cities in the East. Their kings had stables and fine race horses and elegant chariots. Philosophers and poets lived there and wrote, and learned men from the older countries were glad to visit in the courts of Sicily. The greatest industry here was wheat raising; in fact, this island was one of the granaries of the world. But on the mountains back from the shore there was, also, much herding, and Sicilian cheeses became famous. Indeed, Sicily was a land of varied riches.

Still farther west than Italy, the Greeks settled along the coast of Spain and France. The present French city of Marseilles is the old Greek colony of Massilia. When the Greeks first visited these shores, six hundred years before Christ, they found here a Phœnician settlement, as they did in many another place. But they drove out the earlier people and made a Greek city. And this Massilia herself planted other colonies, until the southern shore of Gaul (as France used to be called) was a fringe of Greek towns with good harbors and a long road to connect them, running from Spain into Italy.

Gaul

There were fisheries on the shores; for these are the very waters where we now get our best sardines. Back in the Spanish mountains were mines of gold and silver and copper. Spain, indeed, was the "California of ancient days," with its rich gold finds. The settlers made salt, traded with the natives for slaves and dyes and honey and cattle, and grew grapes and olives in the fertile plains. Best of all, down the Rhone River, that reaches far back into France, came native traders who had met other traders from far-off Britain and had brought down from

there precious tin, a metal that the Greeks much needed in the making of their weapons and dishes and vases and statues of bronze. So the Gallic colonies prospered.

Africa

On the northern shore of Africa, in a fertile spot, was another line of Greek settlements. Behind them stretched the mysterious desert, and brown men "came to the shore with horses and camels, with black slaves, with apes, parrots, and other wonderful animals, with dates and rare fruits." And at the very door of rich old Egypt, too, the Greeks planted cities and bought her wheat and linen and ivory and beautiful things.

Effect of Greek Colonization

Into these new lands where the colonists settled they carried their own customs. They planted olive orchards and made oil, vineyards and made wine. They built temples like those at home and worshiped the same gods. They made walled cities set close with houses that had flat roofs and pleasant inner courtyards. They furnished their rooms with simple, graceful furniture. They used beautiful vases of clay and bronze. They had banquets and sang songs. They practised gymnastic games and dances. In fact, they lived in the colonies as they had lived in their Greek homes.

The barbarians from round about all of these transplanted Greek cities continually visited the towns to buy or sell, and they stayed to gaze at the wonders. Many of them the Greeks employed. Barbarian fathers, seeing Greek books and men reading interesting things in them, sometimes sent their sons to live in a Greek family that they might learn to read and write. It often happened that Greek men married native women, and their children grew up as Greeks. Many barbarians, too, came to live in the colony, and their grandchildren forgot that they were not real Greeks.

So Greek learning and Greek ways of living spread. One of the tribes of Sicily became so thoroughly saturated with Greek ideas, or so Hellenized (as we say), that they tried to build towns like the Greek cities, and perhaps half the population of the civilized and elegant Magna Græcia were Hellenized natives. The same thing happened in southern Gaul. Even far up the Rhone Hellenized Gauls built towns on Greek models and lived lives after the Greek manner. Over in eastern Europe two strong young nations, Thrace and Macedon, half Greek to begin with, grew up in the north country under Greek teaching. We shall hear of Macedon again as the land of Alexander the Great.

---

1. In the map of Greece count the islands. (Yet these are only a few of them.) How many good harbors can you find? On which side are most of them? Can you see why Greece had most of her dealings with countries east of her? Find good farming land. Find shut-in valleys. **2.** Write an ignorant sailor's account of a voyage past a volcano. Is it in any way like the descriptions that the Argonauts made of the wonders they saw? **3.** Make as full a list as you can of the peoples of the ancient world. **4.** How did your own town begin? **5.** What other ancient people made trading posts like those that Greece established? **6.** What modern countries have important colonies? Where are those colonies? Name some way in which they are different from Greek colonies. **7.** Find out what you can about Herodotus (from an encyclopedia, a history of Greece, or the introduction to Everyman edition of Herodotus). What opportunities did he have for learning the true facts for the stories he tells? If you read any of these stories, notice some of the different ways in which he learned about what he tells. **8.** From your geography find what to-day are the products of the places mentioned on pages 14 to 18 as the districts colonized by the Greeks.

ZEUS HERE POSEIDON DEMETER

Zeus carries his thunderbolt, Poseidon his fisherman's trident, Demeter her wheat heads

CHAPTER II

WHAT GREECE HAD TO TEACH THE WORLD

Religion

WHAT was the Greek life to which the people of the Mediterranean had been introduced? We have learned a better religion than the Greeks knew, and yet there were many beautiful things about that belief of theirs. The world seemed to them too great and too varied for one god to rule, so they thought there were many. These great beings were like men and women, but taller, more beautiful, and wiser. They lived in a marvelous city in the sky with a wall of bronze running around it, and within it were golden palaces set in gardens. One of the old poets, speaking of this Olympus, the dwelling place of the gods, says: "Not by winds is it shaken, nor ever wet with rain, nor doth the snow come nigh thereto, but most clear air is spread about it cloudless, and the white light floats over it. Therein the blessed gods are glad for all their days."

Those gods it was who brought all things to pass in the earth and in the sky. Every day Apollo drove the chariot of the sun on its course through the heavens to light the world and to warm it. Zeus, the king of gods and men, sent rain upon the earth to water it. Poseidon stirred up storms on the sea and calmed them. Dionysus guarded the vineyards and filled the grapes with sweet juice, and Demeter brought all heads of grain to yellow ripeness.

The gods read men's hearts also, punished them for evil deeds, and encouraged them to live righteously. The gods gave help, too, in the common work of men's daily lives. A sailor prayed to Hermes for a favorable breeze. A bronze worker, laboring on a beautiful shield, asked Hephæstus, the blacksmith god, to help him. A hunter prayed to Artemis, goddess of the moon and of the chase, to send his arrow to the mark. A shepherd prayed to Pan for fat flocks and thick fleeces. A man in doubt how to act asked help from Athene, the wise giver of good counsel.

Here is an ancient prayer that men used to sing to Hephæstus: "Sing, shrill Muse, of Hephæstus renowned in craft, who with gray-eyed Athene taught goodly works to men on earth, even to men that before were wont to dwell in mountain caves like beasts; but now, being instructed in craft by the renowned craftsman, Hephæstus, lightly the whole year through they dwell happily in their own homes. Be gracious, Hephæstus, and grant me valor and fortune."

Art

Men sang these prayers with hands and faces uplifted to the bright sky where the gods dwelt, and they stood before altars of stone or turf or ashes whereon were burn-

THE PARTHENON IN RUINS

Above the columns you see reliefs of centaurs. In the three-cornered pediment one broken piece of sculpture is left under the projecting roof. All the other statues that used to fill the pediment have been taken to the British Museum in London

ing sacrifices of flesh or of holy cakes. Sometimes the altars were out of doors, — in the woods, by the roadside, in the street, in the market-place, — but often they had beautiful temples built about them. Always there were priests to tend them, and people brought gifts of love to deck the place. All over the Greek world, from Asia Minor to Spain, were thousands of these altars and inclosing temples. Every city had scores of them. Every day prayers were going up to the gods, and on festival days men were singing hymns or dancing sacred dances in their honor.

Temples

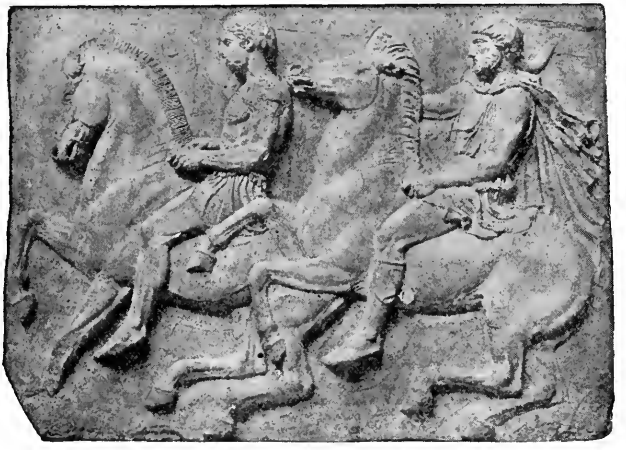
The most beautiful of all Greek temples was the Parthenon in Athens. It is, of course, in ruins now, as all ancient Greek buildings are; for, during two thousand years, rain and blowing dust have been at work wearing off the stone; earthquakes have shaken walls; fighting armies have battered them down or blown them up with powder; careless men have torn them to pieces to build new houses or to throw into the lime-kiln. Yet, even to-day, the Parthenon is so beautiful that it makes a man's heart leap to see it.

The Parthenon

In ancient times it was a low marble house with a porch on all sides of it. A great procession of columns held up the roof. They were big and strong and solemn, yet so delicately was every one curved as it rose that it seemed not crushed down by its own great weight but light and lithe like an athlete. In the shade of the high porch men could walk and look up at a carved procession of horsemen and charioteers and men and women afoot, going around the building at the top of the marble wall. Above the porches in the gable ends were great groups of marble statues large as life, showing deeds of Athene, the goddess of the temple and the favorite goddess of all Athens.

Ruins

This whole great building of marble — marble walls, marble floors, marble columns, marble statues, even marble tiles on the roof — was not a mass of blinding white. Rather there was a deep color in the flutes of the columns. Around the doors and along the edges of the wall was a painted border of leaves. On the peaks of the gable and the corner of the eaves were golden ornaments. The statues were delicately tinted so that



GREEK HORSEMEN

From the carved marble frieze that goes in a band around the wall of the Parthenon porch

the marble was of the color of flesh, the eyes were blue, and even the garments were tinted. Behind the statues was a reddish wall to set them out clearly to men's eyes.

Statue of Athene

Inside this temple, in a great room where only a soft light entered through the thin marble tiles of the roof and through the wide door that opened toward the morning sun, was Phidias' wonderful statue of Athene. She stood forty feet tall, gazing kindly down upon her people. Her face and hands and feet

were of soft-gleaming ivory perfectly carved, and all her long, straight-falling robe was gold. Below her curled sweet smoke from a holy fire that burned always. On her birthdays the room was filled with her Athenians singing to her and bringing gifts.

The architect who made that building spared no trouble in having it perfect. "A long, flat floor generally looks high at the ends and sunken in the middle," he said. "Now my floor must *look* flat. So I must raise it in the middle." This he did, and every big block of marble that went into that long floor had to be chiseled carefully to fit the gentle curve. If the floor curved, then every other line must curve to correspond, and the stonecutters had to chip delicately at every block, as though they had been carving statues.

The Builder's Work

Each column is made of eight pieces piled one on top of another, yet so perfectly were they fitted that even now, after war and earthquakes, there are joints that you cannot see; and nowhere is there coarse mortar to fill cracks or to hold the stones together. When it was done, the whole building, walls and floor and all, was rubbed down in some way, so that the face of the marble shines like hard ivory. Those old Greeks were willing to spend time and thought and care in making beautiful things.

In every temple, on street corners, in the market-place, at springs along the country roads, in sacred places around altars, in the courts of houses, were statues. Hundreds of them have been lost. Perhaps people long ago melted up the bronze ones in time of war to make weapons. Some of the marble ones barbarous people threw into lime-kilns and burned up to make lime to plaster their houses. But if all those that we have found could be brought together into one place, they would make a large town of marble and bronze people,

Statues

and every one of them would be beautiful and graceful and perfect, as common people are not.

There would be in that silent company people doing most of the things that ordinary men did. Some would be driving chariots and riding horses; some would be throwing quoits and boxing and wrestling and running. Others would be swinging swords and pushing lances and shooting arrows. A few would be playing with babies. Some would be bathing or putting on their cloaks or tying their sandals. Some would be praying or dancing; and many would be idly sitting or standing about waiting for friends, talking with companions, or musing about pleasant things. Many of them would be gods and goddesses, and others would be men, — orators, poets, athletes, warriors. Almost all of them would be sadly broken. The arms would be gone, or the legs would be missing, perhaps even the head would be lost or the nose broken off.

But after a while you would cease to be troubled by this broken condition, because in spite of it the statues would be so beautiful. The marble would be creamy and smooth, the bronze would be coated with soft green. The bodies would be slender and straight-limbed, with firm muscles like a young athlete's body. The faces would be of lovely shape, with a gentle, musing look. Besides, the very fact that they were broken would make them all the more interesting. It would remind you that they are hundreds and hundreds of years old, that they have seen wars and earthquakes, that they have watched generations of men come and go and have seen governments and civilizations swept away and new ones established. Many of them have been found in modern times buried in the ground, but what accident has brought them there we seldom know.

VENUS OF MELOS

For instance, the statue of Aphrodite, or Venus, in the picture, the goddess of love and beauty, was found about a hundred years ago on the island of Melos. A Greek peasant happened to see a glint of marble at the back of a cave as he passed its mouth one day. Going in, he found a statue, with arms already broken off and lost. He had never been taught to know and enjoy beautiful things, yet he thought this might be worth taking home, — any piece of marble was. He tied a rope around it and, harnessing his horse to it, dragged it down the stony road to the shore.

Venus of Melos

HERMES OF PRAXITELES

It happened that a Frenchman was visiting the island at the time, and when he saw the statue he eagerly bought it and presented it to the French king. Now it is one of the most precious treasures of the Louvre, a great art museum in Paris, and half the world has learned to love it. Many people have tried to fancy what Aphrodite was doing with those lost arms, how they were broken, when and why she was hidden, just where she stood originally, and who made her, but we really know almost nothing of her history.

The statue of Hermes we know more about. Praxiteles

made it, and the Greeks thought him one of the best of their sculptors. For years it stood in Here's temple in Olympia, where the great game-festival was held. But after the world became Christian, these games were stopped, and Olympia was deserted. An earthquake shook down the walls and toppled over the statues. A little river that flowed near by flooded and covered the ruins with sand, and grass and trees grew above the buried statues. Then at last, about forty years ago, some Germans who loved the beautiful old Greek things went to the place and dug, hoping to uncover something interesting. Under fifteen feet of sand and clay they found this Hermes, arms and legs gone, but otherwise perfect. On the sandal of a broken foot they even found the gilding that the artist had laid on two thousand years before.

Hermes of Praxiteles

The Olympic Games

This Olympia where Hermes was found was one of the most interesting places in Greece. The Greeks thought that the most beautiful thing in the world is the human body when it is properly developed. So the whole afternoon of every schoolboy's day was given up to gymnastic exercises. Not only was he taught to jump, to wrestle, to run, to throw the disk and the spear, and to dance; but he was given calisthenic drills and exercises with dumb-bells in order to make him graceful and to strengthen the muscles that were weak. For the purpose of all this training was not to make professional athletes who should be able to do special tricks, but to develop a strong and beautiful and healthy body.

Gymnastics

Not only did schoolboys have this training, but in every town were large free gymnasiums for grown men,

and every day all the citizens who had any leisure went there and exercised so that they should not grow weak or too fat or too lean as age came upon them. These exercises, moreover, were out of doors; for the gymnasium was really only a large yard surrounded by lines of small, low sheds used for dressing rooms. There was a shady porch before these rooms where men might lounge and rest after the games, before they took the bath. Sometimes the gymnasium was in a grove of olive trees or plane trees, where men strolled about.

Olympia

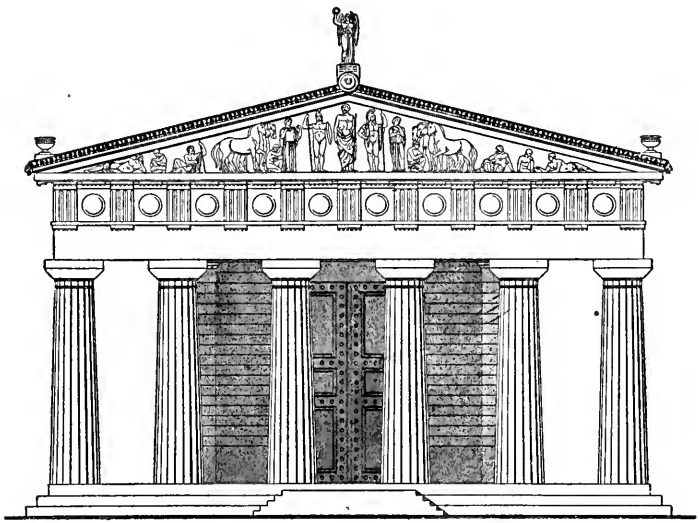
The Greeks, loving joy and beauty, believed that the gods also loved these things. One way in which they chose to please and honor the gods, therefore, was to play games for them to see. There were several places in Greece where temples and gymnasiums and race courses had been built for the purpose of holding these game-festivals, and Olympia was the greatest of them all. For hundreds of years Greeks from all over the Mediterranean world had gathered there for the games. Building after building had been erected until it was like a city of the gods. There were no dwelling houses; for nobody lived here permanently except a few priests to care for the sacred place. When visitors came every four years to the festival, they camped on the plain in tents and huts.

Buildings

But there were temples — a great one for Zeus and another for Here, his wife. In the Zeus temple was a gold and ivory statue of the god. Phidias, who had made the Parthenon Athene, had made this one also, and most men of the ancient world thought it the most beautiful of all statues. Modern men have never seen it or any other of all the gold and ivory statues; for some one of the enemies of Greece

who conquered her tore them all down, melted up the gold to coin money, and carved over the ivory into little statuettes, perhaps. But in the time of Olympia's glory two thousand years ago, the golden Zeus sat on his great golden throne, and men by hundreds and thousands, from the far corners of the world, came before the statue to sing praise to the real

Statue of Zeus



TEMPLE OF ZEUS AT OLYMPIA

It is now in ruins, but the floor and parts of columns, walls, and statues remain. From studying these and from reading an old Greek book which describes the temple, a modern man made this drawing

god, who was looking down, they thought, from his high throne in Olympus, while all the other gods stood about him to watch the festival. And every one of them had his altar out of doors somewhere in the sacred grounds of Olympia.

For in one way the Olympic games were very unlike our modern athletic meets. Men went to them to wor-

ship the gods, and the first day of the festival and the last were given over to religious processions from altar to altar, to prayers and hymns and sacrifices, and to the presenting of gifts to the gods. Standing about these temples and altars were thousands of statues of gods, heroes, and athletes. It was like a great, beautiful playground with men of marble and bronze at exercise.

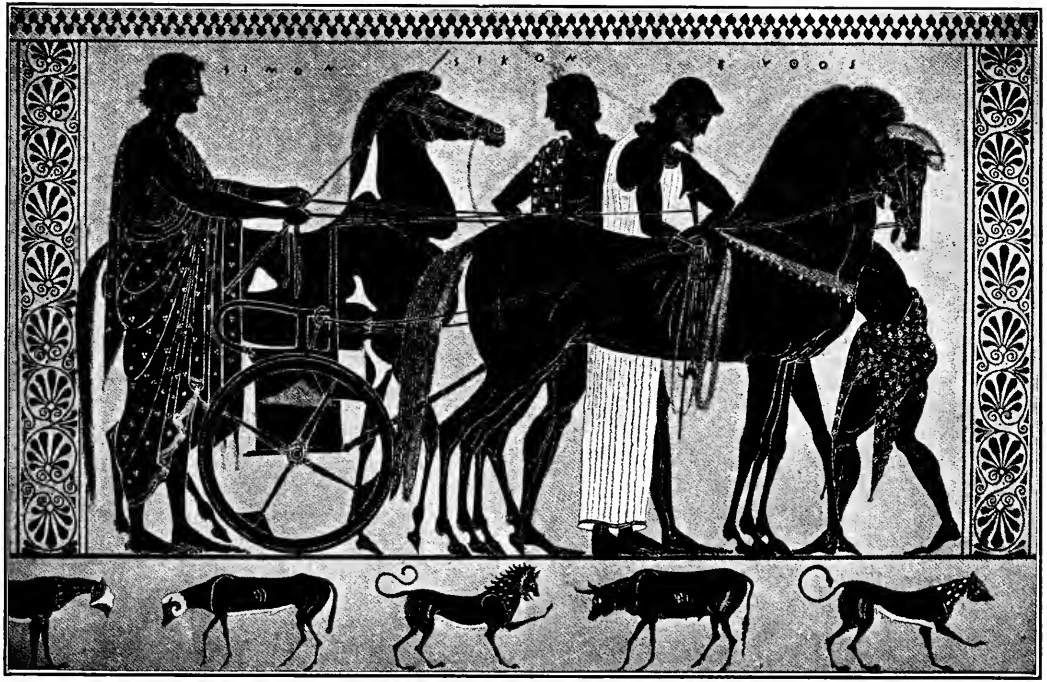
Around the grounds went a wall to keep all safe. Outside were still more interesting buildings. Here was the big gymnasium where men and boys trained for nine months to be ready for the great games. Here was the open course for the chariot races, and here were the long tiers of marble seats down the straight track where men and boys ran and boxed and wrestled and leaped and threw the disk and the spear.

On these marble seats every four years sat thousands of men come from all parts of the world to watch the Olympic games. There were Greeks from Gaul, Sicily, Africa, Asia Minor, and the Black Sea country, come home once more to their own beloved land. Perhaps they brought with them friendly Gauls and Scythians and Italians who were eager to learn the Greek ways. There were men from the still older civilizations of the East — Persians, Egyptians, Phœnicians, Hebrews.

Honors of the Winner

The winner of an Olympic game had his name and his fame carried around the world and his story told in a score of languages. When he went home to his own city, the people threw open the gates and poured out to meet him, crying his name aloud. A chorus of young men danced in his honor and sang a song that a poet had written to glorify him.

Here is part of such a song written by famous Pindar for the boy Asopichus, winner of the short foot race four hundred seventy-six years before Christ. When he



HARNESSING A CHARIOT

There are to be four horses. Notice the roached manes

returned to his home town, a chorus of boys sang it in a temple of the Graces. These were the three goddesses of song and art and all beautiful and polite and graceful things. Their lovely names occur in the first part of the song.

An Olympic Song

". . . O lady Aglaia, and thou Euphrosyne, lover of song, . . . children of the mightiest of the gods, listen and hear; and thou, Thalia, delighting in sweet sounds, and look down upon this triumphal company, moving with light step under happy fate. . . . Concerning Asopichus am I come hither to sing, for that through thee, Aglaia, in the Olympic games [his city] is winner. Fly, Echo, to Persephone's dark-walled home [that is, the land of the dead] and to his father bear the noble tidings, that seeing him thou mayst speak to him of his son, saying that for his father's honor in [Olympia's] famous valley he hath crowned his boyish hair with garlands from the glorious games."

The victor wore on his hair a simple little wreath of olive leaves in sign of his triumph. His family would treasure it forever, hanging it over their family altar and pointing to it with pride when it should be nothing but a dry twig. And perhaps his city would erect his statue in some public spot and carve his name below it, and his victory. If the boy's family was wealthy, in gratitude to the god who had helped him to win and in love for Olympia the glorious, they might set up another statue there, among all those that crowded the sacred field.

Greek Cities

Most of these Greeks were town dwellers. To be sure, there were peasants who lived in the country, but most farmers chose to have their houses in little villages and to

THREE GREEKS

The one at the left is Hermes, the messenger of the gods. He has a traveler's broad hat pushed back on his shoulders. The men's costume is such as was worn by all young men. All women wore a costume like that of the central figure

go out from there to work their fields. For the Greeks were sociable people, liking to meet their neighbors often, liking to sing and dance together, liking to hear the news and to talk politics and to discuss religion and philosophy. So the country was filled with thousands of villages and hundreds of cities.

Every little valley had its great town that was mistress

of the land and people round about it. The mountains cut it off from its next neighbor, and there was little travel across the ranges. So the people of each valley came to have their own ways of thinking and doing things, their own king or leader, their own patron god, even their own dialect. The people of one valley felt very closely bound together and very loyal to their own city and very sure that their own god, their own speech, their own ways, were best. They were often scornful of their neighbors' customs and sadly jealous and likely to fly to arms. So every town had its wall to protect it in time of war.

There were, indeed, great differences among the cities; and a stranger going to Greece to choose a home would have had a difficult time deciding among all the interesting and varied places. There was, for instance, Sparta. There the people were ruled by very strict laws. The whole aim of a Spartan's life was to be a brave soldier and to fight for his city. Everything he did from the time he was a little boy was done to help accomplish this purpose. He was taken away from his home and his mother, and he lived in a military camp among men and boys. Every day he had military drill and gymnastic exercises, and that was his school. He had coarse food and coarse clothes — only one tunic a year. He had to forage for his food. He had to learn to endure hunger and pain without murmuring. In fact he lived always like a soldier.

Sparta

There was very little beauty in Sparta. The houses were rough buildings of squared logs. The furniture was scanty and crude. There were few vases or pictures or statues in the whole city. There were temples, but they were not lovely like the Parthenon. Yet if you

A Greek Potter at Work

He is painting a vase. Notice how he holds his brush. Athene, the goddess of handicraft, is going to crown him. The spear and helmet show her also as goddess of war

count courage and temperance and love of country as enough virtue for men to possess, then you would have chosen Sparta as the noblest of all Greek states. Plutarch, an ancient Greek writer and a lover of Sparta, says: "No man was at liberty to live as he pleased, the city being like one great camp where all had their stated allowance and knew their public charge, each man concluding that he was born, not for himself, but for his country. . . . [They thought] nothing more disagreeable than to live by (or for) themselves. Like bees, they acted with one impulse for the public good, and always assembled about their prince. They were possessed with a thirst of honor, an enthusiasm bordering upon insanity, and had not a wish but for their country."

But if you had wanted kind family love and a comfortable home; if you had wanted to go to good schools and get learning; if you had wanted to live among beautiful things, and to meet travelers from distant lands; if you had wanted to hear poets and philosophers talk and see artists at work, you would not have chosen Sparta.

Other Cities

It might have been Ægina, whose men were sailors and even pirates, some of them. It might have been Chalcis, the busy and prosperous city of bronze workers, the mother of more than twenty colonies. Or you might have chosen Corinth, the famous merchant town, where ships were always going and coming, and foreign traders were walking the streets, where the best vases of Greece were made, and where great sculptors worked.

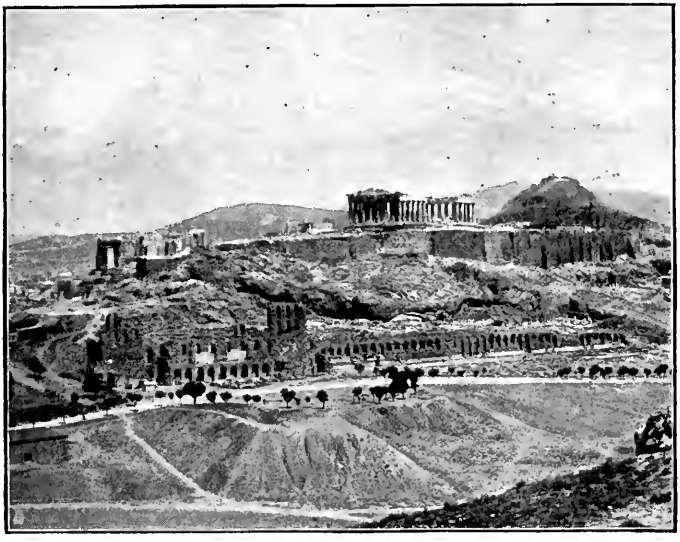
Athens

But probably you would have chosen Athens, the city of the greatest poets and architects and painters and sculptors in the world, and of famous orators and brave generals. Here, as in every Greek city, was an Acropolis, or hill, as the heart of the town. This in earlier times had been a fort, placed for safety where the steep hillsides were difficult for the enemy to climb. The town was clustered at the foot. But later a wall had been run around the whole city. Then the Acropolis, safe inside the wall, had become, not the fort, but the sacred place, where the most holy temples and statues were.

Acropolis

It was a shining glory of marble. The Parthenon was there. It stood high above the city, clearly to be seen; and I think that Athenians must have lifted eager eyes to it early every morning. But it did not stand alone on the flat hilltop. Near it was

another temple of Athene, with delicate carvings and a marvelous porch with maidens' figures for columns. Surrounding both the temples were statues of marble and bronze. The road that wound up the western end



THE ACROPOLIS OF ATHENS

of the hill near the top met a wide marble stairway, that climbed to broad porches before the bronze entrance doors of the sacred ground.

Into the stony side of the Acropolis was cut a huge half circle, and marble benches were built here, tier above tier, until there was room to seat all the people of Athens, facing a stage and a dancing-circle. This was the theater, sacred to Dionysus, the god of the vineyard and of wine, god of joy and the dance. Once every year plays were held in his honor, and Athenians saw acted out old stories of their heroes and their gods. Leading from one of the theater doors was a street, lined on both sides with grace-

ful little monuments of marble, topped with bronze tripods, won by the men who had given the best plays. And beautiful things those old plays are; they have been read and studied and imitated by men of all times.

The high-lifted buildings on the Acropolis were the chief beauty of Athens, but not its only one. There were scores of temples, small and large, scattered through the city, no one of them so beautiful as the Parthenon, but all of them built on much the same plan and all of them lovely. Here and there along the streets were fountains — little streams of water falling into carved marble basins, where the maidservants came every morning early with vases on their heads, to get water for their households.

Other City Scenes

The city wall stood high and broad with nine gates, where the citizens might go out and in. It was about five miles around. A man could walk from end to end of the town in half an hour. Inside this small space was crowded a city of over a hundred and fifty thousand people. There was no room for lawns or parks. Houses were built close together, and their fronts were on the very street. Those streets were narrow and unpaved and without sidewalks; because the ground was hilly, they were crooked, winding about on the level places.

Wall

Streets

The houses were uninteresting from the outside with their flat roofs and blank walls with only one great door. But the best of them must have been pleasant to live in; for when the great door was passed, the home-comer walked down a short hall and came to a court open to the clear sky, with a fountain, perhaps, playing in the center. Before the entrance stood a little altar of Zeus, the protector of strangers, for all Greeks were hospitable, and liked to entertain guests.

Houses

A Greek Lady and Her Slave

These figures are carved on a Greek gravestone. The seated lady represents the one who is dead. She is examining her jewel box brought by the slave

All about was a porch, and back of this opened shallow rooms with only draperies to shut them off. Many of these were guest rooms.

Behind this court was another and larger one, with shrubs and perhaps a tree or two to make it green and cool. This one was sacred to the family, and visitors only rarely came here. There were pleasant porches about, where the women sat to spin and embroider. Children romped here, swinging, rolling hoops, playing knuckle-bones. Around this court, also, were airy rooms where the family lived and worked. Here, too, was an altar, this one to Hestia, goddess of the hearth and home; and every morning she received loving sacrifice and prayer.

These houses were pleasant and comfortable, but were not very large and not costly. Sometimes the walls were of rough stone, sometimes of sun-dried brick. There was little furniture; and while it was beautiful, it was very simple, too, for the Athenians hated extravagance. "Nothing too much" was a common Greek motto. Moreover, an Athenian man spent much of his time in the public places of the city, and it was these that he felt should have care and money spent upon them to beautify them.

The Market-place

The market-place was an open paved square in the center of the city. It was ornamented with statues, and about the sides were beautiful little marble buildings where the officers of the city did their work, and in one of them was the city hearth, with its undying, holy fire. Along one side of the square was a covered walk, with columns supporting the roof. The back wall of this portico was painted with pictures from brave Athenian history. This "Painted Porch," as it was called, was one of the favorite lounging places of Athens.

Meetings were sometimes held in this market-place; and on festival nights sacred dances were given here, and holy hymns sung. But the chief use of it was for buying and selling. Practically all the trading of the city was done here. Every forenoon it was the noisiest, busiest, most crowded place in Athens. Dozens of little tables cluttered the open square, some with awnings to shade them, all heaped with interesting produce. At every one stood a merchant, calling his wares, perhaps striking a gong to attract attention. And walking about from table to table were Athenian men, buying — fine gentlemen selecting food for the evening banquet, gay young fellows choosing perfume, serious millers and manufacturers inspecting samples of wheat and leather and wool.

They could find there everything that was produced in the whole Mediterranean world — fresh fish from the Gulf sparkling three miles away, and salt fish from the Black Sea; goat's meat and mutton, milk and cheese and butter, vegetables and fruits, wine and olive oil from the farms round about Athens; wild honey from the mountains; garlands of flowers from the meadows and river banks; shoes, hats, cloaks, vases, and bread from the shops of the city; statuettes and jewelry from the artists' benches; armor and swords and knives and pots from the forges of bronze and iron workers; painted scrolls and fine linen and curious objects from Egypt; medicines imported from the African colonies; ointments and perfumes and boxes of sweet-smelling wood from Arabia; carved ivory combs and brilliant rugs from distant India; skins and leather from Scythia; salt and dyestuffs from Spain; tin from far-away Britain.

How did all these things come to Athens? Three miles away was her port, Piræus. The harbor shores

were lined with storehouses, not ugly things of red iron or dirty brick, but long, graceful buildings of white marble, with stone steps leading into the water.

Piræus

Here the little Greek ships, with their square sails and their twenty or thirty oars, were going and coming continually. The marble docks were filled with slaves carrying goods on their backs, with captains giving orders, with merchants buying wheat, with money lenders giving little bags of clinking coin to the outbound traders. And in the harbor, on guard, were long ships of war, with their three banks of oars and their sharp, bronze beak at the prow, ready to ram the enemy.

The town of Piræus had straight, broad streets and fine, marble houses — a spick and span new town, neater but less lovely than her mother, Athens. She, also, had a wall to protect her. The road that led to Athens had to be made safe; otherwise, in time of war, an army might have camped between the two towns, have cut off Athens' supplies from the sea, and starved her people. So a high wall stretched straight on both sides of the road, making it like a giant's fenced lane. These "Long Walls," as people called them, made one city of Piræus and Athens.

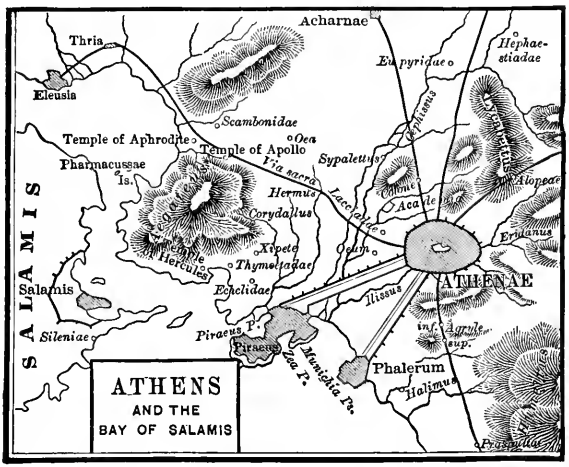
All these dignified temples, planted thickly through the city, these pleasant porticoes and graceful monuments and fountains along the streets, these statues that graced the Acropolis and the market and the temples, these theaters and gymnasiums and public groves, the orderliness and roominess and elegance of Piræus, made Athens the most beautiful city in the world. Visitors from every shore journeyed to her to enjoy her beauty. Young artists went there to work under her great painters and sculptors and architects. Poets and philosophers gathered there, because Athens appreciated and inspired them.

The People

Merchants and workmen from other states flocked to Athens, because there they could find work and a good living. It was a city not only beautiful but well-ruled, well-policed, prosperous, and happy. She was, as one of her own great men called her, "the school of Greece."

Education

The men who crowded the market-place and the docks were not ignorant sailors and traders. All but the very poorest of them had been to school from the time they



Notice the "Long Walls" between Athens and Piræus

were seven until they were eighteen. Plato, an old Greek writer, says: "[His parents] send the child to teachers, and enjoin them to see to his manners even more than to his reading and music; and the teachers do as they are desired. And when the boy has learned his letters and is beginning to understand what is written, . . . they put into his hands the works of great poets, which he reads at school. In these are contained many admonitions and many tales and praises of ancient famous

A Greek School

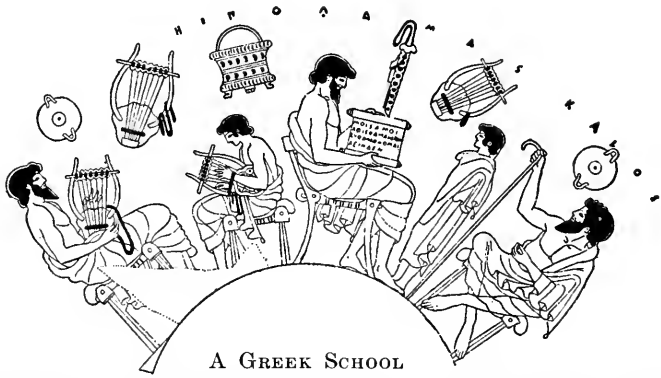
This and the next picture are painted on the inside of a shallow, round drinking cup. At the left a boy is learning to sing, while the teacher accompanies him on the double flute. In the middle a teacher is correcting a boy's exercise, written on a wax tablet. At the right a slave is waiting to take the boys home. On the wall hang a book or scroll, a wax tablet, a lyre, a drawing-square

men, which he is required to learn by heart, in order that he may imitate them and desire to become like them.

"Then again the teachers of the lyre take similar care that their young disciple is temperate and gets into no mischief. And when they have taught him the use of the lyre, they introduce him to the poems of other excellent poets, who are the lyric poets, and these they set to music, and make their harmonies and rhythms quite familiar to the children, in order that they may learn to be more gentle and harmonious and rhythmical, and so more fitted for speech and action; for the life of man in every part has need of harmony and rhythm. Then they send them to the master of gymnastics, in order that their bodies may better minister to the virtuous mind, and that the weakness of their bodies may not force them to play the coward in war, or on any other occasion."

School

After the boy was eighteen, perhaps he joined a phi-



A Greek School

At the left a boy is learning to play the lyre. In the middle a boy is reciting while the teacher holds the scroll. A slave waits. On the wall are two drinking cups, two lyres, a lunch basket, and a flute

losopher's class and studied about more difficult things — geometry, astronomy, religion, science, rhetoric. These classes were not held in buildings, as our college classes are, but in the shelter of the porch of the gymnasium, or in the covered walk beside the market-place, or under the trees in the park. Nor did the students sit at desks with pads and pencils, but in friendly fashion on benches or on the floor of the porch, or they strolled up and down the walks, while the master talked. Grown men, too, often listened to the class and entered into the discussion.

University

Some of the things they discussed were great scientific problems; and the decisions they came to guided men's thinking for hundreds of years and enlightened the minds of people all over the world. They talked of the stars and the sun and the moon. They discussed the causes of eclipses and of the change in the length of day. Some of them believed that the earth and the planets revolve about the sun, and that it is the sun that lights the moon. They knew that the earth is

Learning

a sphere, and they considered how to divide it by meridians of longitude and parallels of latitude, and so to determine locations of places. They studied geometry, as we now study it in our high schools and colleges, drawing figures, finding the areas of squares and circles and triangles, and the contents of cubes and spheres and cylinders. They discussed what the earth is made of, and what existed before the earth, and how man and the animals were created. They speculated about whether or not the soul is immortal, about what makes beauty and ugliness, about what light is, and how sound is caused. And a hundred other things they discussed, which our astronomers and geometers and scientists and philosophers are still discussing.

SOCRATES

His name and one of his sayings are carved in Greek letters on the marble

One of the greatest of these teachers was Socrates.

Socrates

He was a poor man, a stonecutter by trade. Yet he devoted his life to the good of his fellow citizens. Xenophon, one of his friends, in writing about him says: "He was constantly in public; for he went in the morning to the

places for walking, and to the gymnasiums; at the time when the market was full, he was to be seen there; and the rest of the day he was where he was likely to meet the greatest number of people; he was generally engaged in discourse, and all who pleased were at liberty to hear him." Young men, especially, flocked around him to listen and to learn wisdom; yet he never took classes for money, because he thought he was not wise enough to teach.

His purpose in thus going about the city and talking with all men, high and low, he himself explained. "While I have life and strength I shall never cease from the practice and teaching of philosophy, exhorting any one whom I meet after my manner, . . . saying: 'O my friend, why do you, who are a citizen of the great and mighty and wise city of Athens, care so much about laying up the greatest amount of money and honor and reputation, and so little about wisdom and truth and the greatest improvement of the soul, which you never regard or heed at all? Are you not ashamed of this?'"

As we look back at Socrates now, we see that he lived a wonderfully pure, unselfish, and useful life, and many of his fellow Athenians thought so, too. Xenophon says: "Of those who knew what sort of man Socrates was, such as were lovers of virtue continue to regret him above all other men, even to the present day, as having contributed in the highest degree to their advancement in goodness. To me, being such as I have described him, so pious that he did nothing without sanction of the gods; so just that he wronged no man, even in the most trifling affair, but was of service in the most important matters to those who enjoyed his society; so temperate that he never preferred pleasure to virtue; so wise that he never erred in distinguishing better from worse, needing no

counsel from others, but being sufficient in himself to discriminate between them; so able to explain and settle such questions by argument; and so capable of discerning the character of others, of confuting those who were in error, and of exhorting them to virtue and honor, he seemed to be such as the best and happiest of men would be."

Yet he made many enemies. When he reproached a man with being dishonest and proved another one unduly conceited or showed the selfishness of a third, these people sometimes, instead of being thankful to Socrates for making their faults known to them and instead of trying to reform, grew angry and hated him. And when vain people are angry, they are likely to say all kinds of false things.

Finally this charge was made against Socrates: "Socrates offends against the laws in not paying respect to those gods whom the city respects and in introducing other new deities; he also offends against the laws in corrupting the youth." He was tried in court, and in spite of all his friends could do and in spite of his good and noble life he was sentenced to death. He died bravely, even smilingly, and without a murmur at the injustice of his fellow citizens, refusing to let his friends buy his pardon or bribe the prison guards to allow his escape, because he thought such things were dishonorable.

399 B.C.

Nor did he fear death, but rather welcomed it. "Let a man be of good cheer about his soul," he said, "who has cast away the pleasures and ornaments of the body as alien to him, . . . and has followed after the pleasures of knowledge in this life; who has adorned the soul in her own proper jewels, which are temperance and justice and courage and nobility and truth — in these arrayed

she is ready to go on her journey to the world below when her time comes."

Government

Such an education as the Athenians received and such busy and interesting lives as they led made freedom-loving men. They had early done away with kings, and ruled themselves. On the Pnyx hill in Athens was arranged an open-air meeting place with a platform for speakers. Here, about four times every month, came all the freemen of Athens, rich and poor, to elect their officers, to make their laws, to levy taxes, to decide on matters of war and commerce and building.

The government was what we call a democracy, not a republic like ours. We elect men to do our country's business for us; in Athens every citizen directly voted on all questions. Such a thing is not possible except in a small state: in all Attica (the state ruled by Athens) there were not more than 50,000 voters. **In Athens**

Pericles, one of the greatest of Athenians, spoke of his city's government much as follows: "It is called a democracy because it is carried on for the benefit not of the few but of the many. Before its laws all men enjoy equality in the matter of their private affairs; while, in regard to public rank, every man is given office according to his merit. No man is prevented by poverty or obscurity from doing the state any good service of which he is capable." Any Athenian freeman might hold any office of his country, just as in America. Indeed, the Athenians went one step further in their desire to give every man a chance to work for the state: some officers they chose by lot.

Yet two faults prevented this government from being the perfect thing that it seems. One was this: no foreigner might ever get the right to vote, not though he

lived and worked in Athens for many years; nor might his sons or grandsons after him become Athenian citizens. And "foreigners" to Athenians meant not only Persians and Egyptians but men from any other state than Attica, even Spartans and Thebans. Another great fault was this: there were more slaves in the country than freemen, and they, of course, had no voice in making laws or in planning their lives. Freedom of all men and the right of all men to vote did not come in any country for many hundred years.

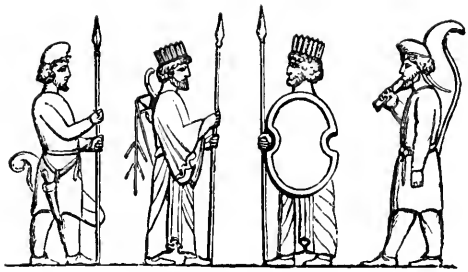
Other Forms

While Athens had a democracy, other Greek cities had different forms of government. There were kings in some states. In others there were tyrants, or men who got the power into their own hands and ruled until a rebellion or some turn of affairs expelled them. Sometimes a small number of people from old, noble families or from rich families controlled the city. And in most of the states the government frequently changed, as people became dissatisfied. All of them began with kings, even as Athens did; most of them at one time or another were seized by tyrants; and many of them tried a democracy for a longer or a shorter time.

Every Greek had an interest in government and a sense of freedom that no other ancient people felt, except the Romans. And because of this freedom and the love of it these little quarrelsome states did many brave and notable things, and the bravest work of all, I think, was the Persian war.

---

1. Make a cardboard model of a Greek house. (Plan on page 36, Gardner and Jevons, *Manual of Greek Antiquities.*) **2.** Look at the buildings around you and see whether any of them have copied anything Greek. **3.** Are there any places in your neighborhood that the Athenians would have beautified? **4.** What things were necessary to make a person an Athenian citizen? What is necessary in America?



PERSIAN SOLDIERS

At the sides are common foot-soldiers. One carries a bow over his shoulder, the other has his in a case at his side. The two central figures are men of the king's guard with the head-dress of nobles. Notice the bow and quiver at the back of the one on the left

CHAPTER III

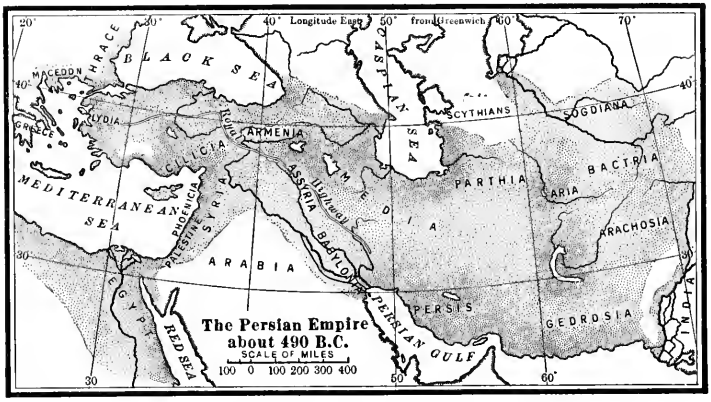
GREECE AND HER NEIGHBORS

The Persian War

BY 490 B.C. Persia, over in Asia, had become the greatest country in the world — the richest and the largest, stretching from India to the African desert. She had conquered Egypt, old Babylonia and Assyria, Phœnicia, Palestine, a score of old and new nations, and all the Greek cities in Asia Minor and Thrace. In fact she had conquered all the eastern world except Greece. Of course she was not willing to allow an exception.

Now Greece was only a little spot compared with the great empire of Persia, so when the king sent messengers to the cities of this little country, asking them for earth and water as a sign that they recognized him as master of all lands and lord of all the seas, he thought that surely they would send it, out of fear. And some of them, to their shame, did it; but the Athenians threw the messen-

gers over a cliff as they did their criminals, and the Spartans threw them into a well, saying, "Take earth and water from there." Then King Darius in wrath sent a great fleet across, and the ships of that fleet the conquered Phœnicians and the conquered Greeks of Asia



Compare the size of Greece with the size of Persia

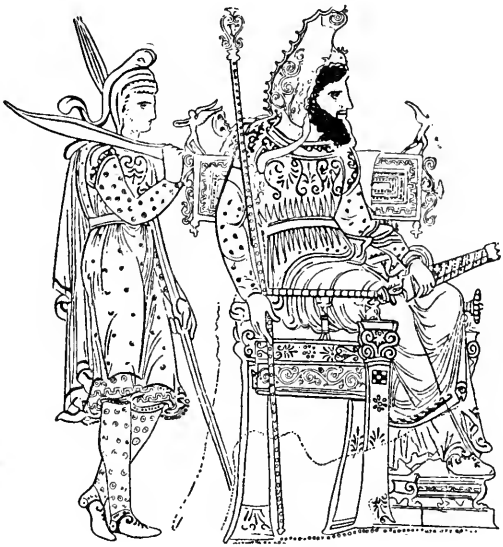
Minor had to supply; for Persia was an inland country and had no boats.

When that great fleet landed in Attica, there was only a little army of Athenians with a few of their good friends, the Platæans, to meet them; for, as usual, the other states were jealous and distrustful of one another or thought that there was no hurry. But in the face of this Asiatic host that was perhaps three times its number the little army waited until a favorable moment, when the Persians were off their guard. Then the Greeks charged at the run, pushing the enemy into the water, slew more than 6000 of them, burned some of their ships, and sent them back to Persia beaten.

Battle of Marathon, 490 B.C.

This was the battle of Marathon, which for hun-

dreds of years the Athenians celebrated as their bravest victory. "They first endured the sight of the Medic garb and the men that wore it," Herodotus says of the warriors of Marathon; "but until that time the very name of the Medes [or Persians] was a terror to the Greeks."



A Persian King

As a Greek vase-painter drew him, showing the Eastern gorgeousness

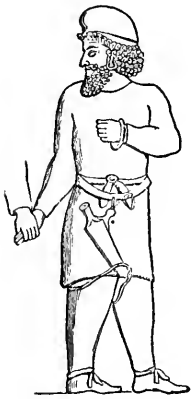
The Persian king was eager for revenge for this defeat, but other wars busied him for a time; and then he died. The installing of the new king, Xerxes, still further delayed vengeance, so that there were ten years of waiting. And marvelous use the Athenians made of that time under the advice of Themistocles, one of the ablest citizens Athens ever had. Plutarch, an old Greek writer, says, "While others imagined the defeat of the Persians at Marathon had put an end to the war, [Themistocles] considered it as the beginning of greater conflicts; and for the general benefit of Greece he was preparing himself and the Athenians against those conflicts, because he foresaw them at a distance."

Work of Themistocles

He knew that the Persians would come by sea. There-

fore he urged the Athenians to build ships of war; for up to that time they had fought little on water. He persuaded, pleaded, threatened, talked in the street, in the market, in the barber shops, at banquets, in the public assembly, until he succeeded in getting the Athenians to make a port at Piræus and to build 200 ships.

Then the Persians descended upon them again with a great army moving down the coasts and a thousand vessels sailing beside it. Nothing could stop Xerxes, the Great King. He built a bridge of boats across the Hellespont and cut a canal through a rocky neck of land, that his ships might avoid a stormy headland. Millions of men he had, it was said, drawn from all the nations of the Persian empire — Scythians and barbarians from the North, Arabs and Egyptians and savage African tribes from the South, the polished Greeks of Asia Minor, Phœnician sailors, Assyrians, even men from India, the edge of the world. The very names of them all would take a half page of print.



PERSIAN FOOT-SOLDIER

They were clothed in all manner of costume — in the skins of panthers and lions and foxes, in leather armor, in helmets of horses' skulls, in long white cotton garments, in brilliant silk. They carried all manner of weapons — spears tipped with bronze or with antelope horn, bows of cane and palm and ash, curved scimitars, knotted clubs, shields of wood or rawhide or crane's skin or bronze. It was a strange medley of nations, like a circus. Among them were fierce barbarian warriors and the well-trained, brave band of Persian soldiers that were the king's guard. They spread terror as they came.

For once the Greeks realized that they must give over their petty jealousies and unite. Yet they were not ready when the great army swept down to the narrow pass of Thermopylæ at the north of Greece. Then the Spartans showed the results of their lifelong training. Three hundred of them were there under their brave king, Leonidas. With about 4000 to help them, they held the pass for six days against that mighty army.

Battle of Thermopylæ, 480 B.C.

NOBLE PERSIAN GUARD
Carrying bow and quiver

Up to the time of fighting, the Spartans amused themselves in playing games and singing songs; for war was their sport. They laughed at the news about the number of the enemy. Rumor said that it made cities poor to feed that great army; that the hosts drank rivers dry; that when they shot their arrows, the sun was hidden. "So much the better," laughed the Spartans, "we shall fight in the shade." On the last day most of the troops returned home. But the 300 Spartans, with 700 brave men to help them, even though they knew there was no hope of winning, stood their ground against the mighty host and died fighting, Leonidas and every Spartan but one. After that brave but useless battle the great Persian host flooded on into middle Greece.

Then Themistocles had the hardest work of his life to do — to drag the Athenians out of their city and aboard ship. For he realized that they could not hold Athens, that the Persians would camp about it and starve them out, that the Greeks' only hope was in their fleet. He accomplished

Battle of Salamis, 480 B.C.

SOLDIER OF MARATHON

A Greek gravestone. The man wears bronze greaves and body armor, with an undergarment of cloth or leather to keep the bronze from the skin. Generally the helmet covered the ears, cheeks, and nose, and the soldier carried a shield and wore a sword

his purpose at last, and the Persians camped in the empty city and burned it. But the Greeks were ready for them on the sea, and while the Great King and his army sat on the shore to watch, in the bay of Salamis they met the Persian fleet of four times their number. In "The Persians," an old Greek play by Æschylus, a Persian messenger tells the story of the fight:

"Then the fierce trumpet's voice
Blazed o'er the main; and on the salt sea flood
Forthwith the oars, with measured plash, descended,
And all their lines, with dexterous speed displayed,
Stood with opposing front. The right wing first,
Then the whole fleet bore down, and straight uprose
A mighty shout. 'Sons of the Greeks, advance!
Your country free, your children free, your wives!
The altars of your native gods deliver,
And your ancestral tombs — all's now at stake!'
A like salute from our whole line back-rolled

In Persian speech. No more delay, but straight
Trireme on trireme, brazen beak on beak
Dashed furious. A Greek ship led on the attack,
And from the prow of a Phœnician struck
The figure-head; and now the grapple closed
Of each ship with his adverse desperate.
At first the main line of the Persian fleet
Stood the harsh shock; but soon their multitude
Became their ruin; in the narrow firth
They might not use their strength, and, jammed together,
Their ships with brazen beaks did bite each other,
And shattered their own oars. Meanwhile the Greeks
Stroke after stroke dealt dexterous all around,
Till our ships showed their keels, and the blue sea
Was seen no more, with multitude of ships
And corpses covered. All the shores were strewn,
And the rough rocks, with dead; till, in the end,
Each ship in the barbaric host that yet
Had oars, in most disordered flight rowed off."

After that, in the spring, the Greeks beat the Persians once more in the long and bloody battle of Platæa. "Of an army of 300,000 men," . . . Herodotus says, "not 3000 survived." The Persian invasion of Greece was ended for good and all. The Athenians returned to their ruined town and began to rebuild it into that beautiful city that was the wonder of the world.

The Delian Confederacy

When the war was over, many of the states of Greece looked to Athens as the queen of the sea and the savior of the Greeks. A great league of friendly states, called the Delian Confederacy, was formed, with Athens at the head. The league was sworn to protect Greece from Persia.

Then Pericles, the Athenian, had a great dream. He saw his city as the head of a noble Greek empire.

The business of Athens should be to direct this empire, to keep peace, to see justice done, to build and train and operate a strong navy that should be the protector of the empire. Under this peace every state might go on freely with its work of commerce and manufacturing, with its arts and its education. The governments of the states were to be democratic, like the government of Athens. And Athens, through her beauty and her learning, through the freedom and wisdom and large-mindedness of her citizens, was to be worthy of her high place as head of this empire.

The dream was partly realized. Pericles' wisdom brought it about. For thirty years his great mind planned all Athens' actions. He tied the empire together with the swift-moving fleet. He collected dues and planned the spending of the money. He set artists and builders to work to beautify Athens and Piræus. During his thirty years of service Athens became more democratic and more patriotic, better educated, more beautiful, more prosperous. At the same time Athenian learning and art and law and manner of governing spread through half of Greece. Wealth, commerce, comfort, increased throughout the league. The Delian Confederacy was the noblest government the world had thus far seen.

Pericles

Pericles was not the king or tyrant of this empire. For thirty years the citizens of democratic Athens, recognizing his greatness, elected him first to one office and then to another, and, whatever post he held, they generally followed his advice.

Thucydides, an Athenian historian of the time, says that Pericles, "being powerful because of his high rank and talents and being manifestly proof against bribery, controlled the multitude with an independent spirit and was not led by them so much as he himself led them.

For he did not say anything to humor them; but he was able on the strength of his character to contradict them even at the risk of their displeasure. Whenever, for instance, he perceived them unreasonably and insolently confident, by his language he would dash them down to alarm. And, on the other hand, when they were unreasonably alarmed, he would raise them again to confidence." This time, the time of the greatest glory of Greece, is called "The Age of Pericles," because he was the great directing mind of the period. 461–429 B.C.

But even inside the Delian Confederacy the old jealousy was at work; and, outside it, Sparta and her friends were eaten with envy. As soon as the danger from Persia was over, the old quarrels began again. For twenty-seven years there was almost continuous warfare between Sparta and her allies on one side and Athens and hers on the other. The whole Greek world from the Ægean islands to Magna Græcia was dragged into it. There was terrible slaughter of men and ruin of cities. An Athenian army of 40,000 was almost entirely wiped out in Sicily. Sparta captured 160 of Athens' ships and sentenced 3000 prisoners to death. City Jealousy

Beaten on land and sea, cooped up and starving at home, the Athenians were forced to tear down the walls of Piræus and the long walls that stretched from port to city, to be content with only twelve ships of war, and to obey the commands of Sparta. Then for thirty-three years Sparta ruled Greece with stubborn selfishness and cruelty. First one city and then another revolted and had to endure bitter punishment, until Thebes rose up and took vengeance upon the punisher, humbled Sparta, and devastated her land. 404–371 B.C.

Macedon Conquers the World

Meanwhile, north of Greece, Macedon had been growing strong. Greek colonies on the coast and occasional Greek immigrants who traveled inland had gradually spread Greek education there. The kings of one tribe, especially, became thoroughly Hellenized. They traveled in Greece, spoke Greek, entertained Greek poets and artists and teachers at their court, and even took part in the Olympic games.

Macedon

Philip, one of these kings, conquered the other six tribes of Macedon, held them firmly in his hand, made himself their beloved hero, and built up a marvelous army. With this well-trained army he conquered Greece when all her small states were quarreling among themselves. But he interfered little with their government, and invited rather than commanded them to help him in his great plan of humbling Persia. For though the Greeks had beaten her on their own ground and had driven her out of their country, yet she was still the proud mistress of Asia and often interfered in Greek affairs.

Philip was killed before he could carry out his plan, and his son Alexander inherited the kingship of this young Macedon, inherited Philip's strong and loyal army and his ambition to conquer Asia. In 334 B.C., when he was only twenty-two years old, with a well-knit little army of 35,000 men, Alexander set out to master an empire fifty times as large as his own country — an empire whose king had more gold in one treasure house than was in all Macedon together and servants in one palace more numerous than Alexander's whole army.

Alexander's Wars

The history of the next eleven years reads like a tale from the "Arabian Nights." Alexander fought against

twenty times his number and never once lost. There were battles where the enemy rode on elephants and drove in chariots with scythes on the wheels to cut men down. Macedonian troops forded rivers and climbed slippery banks in the very face of the foe and yet won. About a great walled town they built a hill of earth two hundred and fifty feet high, that they might fight from it.

Alexander conquered cities so old that their age seemed like a fable and so rich that Greece appeared a beggar before them. He captured treasures of a hundred million dollars and the Great King's tent with its basins and bath of gold and its scented water and its perfumed air. He gave banquets where nine thousand people sat down to table, and every one received a gold drinking cup as a gift. He sent a party to explore the great river Indus, which probably no Greek had ever seen before.

The army climbed over a snowy mountain pass more than 13,000 feet high. For sixty days they traveled through a desert that was the hottest place on earth, where three-fourths of the division died of thirst and hunger and fatigue. At one time a wound brought the young conqueror near to death off at the world's end.

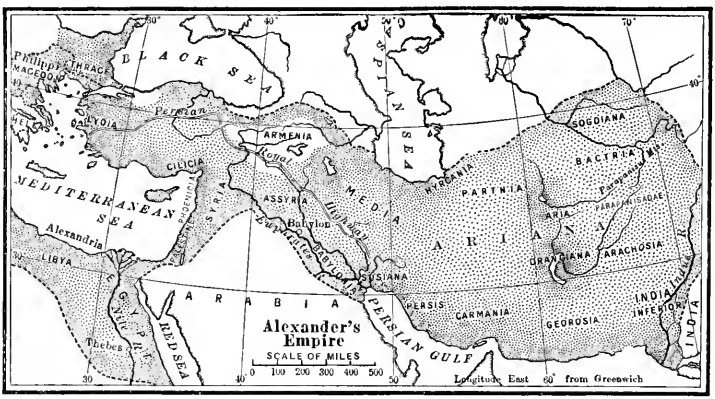
There were passionate quarrels between the king and his army that ended in tears and embraces. And always the battles brought victory, until Alexander was master of the largest empire that had ever existed, and the whole civilized world was ringing with his fame.

Alexander Himself

Aside from the marvelous things he had done, Alexander himself was a hero to stir men's hearts. No one could have been braver. He always rode in the very front of the troops in brilliant armor and with white feathers in his helmet, so that no eye could miss him. He was afraid to go nowhere. Once when he was besieging a city and was scaling the wall,

the ladder broke below him. Instead of leaping back among his army, he leaped forward into the city with only three men to help him.

Being brave and straightforward himself, he liked these qualities in other men. Plutarch tells of his sending a gift to a far city in Italy because of a brave deed of one of her citizens done years before. And after having conquered a certain king who had made a brave fight, "Alexander asked him," Plutarch says,


BLACK SEA
CASPIAN SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
RED SEA
PERSIAN GULF
ARABIA
ARIANA
Alexander's Empire
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500
Longitude East 60 from Greenwich
Alexandria
Thebes
Babylon
Susa
Persepolis
Ecbatana
Hecatompylos
Bactra
Zariaspa
Maracanda
Alexandreia
Alexandreia
Alexandreia

how the Persian queen and her daughters were treated when they were captured after a certain battle. Alexander sent word to them "that they had nothing to fear from Alexander, for his dispute with Darius [the Persian king] was only for empire and that they should find themselves provided for in the same manner as when Darius was in his greatest prosperity. . . . They [were, indeed, given] as many domestics and were served in all respects in as honorable a manner as before. . . . Though they were now captives he considered that they were ladies, not only of high rank, but of great modesty and virtue. . . . As if they had been in a holy temple, rather than in an enemy's camp, they lived unseen and unapproached in the most sacred privacy."

Having captured so many cities and cities so rich, he had a great mass of spoil; but he seemed to have no love for wealth except to use it. He was continually making gifts to any who he thought deserved them. At one time he gave a great banquet for the Macedonians who had married Persian wives and "he paid off all their debts," says Plutarch. When his soldiers became wounded or ill or worn-out in his service, he sent them home with rich presents. Indeed, he was so lavish with gifts that his mother reproved him, saying that he would make kings of all his friends.

In spite of the magnificence of the Persian life that he was taking part in, he seems himself to have preferred simplicity. Plutarch says: "He found that his great officers set no bounds to their luxury, that they were most extravagantly delicate in their diet and profuse in other respects; insomuch that one had silver nails in his shoes, another had many camel-loads of earth brought from Egypt to rub himself with when he went to the wrestling ring; . . . more made use of rich perfumes

DARIUS, THE PERSIAN KING, IN HIS WAR CHARIOT

From a mosaic of colored marbles in the floor of a Roman house in Pompeii

than oil after bathing and had their grooms of the bath as well as chamberlains who excelled in bed-making.

"This degeneracy he reproved with all the temper of a philosopher. He told them, it was very strange to him that, after having undergone so many glorious conflicts, they did not remember that those who come from labor and exercise always sleep more sweetly than the inactive and effeminate; and that in comparing the Persian manners with the Macedonian, they did not perceive that nothing was more servile than the love of pleasure or more princely than a life of toil. 'How will that man,' continued he, 'take care of his own horse, or furbish his lance and helmet, whose hands are too delicate to wait on his own person? Know you not that the end of conquest is, not to do what the conquered have done, but something greatly superior?'"

Yet with all his virtues Alexander had faults. He was boastful and liked to hear himself praised, becoming angry at those who did not do homage to him. He occasionally lost control of his temper and did savage things, once even killing a friend in a fit of anger. Afterwards he repented most bitterly and in tears and tried to take his own life; for he had a hot disposition that rushed to extremes. Moreover, he was very superstitious and always had soothsayers and prophets about him to interpret dreams and omens, as did many men of his time.

But you must not think that Alexander was an ignorant soldier. He had been educated by the Greek Aristotle, one of the greatest philosophers of the world, and he had been an apt pupil. Even during his campaigns he had books sent to him and read them eagerly. He welcomed philosophers and poets and knew what was going on in the learned world. Plutarch says, "He loved polite

learning, and his natural thirst for knowledge made him a man of extensive reading." He had great love and admiration for the "Iliad," the old Greek poem that tells the story of the Trojan war, and "used to lay it under his pillow with his sword." Moreover, he had studied medicine and sometimes prescribed for his friends. Indeed, he had a strong interest in all kinds of knowledge.

Effects of His Conquests

But what did it all amount to, this march of thousands of miles, these eleven years of clever fighting, this conquest of the world? He himself had a purpose in the war. He wanted to unite Europe and Asia. Other Greeks had a great scorn of everything not Greek. Now, no one could love Greek manners and ways of thinking better than Alexander did. That was one reason, doubtless, for his wanting to unite Greece to the rest of the world, that he might spread Greek education.

Indeed, he seemed to carry seeds of Greek culture with him and to plant them wherever possible. Everywhere he built altars to Greek gods and sacrificed to them. He held Greek games and gave Greek plays among the Persians. He had 30,000 Persian boys educated by Greek masters. All through the East he built seventy cities on the Greek plan and left Greek and Macedonian settlers in them.

Besides admiring the Greeks, he was interested in all people, felt a respect for different civilizations, and was eager to learn from them all. He adopted the Persian dress, married two Persian princesses, and encouraged his soldiers to take Persian wives. He sometimes made a conquered Persian the governor of a province.

Thus in many ways he tried to unify his conquered world, and he largely succeeded. The fact that so many countries were under one head and were at peace, the

fact that a Greek army had penetrated into Asia and had wound its way from city to city there, was like opening closed doors. Travel and trade increased; and where travelers and traders go, settlers follow, and so do manners and customs.

Although Alexander died in Persia before he had finished his work, and although after him there was no man strong enough to hold this great empire together, yet the doors stayed open, and Greek settlers and ideas and culture went all over the world. Countries grew up in Asia as Greek as Athens had ever been, having cities like her, filled with temples and theaters and statues, and famous for sculptors and painters and writers.

In Egypt, far from Greece herself, was a city that was the very center of Greek learning and Greek influence. This was Alexandria, one of the towns which the great conqueror had founded. There were two great libraries here that at one time contained 700,000 books, all written by hand on rolls of papyrus. There was a famous museum "where scholars lived and worked together." There was a group of buildings — a "temple of the Muses [the goddesses of learning and the arts], library, porticoes, dwellings, and . . . a hall for the meals, which were taken together. Its inmates were a community of scholars and poets, on whom the king bestowed the honor and the privilege of being allowed to work at his expense, and with all imaginable assistance ready to hand."

Alexandria

Many valuable things they found out through their study. The greatest geographers of ancient times worked there. They knew that the earth is a sphere, and they invented ways of measuring and mapping it. Eratosthenes figured out its circumference as 28,000 miles — not a very great mistake for the first worker. An astronomical

observatory was there; men studied the stars and tried to find the size of the sun and the moon, and their distances from the earth. Euclid, the greatest geometrician of ancient times, did his work there and wrote a geometry that is still used in some of our schools.

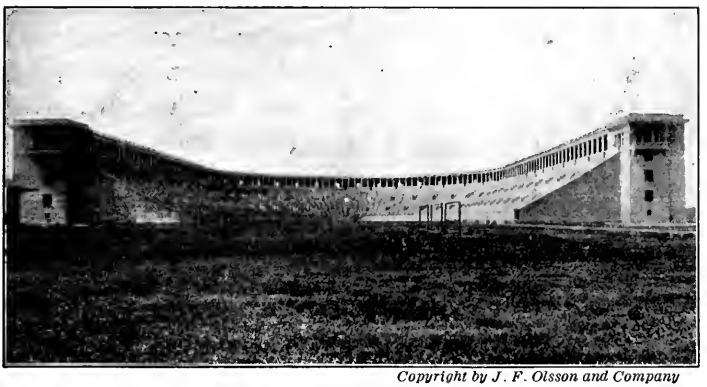
What was found out in Alexandria was soon known all through the Mediterranean countries.[1] This was the effect of Alexander's conquests. He had Hellenized the ancient world. It was left for another nation to enlarge that world, to spread that culture through our Spain, France, Germany, England, and the rest of Europe.

Greek Influence on Civilization

The debt that we owe to the Greeks we can hardly state in words. We still read their poetry with joy, and many an English poet has some ancient Greek singer to thank for inspiration. Never a year passes, I suppose, that some one in America does not stage one of the old Greek plays. Some of the most precious things in the museums of Europe are the Greek statues that they have been able to get. People who love beautiful things travel for thousands of miles to see and enjoy them. Art students sketch them and model them in clay. Sculptors study them to learn the secrets of those earlier workers in marble and bronze.

[1] There was a fault in the way the Greek scientist worked. If he saw something that interested him — a falling star or a flash of lightning — he said, "I must make a theory about that." So, folding his hands and shutting his eyes, he thought long and earnestly and invented an explanation that seemed to him reasonable. A modern scientist, on the other hand, when he sees a thing he does not understand says, "I must investigate that." Then he begins to visit strange places, to collect many specimens, to tear things to pieces and to put them together, to use acids and machines and microscope and scales. Slowly he pieces his theory together as his investigations tell him this or that, and he is always ready to give it up if some new experiment proves it false. Our science is better than the Greek science, then, because people have been living and learning for 2000 years and at last have come to realize the great value of experiment.

The same thing happens with Greek buildings. Architects measure their length and their width and their height, the proportion of their columns, the pitch of their roof. There lies on the Acropolis of Athens the broken capital of a column with a beautiful spiral carved upon it. In the center of the spiral is a little hole that has been worn by the dividers of visiting architects who have measured it to learn how it was made that it should be so beautiful. These men have gone home to draw, to ex-



Copyright by J. F. Olsson and Company

THE HARVARD UNIVERSITY STADIUM

periment, to copy the curves, the proportions, and even the designs that they have found in Greek temples. If you look at the buildings about you, you may see here in America Greek columns or Greek pediments or Greek ornaments.

On many of our athletic fields to-day you will see stadiums copied after the old Greek ones, and in them you will see young men playing games much as men played in ancient Greece. When we study grammar, we are studying ideas originated by the learned men of Alexandria. In our science classes, where we investigate the actions of screws and levers and the weights of bodies

and even electricity, we are studying subjects which the Greeks started for us. Half the books we read are full of Greek stories or fancies or ideas. Great men, who think about man's life and how he ought to act, get inspiration from one or another of the Greek philosophers. And I should think that every time a mathematician measures triangles and circles and cones, every time an astronomer studies the movements of the earth, every time a sculptor lifts his chisel and mallet, every time an architect plans a building or a poet makes a play, he must remember the Greeks, the pioneers of learning.

Greek	Latin	Russian	German	English
Α	A	А	𝔄	A
Β	B	Б	𝔅	B
Γ	C	В	ℭ	C
Δ	D	Г	𝔇	D
Ε	E	Д	𝔈	E
Ζ	F	Е	𝔉	F
Η	G	Ж	𝔊	G
Θ	H	З	ℌ	H
Ι	I	И	ℑ	I
Κ	K	І	𝔍	J
Λ	L	К	𝔎	K
Μ	M	Л	𝔏	L
Ν	N	М	𝔐	M
Ξ	O	Н	𝔑	N
Ο	P	О	𝔒	O
Π	Q	П	𝔓	P
Ρ	R	Р	𝔔	Q
Σ	S	С	𝔕	R
Τ	T	Т	𝔖	S
Υ	V(U)	У	𝔗	T
Φ	X	Ф	𝔘	U
Χ	Z	Х	𝔙	V
Ψ		Ц	𝔚	W
Ω		Ч	𝔛	X
		Ш	𝔜	Y
		Щ	ℨ	Z
		Ъ		
		Ы		
		Ь		
		Ѣ		
		Э		
		Ю		
		Я		
		Θ		
		V		

One other example out of the many will show how the Greeks taught us, how we have profited by the lesson, have changed the matter a little, and have half forgotten that we did not always know it. Look at the Greek alphabet and then at ours. "How funny it is," you will say, "not at all like the English!" Yet ours

is an imperfect copy of the Greek through the Roman. Some letters we have dropped, because the sounds that they represent do not occur in our language, and other letters we have simplified in form during our hundreds of years of use. It was the Romans who found the tribes of Europe without a written language and taught them their own letters. But theirs they had learned from the Greeks in that early time when the Greeks had gone colonizing into the West, as the Greeks had earlier learned theirs from the Phœnicians.

So all the alphabets of Europe are children of one family. We must thank the Romans and their teachers, the Greeks, and the Phœnicians before them for that marvelous power of looking on a page of little scratches and so hearing the words that men spoke hundreds of years ago and seeing the things that they did, and for that power of making records of the deeds and discoveries and thoughts of our own time that future generations may profit by our work.

---

1. Pretend that you are Athenians and hold a meeting to discuss whether you will send earth and water to the Persian king. **2.** Make as long a list as you can of famous Greek men, statues, cities. **3.** Look up the following words in a large dictionary and see what language they come from and what they meant in that language: alphabet, astronomy, biography, Bible, chronology, geology, geometry, geography, history, poet, science, zoölogy. **4.** You can get for a penny apiece good pictures of Greek statues and temples and landscape from the Thompson Art Publication Company, Syracuse, N.Y. Make a collection of pictures and mount them in a book. **5.** Use the Greek alphabet to write a secret letter. Try to invent an alphabet unlike any that you ever saw.

CHAPTER IV

ROME GROWS STRONG

Rome Conquers Italy

In spite of their many colonies, the Greeks had civilized only the seacoast here and there. They had no love for the inland wilderness, with its dangers from wild beasts and from ambushes of hostile barbarians. The islands and shores of the Mediterranean made up their whole world.

Herodotus had traveled much, was a careful observer, and had a very clear idea about geography; yet he says, "Whether Europe is surrounded by water either towards the east or towards the north, has not been fully discovered by any man; but in length it is known to extend beyond both the other continents." By "both the other continents" he means Asia and Africa.

Now any school boy can look into his atlas and see that wise old Herodotus, the great traveler, was wrong; that Europe is not so large as either Asia or Africa. But the men of that time knew only the northern part of Africa and the western part of Asia and could only guess about the rest. Herodotus even says, "Asia is inhabited as far as India; but beyond this it is all desert towards the east, nor is any one able to describe what it is." We can see, therefore, that China, one of the richest, most ancient, and most civilized countries of the earth, was unknown to the Greeks and their neighbors.

Greek Ideas of the World

Even the northern part of his own Europe Herodotus

did not know. After having told about a race of people who lived somewhere northeast of the Black Sea and who "are said to be bald from their birth," he says, "But beyond the bald men no one can speak with certainty;

ITALY IN RELIEF

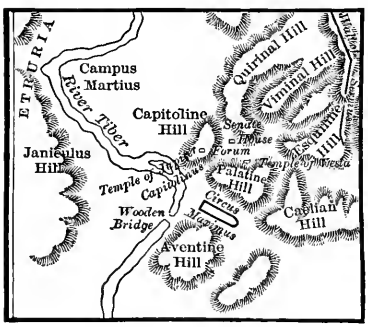
for lofty and impassable mountains form their boundary, and no one has ever crossed them." All Siberia and Russia, you see, were quite unknown to travelers of Herodotus' time.

This, then, was the Greek world: the shores of the Mediterranean and the wild, half-guessed outer border

full of things partly known and partly fancied. There was much left for explorers and civilizers to do.

The next people to take up the work of civilizers were the Romans, that small tribe whom the Greek traders, 700 years before Christ, had found living as simple farmers on the western plains of central Italy.[1] In these early days the Romans were but one part of the Latin tribe, and Latins were but one of many tribes in Italy. Rome had about her only a small circle of land of perhaps a hundred square miles. But the city was fortunately located. It was on the Tiber River, up which the small seagoing ships of the time could row. Yet it was twelve miles from the seashore and therefore safe from the pirates, who were the pests of the coast towns. At this spot on the Tiber, moreover, was the only fordable place where the Etruscan traders from the North could cross into Roman territory to sell their goods.

Favorable Location of Rome



Rome and Her Hills

Rome was built on hills which overlooked the level plains around her. She could see her enemies approaching and could have time to prepare against them. Her men, besides, were hearty and brave and loved their city with intense patriotism. They saw her surrounded by enemies. In the fertile plains north of her was Etruria, a nation of skillful artists and builders and sailors, eager to grow into a greater state with wider lands. To the south was the rich country of "Great Greece," with its beautiful

[1] See also page 12.

cities and busy workshops and its boats coming and going. In the hills to the east were barbarous, warlike tribes who swooped down upon Rome like robber bands. All about her were other Latin cities, all hoping to grow great at the expense of their neighbors. In the early days hardly a year passed that the Romans did not have to fight for their lives. If Rome was to live, she needed to make herself stronger than her neighbors and to subdue them.

So the Romans raised their arms against first one Latin city and then another, and compelled them all to bow to Rome. Then trouble began with Etruria, the foreign neighbor to the north. There were years of warfare, until at last she was conquered. Rome next turned her hand against the other tribes of Italy. Sometimes she was beaten in bloody battles, but in general she won and kept adding new lands to her territory.

Rome Mistress of Italy

As she worked southward in her conquests, Rome met the rich cities of Magna Græcia. They felt that they could not allow this new barbarian power, as they called it, to grow too great. They took the side of Rome's enemies, and even invited a warrior prince of Greece over into Italy to help them. Rome patiently fought with him and lost, and filled up her ranks with new men and fought again, waiting until his army should be worn out in this hostile land. After five years it was done; and the prince fled back to Greece. Soon all of southern Italy was in the hands of Rome, and by 266 B.C. she was mistress of all the land from the Arno River to the southern tip of the country — a great territory 500 miles long.

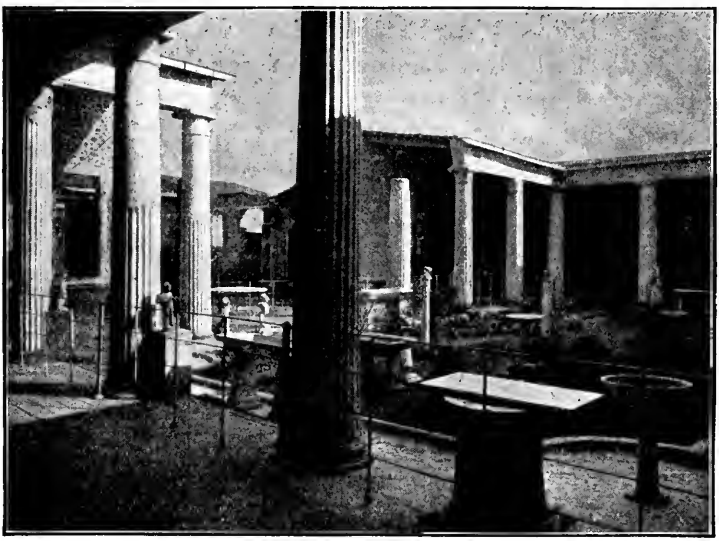
280–275 B.C.

Roman Life

What sort of people were these victorious Romans, these masters of Italy? Suppose that by some magic

you could be transported back to the year 200 B.C., carried for thousands of miles across the ocean, and set down in ancient Athens and then in ancient Rome. The two cities would seem to you much alike. In both you would see hills and a stone wall stretching about them. In both, low, flat-roofed houses would be packed close along crooked streets, with no room for

The City



A Court in a Roman House

lawns or parks. In Rome and Athens alike you would see a market-place lying among hills, with public buildings and statues of heroes and gods standing around it. In each market-place you would find men gathered for some public meeting. Both peoples would be in strange garments much alike — the common men in short chitons leaving neck, arms, and legs bare; the gentlemen with trailing, shawl-like cloaks wrapped around their bodies. Both peoples would be speaking a language strange to you.

You would find the heart and the head of the city of Rome to be this market-place, or "Forum." You could walk the length of it in ten minutes, yet it was one of the most famous and most important places in the world. Every spot of ground here was made holy by old events and story. On the hills that surrounded it had been the little villages that had later grown into great Rome. For more generations than men know, the ancestors of the Romans had been busy in this little marshy valley lying below the hills. Women had drawn water at the springs there. Men had met in the open space to consult upon laws or to prepare for war. There had been the market for buying and selling. Here the king had had his house. Romulus, the founder of Rome and the first of her kings, lay buried here, men said. Temple after temple had been built, and smoke and song continually rose from them to the gods.

The Forum

As you walked the Forum, layer upon layer of older pavements and of older buildings would lie buried under your feet, and every spot would seem too old and too sacred to be trodden upon. Yet men would be hurrying about here on all sorts of business. A young nobleman with a crowd of friends and slaves surrounding him would be walking before the goldsmith shops that bordered the road on the southern side. A sick man in a curtained litter would be carried past you to drink the waters of the fountain of Juturna and to lie in a little room, waiting for the god of healing to visit him.

You might, perhaps, stand with a great crowd before the rostrum, or speaker's platform, and hear an orator speak to the people concerning a new law. You would see a man carrying some gift enter a temple, hoping to win the gods' help in a voyage he was about to make.

ROMANS GOING TO MAKE SACRIFICE

This and the next picture are of reliefs carved on a Roman altar. All of the men but one are wearing the shawl-like toga over the tunic

Along the north side of the Forum you would find a street lined with butchers' booths and fish stalls, where gentlemen with hosts of friends and slaves would be buying meat for the evening's banquet. Business and religion and politics went hand in hand in the Roman Forum.

Just as every family had a house and a hearth with a fire ever burning on it, so the great family of Rome had a house and a hearth and a hearth fire. The little round temple of Vesta, the home goddess, stood in the Forum. In it on an altar burned the sacred fire of the city, started afresh by the high priest every New Year's Day, and burning to the year's end. Six noble maidens of Rome were chosen to guard it. They were called Vestal Virgins, and they gave up their lives to being the daughters of Rome, guardians of her fire, mistresses of her house, makers of her holy bread, performers of her sacrifices, keepers of her most precious relics.

Religion

Close to the temple of Vesta was the house where lived

ROMANS GOING TO MAKE SACRIFICE

the high priest, the head of the Roman religion. Here were the sacred dishes and tools with which the priests offered wine and cakes to the gods or killed animals in their honor. Here were the holy books which described what men should do and say at the sacred festivals. Here were kept, too, the lists of officers elected year after year and the stone tablets of the calendar which set the holy days. Above an altar in this house, also hung two spears of Mars, the god of war and the favorite god of Rome. Whenever these two spears clattered together, it was an ill omen for Rome, and sacrifice had to be made to the displeased god.

The gods were stern and severe and difficult to please. They demanded from men frequent sacrifice and prayer and strict obedience. They would not lend their aid unless men observed all the ceremonies that did them honor. So a Roman's life was full of religious rites — praying, pouring libations of wine, burning holy cakes, and making gifts to the gods. Such things he did when he rose in the morning, before he ate a meal,

Sacrifices

when he returned home from a journey, when he was beginning a piece of business, when the lands were plowed and the seed sown and the harvest reaped, when he was ill, when he recovered, when a child was born, when a member of his family died.

In the same way Rome, the state, had to deal with the gods. Her newly elected officers sacrificed to them. The meetings of the people were opened with sacrifice. Before war was declared, sacrifice was made, and again when victory was gained. If ill fortune happened to Rome, it was because the gods were in some way displeased, and gifts were made to them to soothe their anger. The first fruits of the harvest were given to the Vestals, who sacrificed them as a thank-offering from the whole state. For every god annual festivals were held; and every five years the whole people with priests and officers, with song and sprinkled water and great pomp, walked in procession about the city and purified it, in order that it might be pleasing to the gods.

After sacrifice had been offered, it was always necessary to know whether the gods had accepted it and would be kind. But it was difficult to know their will, and only men of the priestly colleges, trained for years in the science of reading signs and in the rituals of religion, could know the attitude of the gods. So always in matters of war or state an augur was consulted. He studied the color of the flame or the drifting of the smoke or the movement of the burning meat, or he watched for birds flying above or a sound from round about. In such signs he could read the pleasure or the displeasure of the gods and could advise whether to go on with the thing planned or to wait and perform further sacrifice. So the Romans seemed to walk continually under the frown of the gods, always trying to win their smiles.

A Roman Woman Sacrificing

Rome had begun her history under kings, but she grew dissatisfied with them, expelled them, and set up a republic. That is a government by which the people rule themselves through officers whom they elect, as we do in the United States. The chief officer the Romans called, not president, but consul, and they chose two, one to check the other, lest one might try to make himself king. These consuls were elected by an assembly of the people, meeting in an open field, much like the assembly of Athens. There was a senate of three hundred members, whose business it was to advise the consuls and to help the assembly make laws.

Government
509 (?) B.C.

The republic was not perfect, and very soon people began to find fault with it and to try to improve it. There were always two classes in Rome: the patrician and the plebeian, that is, the noble and the common. When Rome first became a republic, only the patricians had privileges. The plebeians might not hold any office, did not have a fair chance to vote, might not marry a patrician, did not know what the laws were, and were in many ways ill treated by the patricians.

But the plebeians grew richer, stronger, and better educated, and they would not endure being thus shut out. So after a struggle of two hundred years and more they gained equal rights with the patricians. In the senate sat rich commoners beside the patrician descendants of noble families that could trace their lineage back to the time when Rome had been a farming village. Below these men of wealth or blood was a great mass of commoners, poor, but with the right to vote and to hold office.

286 B.C.

From the first the Roman army had been the great pride and strength of the people. Every citizen between the ages of eighteen and sixty years owed military serv-

A Roman Sacrifice before a Temple

In the center stands a Roman emperor about to make the sacrifice. An assistant holds the ax that is to slay the bull. Behind him a man carries one of the holy dishes, and so does a boy standing next to the emperor. Another boy is playing the flute. The three-legged table in the center serves as altar

ice. No man received pay for this service; it was his duty to the state. These citizen-soldiers were welded into close brotherhood. Neighbor touched elbow with neighbor when he stood in the Forum to vote or in the field to fight. Together these warrior citizens trained and exercised just outside of Rome on the field of Mars. By such organization and practice, a strong, patriotic, closely knit army had grown up in Rome and had made her supreme in Italy.

The Roman Army

No wonder that these Romans were a proud people! They had seen Rome grow from a village[1] to be the owner of a great state. They saw their city still growing larger and richer. In every war of their history they had won, sooner or later. They felt themselves brave and honest. They looked back with respect upon their ancestors and looked forward with hope.

They did much to encourage this pride among the people. When a famous man died, he had a public funeral. His body was placed upon the rostrum in the Forum where all the people could see, and a relative made an oration, telling of his deeds. A mask of wax was cast to look like his face, and it was set up in his house to remind his children of their great and good father. Some families had many such masks of their great ancestors, and they were proud of them. At the funeral of any of their house, men wore these masks and walked in the procession as if to say, "Behold how many good Romans there have been: let us be worthy of them."

Roman Pride

For much the same purpose a victorious general was allowed a "triumph." He and his army gathered outside the city wall on the field of Mars, the training ground of

[1] See also page 76.

Rome. From there started a procession headed by the senate and officers of the city. Trumpeters followed, blowing warlike notes and calling the attention of the world. Then came the spoils that had been taken from the enemy — armor on wagons, perhaps a statue or a crown or a throne, a chariot in which a king or general of the foe had ridden. There were tableaux on floats representing the nation that had been defeated or a river that had been crossed or a mountain that had been won. Then came cattle for the sacrifice, horns gilded and wreathed with garlands. After them in chains sadly walked captives taken in battle.

A Triumph

Behind them four horses drew the chariot in which stood the victorious general, dressed in a purple robe embroidered with golden palm leaves. He carried in his right hand a branch of laurel, symbol of victory, and in his left an ivory scepter with an eagle at its end, symbol of power. A slave held a golden crown above his head, yet whispered in his ear that after all he must not forget that he was only a man. Behind the victor followed the army that had helped him to gain his victory, and the soldiers sang and shouted.

The city streets through which the procession wound were decked with garlands, and every flat roof and doorway and open space was crowded with people, shouting and throwing flowers. The procession climbed the Capitol Hill, where the temple of Jupiter stood. The victor laid his laurel branch in the lap of the god and sacrificed the cattle in thanksgiving. People went home thinking of Rome's army and the courage of her men, many a boy hoping that some day he might ride in that glorious chariot and hear the applause of the people.

Every Roman mother believed it her duty to tell her sons stories of the old Romans who had made Rome.

She told of brave Horatius and his two friends, who alone kept back a mighty Etruscan army, while the Romans hewed down the bridge over which the enemy had thought to march into Rome. And when it fell crashing, Horatius, needing no longer to fight, leaped into the river, and in spite of weariness and wounds, in spite of the enemy on the bank, swam in safety to Rome.

A Few of the Heroes of Rome

"Let nothing make you afraid in the cause of Rome," mothers would say to their sons. "Let nothing shake your determination, just as nothing could daunt the noble youth, Caius Mucius. He had tried to kill the king of Etruria, for Etruria was at war with Rome and would have put a king over her once more. When Mucius was caught, carrying the very dagger with which he had meant to kill the king, he would tell no Roman secrets. The king thought to frighten him and had fires built all about him, threatening to push them closer if the young man did not tell his secret. 'Behold me,' cried Mucius, 'that you may see of how little account the body is to those who have great glory in view.' Then he thrust his right hand into the fire and held it there until it was burned off. 'There are three hundred young men like me waiting to kill you if I fail,' he said. Even that cruel king admired such courage and such devotion to country, and he set the young man free."

Such stories, heard at his mother's knee and shown by statue or carving in the public places, bred bravery and patriotism in the Roman boy. Daily, also, he went with his father to the field of Mars beside the river to see the young men run, leap, box, and wrestle, throw the spear, and ride spirited horses. Soon he, too, entered into these sports and was trained for vigorous, fearless manhood.

1. What differences are there between the shores of Greece and those of Italy? **2.** What do people mean when they say that Italy turns her back on the East? **3.** Quickly sketch the chief mountain ranges of Greece and those of Italy. What differences do you see? **4.** Model Rome and the surrounding country in sand. **5.** Compare the pictures of Greek costume (pages 35, 41, 46, 47) with the Roman (pages 80, 81, 83, 85). **6.** The Roman house pictured on page 78 was much like the Greek house described on pages 40 and 42. To what kind of climate does this sort of house seem well fitted? In such a climate should you rather live in it than in our type of house? **7.** What qualities of character did the Romans admire most strongly? How can you tell? **8.** What hero stories do Americans tell their children to show them the goodness and worthiness of their country? **9.** Write a dialogue that two young Romans walking in the Forum might have had concerning the greatness of Rome, their love for her, their religion.

CHAPTER V

ROME CONQUERS THE WORLD

How Rome Conquered Carthage

ANOTHER great city was jealously watching Rome's growth. This was Carthage, an old colony of Phœnicia on the shore of Africa. She was not a mere city; she had her line of colonies running like a chain around the western end of the Mediterranean. The coasts of Africa and of Spain were hers, the shores of Sardinia and of Sicily, and many small islands besides.

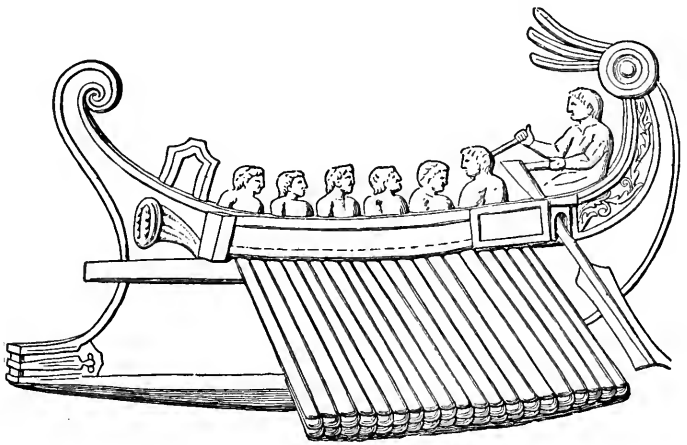
While Rome had been making herself mistress of Italy, Carthage had been making herself mistress of the sea. For besides her lands, she had great fleets of ships, thousands of slaves to row them, and plenty of money to hire sailors and soldiers. She boasted that a Roman could not wash his hands in the sea without asking leave of her. Her ships were known in every Mediterranean port, and they carried a thousand precious things for sale. She wanted to keep the monopoly of this trade, but more and more Roman traders were invading her business territory.

Rome and Carthage Become Enemies

The new Roman borders, moreover, were now not far from the Carthaginian colonies of Sicily. So Carthage began to look with great suspicion upon Rome. At the same time the Romans were looking enviously upon Carthage. The rich Romans wanted new lands for farming, the manufacturers wanted new customers for their goods, the traders wanted more room for commerce, the state thought that

Carthage in Sicily was too close a neighbor to her southern shore.

So the two states sat facing each other across the water, with Sicily like a stepping stone between them. Only two years after Rome had made herself mistress of Italy, the trouble with Carthage began over a quarrel which started in Sicily. There followed a twenty-three years' war. Rome began it on land. There she could defeat Carthaginian armies and take Carthaginian land. But of what use was that, 264–241 B.C.



A Trireme

The sculptor of the relief has shortened the ship and left out most of the rowers and all the fighting men. Yet we can see the bronze beak for ramming, the pilot's oars in place of the rudder, and the three banks of oars, though they are too crowded

when the Carthaginian fleet worried the coast, burned the sea towns, captured grain ships and boat-loads of soldiers?

"We must have a fleet," said Rome, "and the ships must be like the big new galleys of Carthage, not like the little old-fashioned boats that we have had." The gods seemed to help them, for a big Carthaginian warship was

wrecked upon the Italian coast. This the Romans copied. It had, besides a big sail, 300 long oars arranged in five banks, one above another. A sharp iron beak, with a great tooth at each side, thrust itself out at the bow, and when the 300 rowers pulled their best, the heavy ship bit into the enemy's ship and tore it open as a vulture tears its prey. High on the mast was a crow's nest and in the bow a walled forecastle, where men could fight.

In sixty days Rome built 120 ships of this sort. With her new fleet she met the enemy and won a great victory.

War Begins

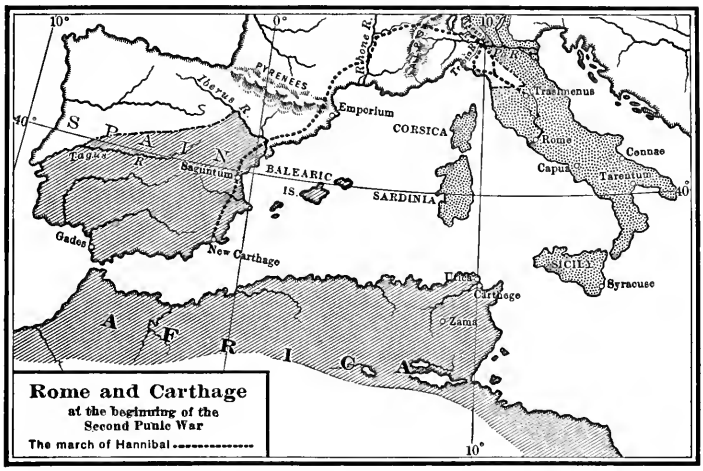
Four times during the war her fleets were destroyed in storm or battle and four times rebuilt. One of her armies was wiped out in fight and another drowned in a storm. A sixth of all the fighting men of Rome were killed, and yet fresh troops were always ready at need. Such dogged courage could but win. The Carthaginians asked for peace and gave up Sicily to their conquerors. The Romans had stepped outside of Italy.

But proud Carthage was not content. For twenty-three years she kept the peace, yet she was using the time to prepare punishment for Rome. A Carthaginian patriot, Hamilcar, a statesman and a warrior, built up a nation in Spain among its half-civilized people. There he gathered and trained an army, opened silver mines that should be able to pay that army, planted towns that might furnish it supplies, built a port that should protect a fleet; and all the time his eyes were on Rome. He died before the two countries came to the grip again. Yet he had trained up a son greater than himself, and as much an enemy of Rome.

That son, Hannibal, had grown up in the soldiers' camp; and there was not a muscle in his body but was firm and untiring, not a nerve but was quick and steady, not a thought but was patriotic. He loved Carthage, and

he hated Rome. This man, when he was thirty years old, took up the army that his father had made and the war that his father had planned. Part of his soldiers he left to protect Spain, part he sent to guard Carthage and the coast of Africa, but the great mass he led straight into Italy.

Hannibal's War, 218–201 B.C.



The stippled territory belonged to Rome; the hatched area to Carthage

It was a march of 500 miles from Spain. There were rivers to cross, hostile tribes to win a way through, and a rugged wall of snow-topped mountains to pass. For more than two weeks the armies climbed the steep mountain trail. Sometimes the men and baggage-mules slipped from the narrow, snow-covered paths and plunged over the precipice. The mountain tribes hid behind rocks and worried the army and killed the stragglers. The men suffered from cold and from hunger, for food was difficult to find here on barren mountains.

Hannibal started from Spain with an army of 50,000 fresh soldiers; he trailed down from the fierce Alps into

Italy with 26,000 men, hungry, tired, and discouraged. The mountains had done their best to protect Italy. With that small army, however, he met the Romans and defeated them. For seventeen years he led his troops about in Italy, feeding them on Italian crops, living in Italian towns, every moment on guard, proving himself one of the greatest generals of the world.

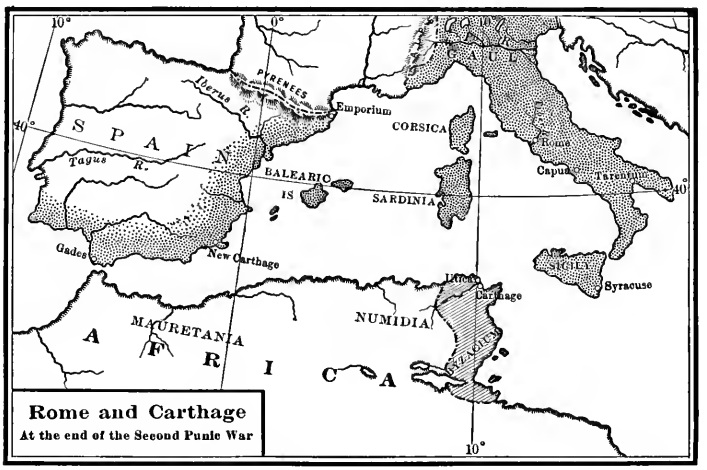
But it was one man against a nation. Hannibal could win battles, but he could not win friends. He had hoped that those Latins and Italians whom Rome had conquered,[1] and whom she held so much against their will, would welcome him and would turn against their old enemy. But most of them stood fast for Rome against the foreigner.

During that long war 300,000 men of Italy fell in battle. In the single fight of Cannæ 70,000 were left dead on the field. More than half of the senators of Rome died in that battle, and one seventh of all the men of Italy who were of age to fight. But immediately the Roman ranks were filled again.

There was no sacrifice that the people would not make. For many years every man in Italy of fighting age was in the army. Farms lay abandoned, or a few fields were worked by old men and boys and by women and girls. Rome's public money was soon spent. When she needed a new navy, wealthy Romans gave money from their own purses to build it. Contractors, who had been doing Rome's work of various kinds for many years, refused now to take pay but gave their services to their country. So with patient courage and self-sacrifice Italy fed men and money into this hungry war. She even sent an extra army into Sicily to hold it, and another into Spain to take it away from Carthage.

[1] See also page 77.

Hannibal had no such patriotism to help him. Carthage across the sea was untouched and safe. To be sure, she was proud of her brilliant general, who was winning battles off there in Italy, and yet she was jealous, too. She was stingy, moreover, and unwilling to spare him more men and money. "Let him shift for himself," she seemed to say.



The stippled territory belonged to Rome; the hatched area to Carthage

But an army cannot live in an enemy's country without help from home. So gradually the Romans closed about Hannibal and shut him up in the southern end of Italy. At last they sent an army into Africa and threatened Carthage herself. Then the proud city sent for its great general to come home. Hannibal and his army left Italy, landed in Africa, met the Romans, and were defeated. Carthage again asked for peace.

At the end of the first Carthaginian, or Punic, war Rome had got Sicily, and a year or two later she had seized Sardinia and Corsica. Now she took also Hamil-

car's Spain, or rather the nearer shores of it, for the inland part was still savage and independent. Carthage gave up her ships and her war elephants. She promised to pay a large sum of money to Rome and to make no war without Rome's consent.

But Carthage seemed to thrive on defeat. Fifty years after Hannibal's war she was as prosperous as ever. Rome felt it an insult for her beaten enemy to be larger and richer than herself, with more ships and a fuller harbor and a busier market. In jealousy and hatred men began to say, "Carthage must be destroyed."

Soon Rome found an excuse for war. The Carthaginians were desperate with fear and patriotism, and they held out for three years against the hated Romans. But at last their strong walls fell, their rich city was burned, their people were captured and sold as slaves. A Roman general ran a plow over the ground where Carthage had stood, as if to say: "We have swept our enemy from the face of the earth. Men's feet shall never again tread her streets. Her market-place has become a grain-field. Cursed be he who shall try to rebuild her!"

Carthage Is Destroyed, 149–146 B.C.

By this cruel war Rome gained whatever land was left to Carthage on the shores of Africa. A new empire — Italy, Sicily, Spain, Africa, and the islands of the sea — had grown up in the West, and Rome was mistress of it.

Rome Mistress of the West

Rome's Conquest of the East

In Chapter III we left the East united for a few years under the arms of a great general, Alexander. But it was like caging lions and horses together; they could not

learn one another's ways and live in peace. Alexander, like a master trainer, could hold them in check, but he died before he had taught them to live in unity, and before he had taught his generals how to rule the great empire he had made. Even as the beloved conqueror's body lay on the bier waiting to be buried, his generals fell to quarreling over who should be ruler in his place.

The East

After a few years it all ended in the splitting of the empire into three great kingdoms — Macedon, Syria, and Egypt. On the fringes of these great countries little states were always cropping up, swelling into importance under one king and sinking into littleness again under the next. Greece herself was, as usual, divided and in turmoil. Some cities quietly accepted the rule of Macedon, others struggled bravely against it.

All these changes in the East had happened behind Rome's back, while she had been conquering Italy. She had hardly known of the events and had been little interested. Indeed, the West and the East seemed like two different worlds. Yet some of the Western peoples had friends or enemies in the East. A Greek prince had fought against Rome on behalf of the Italian Greeks; and during Hannibal's war the king of Macedon had helped the Carthaginians. Moreover, pirates from the coast north of Greece had often troubled Rome.

Rome Turns Eastward

So after her wars in Italy were over, and after she had won the first glorious Punic war, Rome, thus pricked in the back, at last faced about and cast her eyes on the East, full of its jealousies and wars. The first step she took was to punish the pirates and take a few of their cities for her own. Her next step landed her in Macedon. There were three wars here many years

229 B.C.

apart, as there had been with Carthage, and they ended as the Punic wars had ended, in victory for Rome. Corinth, the "eye of Greece," as she was called, was destroyed as Carthage was destroyed, and Roman governors ruled over the land of Alexander, and over the cities of Pericles and of Leonidas.

215–167 B.C.

146 B.C.

But the defeated Greeks called upon a great king of Syria, himself a Macedonian, to help them. The Romans beat him at old Thermopylæ, chased him across the sea, and defeated him again in Asia. Rome's third step had taken her far into the old world, more than a thousand miles from home.

Rome Mistress of the East, 66–63 B.C.

One after another, in the years to come, the countries of western Asia fell into Roman hands. Pompey, the Roman general who did most in these wars, boasted that he had conquered twenty-two kings and twelve million people. By the year 60 B.C. Rome had won most of Alexander's old empire.

It was the great general, Pompey, too, who, just before his conquest of the East, made Rome mistress of the sea by putting an end to the pirates. Rome had already punished those of the Adriatic,[1] but those of the East still flourished. For years the Mediterranean had been infested with them. In the eastern seas alone there had been a thousand pirate ships. These men had been daring beyond belief. One pirate chief had sailed into the harbor of the great city of Syracuse in Sicily, had captured it, made it his headquarters, and sent raiders hither and thither through the rich island under the very nose of the Roman governor. Once the pirate fleet had met the Roman ships in the harbor of Ostia, only

[1] See page 97.

twelve miles from Rome, and had defeated them. Certain islands and coast cities had paid a yearly tribute of gold to the pirates and so had bought their protection against themselves. There had been pirate towns on the sea-coasts of the East where the men had lived between raids and where they had kept their families and their precious stores. A merchant, when he sent out a rich cargo by ship, had not known whether it would reach its own port or some pirate hold.

Finally Rome sent Pompey to clean out these nests of pirates. He did it thoroughly. Inside of three months 1300 pirate ships were destroyed, 10,000 pirates killed, and 20,000 captured. Their strongholds were burned, their prisoners set free, their stores taken and distributed among the Roman soldiers or turned over to the Roman treasury. After that, merchant ships could go safely to and fro carrying things of all sorts from end to end of the world.

Rome Mistress of the Sea, 67 B.C.

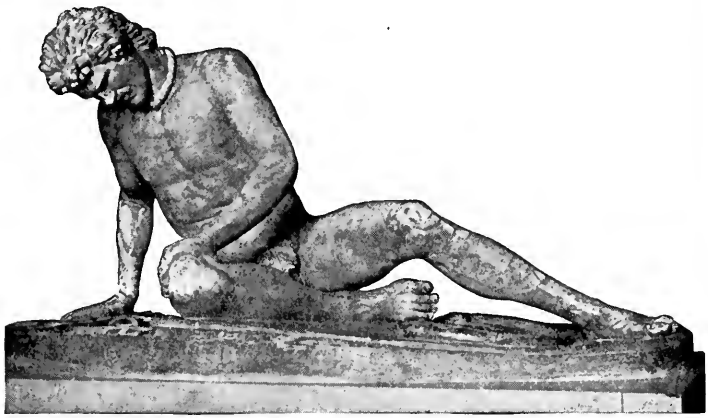
Cæsar's War in Gaul, 58–50 B.C.

Meantime the empire was still further growing in the West. The story of this conquest is very different from that of the conquest of the East. The western war was with barbarians, brave and hardy. Rome got from it, not treasures of gold and jewelry, but great stretches of wild forest. Here the Romans became, not learners, as they were in the East, but teachers. Julius Cæsar's conquest of Gaul shows better than any other war the condition of the peoples of western Europe. It shows, too, what the Roman army at its best could do.

Rome Gets More of the West

For eight years Cæsar marched hither and thither through Gaul. He played a great game, moving his army about

so quickly that he was always appearing unexpectedly at just the wrong minute for his enemy. He was always surprising them — fording a swift river that was up to the shoulders; pretending to retreat and then suddenly facing about; marching fifty miles in one day and night; digging out a road through six feet of snow; rebuilding a bridge on ruined piles that the enemy had left.



THE DYING GAUL

The Gauls were a good match for the Romans. They had towns protected with well-built walls of stones and timber. They were brilliant horsemen. They had swords as long as spears (so a certain Roman said) and spearheads as long as swords. They were strong of body and fierce of look. Their helmets were decorated with threatening horns or frightful animal heads. They ran into battle with fearful shouts.

Cæsar himself, who wrote his own story of his Gallic war, gives many examples of their bravery. He says of the Gauls in a certain battle, "But the enemy, even in the last hope of safety, showed such great courage that when the foremost of them had fallen, the next stood

upon them prostrate and fought from their bodies; when these were overthrown, and their corpses heaped up together, those who survived cast their weapons against our men as from a mound."

Yet in spite of their courage and their numbers, Cæsar completely conquered the whole nation of the Gauls and made the country a Roman province. Why was it possible for him to do it? Partly because the Gauls had no idea of standing together. A half-civilized people never seems to know the meaning of unity. So here in Gaul tribe was jealous of tribe, leaders were jealous of one another, men were suspicious of their chiefs. When one tribe was making a brave fight, the others, instead of rushing to their aid and wiping the Romans out by their united strength, stood by and watched.

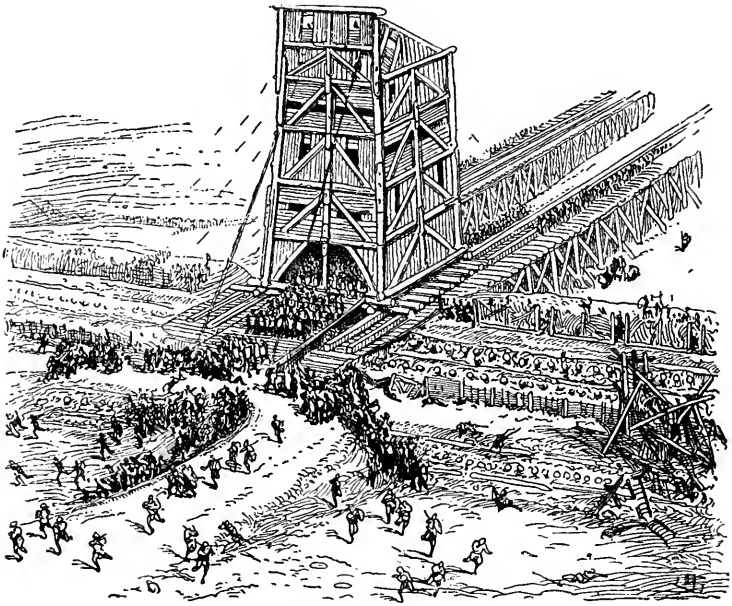
Another aid to the Romans was the fact that during their centuries of warfare they had invented many strange and clever engines. The Gauls, shutting themselves now and then inside one of their fenced towns and stationing their brave guards on the wall, thought themselves safe. But Cæsar immediately began to build a dozen things.

Roman Engines of War

There was no gunpowder then, but the Greeks or Romans had invented a fair substitute. Perhaps you have put a stick between the strands of a double string and twisted it around and around. If you then held the string tightly stretched and let the stick go, the string untwisted with a great whirr, the stick flew around, and the stroke from it was very unpleasant. The Romans used this idea. But instead of a string they used many strands of rope, and their stick was very thick and heavy. They mounted the rope in a strong frame and invented ways of twisting it tight, of holding it firmly, and of letting it go suddenly. In front of the whirring stick

they put stones or balls of lead or stout arrows. One of these catapults could shoot an arrow a thousand feet and drive it into a board for two inches.

Another Roman machine was a battering ram for beating down stone walls. It was a heavy timber swung



A Movable Tower

A modern drawing. Tracks were built on which to move the tower. Notice the rollers under it. A bridge has been let down across the enemy's ditch. You cannot see the wall of the besieged place. The men are running toward it

in loops of rope and mounted on wheels. Men ran with it against the walls, beating again and again at the same spot. Still more wonderful was the movable tower. It was eighty or ninety feet high. The soldiers built it at some distance from the town, where they were safe. Then they got inside at the bottom of it and pushed it forward on its rollers close to the enemy's wall. When

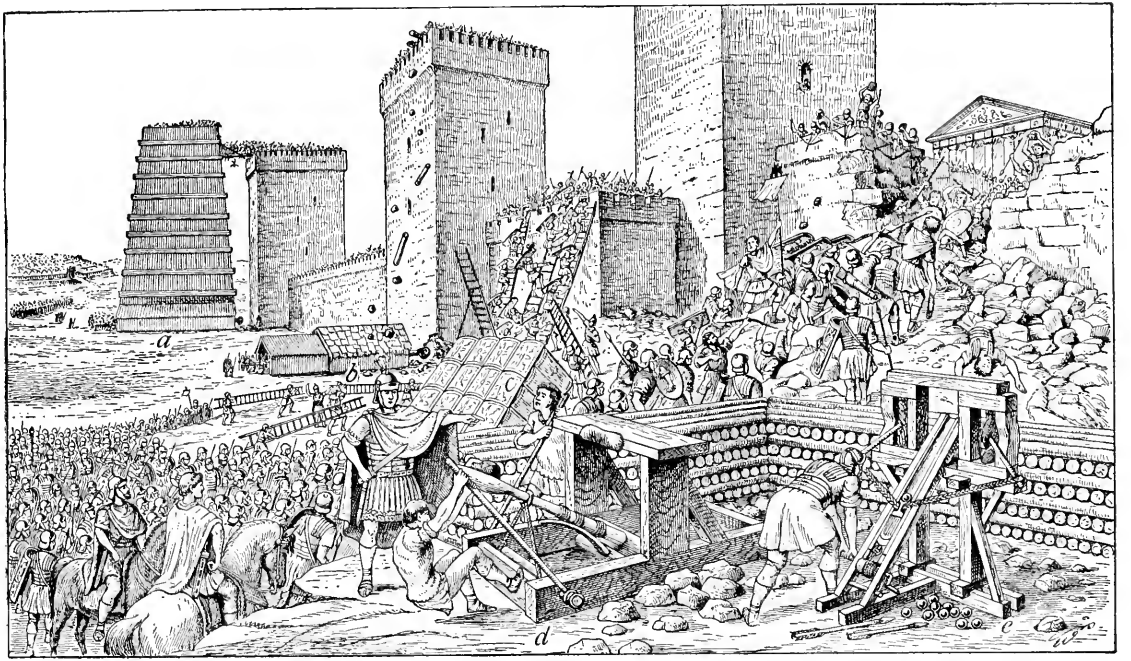
it was near enough, they ran up the inside stairways to the top and began shooting arrows and throwing stones down upon the guard on the city wall. Besides, they dropped a swinging bridge from the tower top upon the wall and rushed over it and into the town.

At other times they dug mines. They put down a shaft in some safe place in their own camp. From the bottom of this they tunneled along under the ground and under the wall. Then they dug a shaft upward to end in the town. Some dark night, when the Gauls were unsuspecting, a troop of besiegers, with swords ready, crawled through the tunnel, dug away the last layers of earth, and came out into the city. Generally only a few men entered in this way, stole to the gate, killed the guards, opened the doors, and signaled to the waiting army outside to enter.

Or sometimes the Romans built a great mound of earth against the outside of the wall. From this they could shoot down into the town and later charge along it and leap into the city. There were scaling ladders, too, which the soldiers set against the wall and by which they tried to climb up and over.

To be sure, while the Romans outside were using these engines and doing this building and digging, the Gauls were throwing lighted torches or burning arrows at their engines, and rocks and melted lead and hot water at the soldiers. So the Romans had planned ways of protecting themselves. They made sheds of stout beams and put them on rollers. Men stood in them and pushed them about to guard themselves as they worked the battering ram or dug mines or carried earth for the mound.

Besides, the soldiers were trained to make a movable shed out of their own oblong wooden shields. To do this they marched shoulder to shoulder and in perfect time.



STORMING A TOWN

a. Movable tower. *b*. Battering ram. *c*. Tortoise or guard of shields. *d*, *e*. Two kinds of catapults. Notice the scaling ladders and the standard near the wall. A modern drawing

Each man held his long shield over his head with its edge tight against his neighbor's shield. Sometimes several ranks, one behind another, formed this tortoise, as they called it. It must have been a strange sight, this tight roof of bright shields with marching legs below it.

The Roman Army

Better, however, than any siege engines were the soldiers themselves. Citizens of wealth no longer wished to undergo the discomforts of war as they had done in the time of the struggle against Carthage[1]; consequently the fighting fell to poorer men who had no taste for luxury. They could not afford to give their services free of pay as in the old days. Now, moreover, armies could not return home for the autumn harvest and the spring planting, as had been done in the days of the forefathers. They were needed all the year and every year in far distant lands. Many of the poorer class, therefore, made a business of war and hired themselves out year after year. Rome's citizen army had given place to a professional one.

In Cæsar's army there were a few slingers from Crete, a great island near Greece. They shot stones or lead balls from a sling, about as boys do in our day. There was also a little band of archers from the Balearic Islands near Italy. There was a small troop of cavalry, made up of Spaniards and Germans and the conquered Gauls. But these were not the important members of the army. The larger part of it was the Roman legionaries, citizens from Rome and the rest of Italy. They were farmers and shepherds, carpenters, blacksmiths, and shopkeepers who had decided that they would like to get a soldier's pay and a soldier's experience. Some of them were new recruits, others had been in the army for ten or fifteen years and were wise in the game of war.

[1] See also page 84.

There were five or six thousand soldiers in each legion, and Cæsar had six or eight legions in his whole army, besides the slingers and archers and horsemen — in all about fifty thousand men. This army on the march made a line perhaps three miles long; for besides the soldiers

A Roman War Scene

In the background is a walled town which the army is to besiege. The soldiers are disembarking from boats and carrying the baggage ashore. Some already landed are setting out for battle. Four of them are Germans. In the center is the emperor with his staff. Soldiers are holding the officers' horses. Notice helmets on seven heads

were pack mules carrying the baggage — tents and tent stakes, picks, shovels, hammers, carpenters' tools, blacksmiths' tools, and provisions. It must have been an interesting-looking procession.

The slingers wore no armor, but only the Greek costume of short tunic and flying short cape of bright color. The legionary wore, over his shoulders and around his body, armor of shining bronze or of stiff leather. Below this

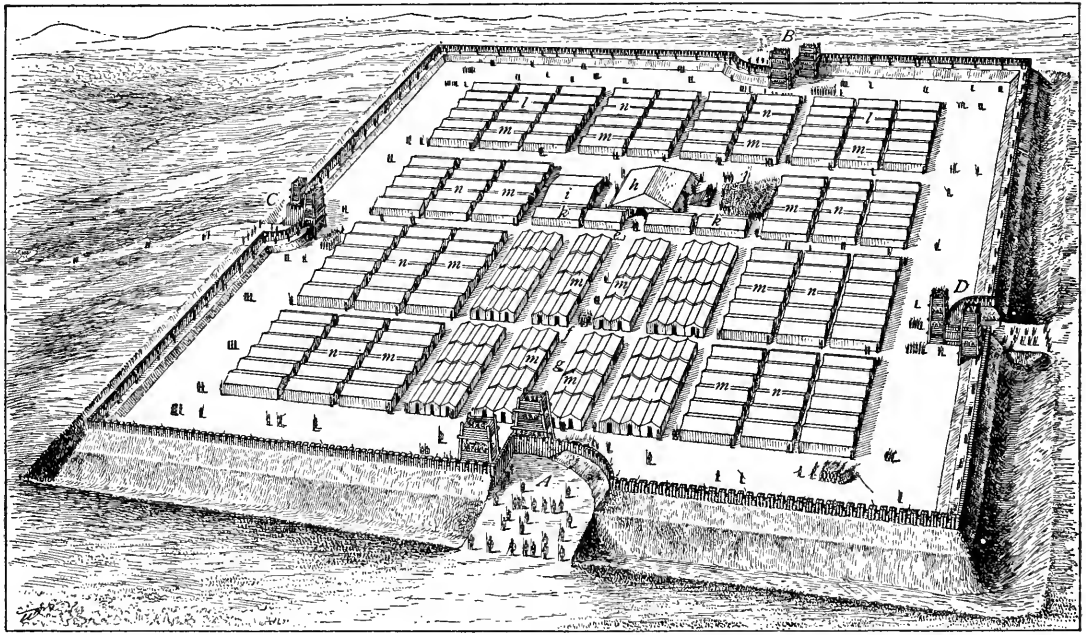
dropped the skirt of a colored tunic, but legs and arms were bare. If the day was cool, he had a bright cape thrown about his shoulders. He wore on his head or carried slung before him a bright bronze helmet, and some of the officers had waving plumes of horsehair atop.

Over his shoulders every man carried a forked stick — his mule, he called it — with a blanket, a cup, a pan, and a week's supply of food strapped to it. Perhaps the burden weighed forty or fifty pounds. A large rectangular shield hung at his back with its dull cloth cover to protect the bronze figures and painted colors that made it gay. His spears, perhaps, with their heavy bronze points, were in a baggage wagon behind him, but his broad short sword, with two sharp edges, hung at his right side, where his fighting hand could quickly grasp it.

All along the line above the heads of the men swayed their precious standards. Before each legion went a silver eagle with its proud S.P.Q.R., standing for *Senatus Populusque Romanus*, — "Senate and Roman People." Fastened to the pole were often silver medals, that the legion had won for bravery in some battle. And before each cohort, or smaller division of the legion, went its own standard, perhaps a wreath or a wolf or a hand. The Roman soldier felt all the love for his silver standard that our soldiers feel for the flag. It went into battle before him, and it was bitter dishonor for it to be captured. It was every man's proud hope to see the eagle of his own legion and the standard of his own cohort mount the wall first or push farthest into the enemy's ranks.

A Roman Camp

From sunrise till noon the army marched, covering perhaps twelve or fifteen miles. Then they halted and made camp. This was no small task, for a Roman camp was a fortified town, built in a few hours. The tents stood in rows along straight



A Roman Camp

A, *B*, *C*, *D*. Gates. *e*, *f*, *g*. Streets. *h*. General's tent. *i*. Quæstor's or paymaster's tent. *j*. Forum. *kk*. Tents of tribunes. *ll*. Non-Roman troops. *mm*. Tents of cavalry. *nn*. Tents of foot-soldiers. A modern drawing

lanes. The general's pavilion, with the altar before it, stood in the heart of the camp where the two main streets crossed each other. Beside it on one hand was a forum or meeting place, on the other hand a space for cooking and eating. About the whole camp went a wall of earth six or seven feet high with a ditch before it and gates at the four places where the streets cut through.

Every man had his own share of the work. Certain officers went ahead of the marching army and chose some gentle hillside and laid off the lines of the camp. When the army arrived, some men unpacked the tents and began pitching them. Others with picks and shovels began the ditch, piling up the dirt to make the wall.

When it was finished that strong camp was well guarded. Soldiers constantly patrolled the wall, guards were at the gates, sentinels stood before the tents of the officers, a trumpeter was always ready at the general's door to give signals. The secret watchword for the night was given without even a whisper, for it went about from hand to hand written on a wax tablet. With all these precautions it was almost impossible to surprise a Roman camp. The soldiers rested there in comfort and safety. After victory or defeat they came back to it as to a home. For even during a battle a few cohorts were always left to guard it.

Men who could build such a camp could do more than fight. It was marvelous how many things Cæsar's soldiers could do. They could lay up stone walls, build bridges, make boats, construct catapults and moving towers, — and that in an enemy's country and often in the wilderness where they had to begin with the living tree. Besides being skillful with tools, they were well trained to use sword and spear, to climb walls, to follow commands quickly and quietly and with strict obedience.

Moreover, they were always in prime physical condi-

tion. Cæsar was most careful about collecting provisions, and very rarely did it happen that they ran short. The half day in camp was a blessing. It gave the men time to eat comfortably, to make repairs in clothes and tools, to dress wounds. In consequence, the soldiers were well and strong, and when it was necessary could endure hardship — could march all night in the snow, swim rivers, eat short rations. It was armies like this that had made Rome the mistress of the world.

Conquest Changes the Romans

This Rome of Cæsar's time, the world-ruler, was much changed from the Rome of earlier times. Romans were more cultivated than they had been in the old days. When the doors of Greece were opened to them, the wealthy ones flocked there to visit this land of learning and of art, and the poor who had to stay at home listened hungrily to the tales that the travelers brought back, and eagerly adopted the new fashions that came from Greece. Those who could afford it bought Greek cloth, Greek furniture, Greek statues, Greek vases, Greek jewelry that merchants imported. Greek artists and builders and silversmiths and potters were welcomed into Rome. Greek teachers of poetry and music and oratory had crowded classes. Roman poets imitated Greek poems and plays. Roman gentlemen bought learned Greek slaves to teach their children and to be their own secretaries. With her sword Rome had unlocked the museum, the studio, the library, the university of the world, and now she was making use of what she found there.

Romans Become Hellenized

With the conquest of Asia the fine old Roman ways of living began to disappear. The conquerors were not willing to stand by and gaze at the wealth of those

lands they owned. Pompey, at the end of his war in Asia,[1] distributed twenty million dollars among his soldiers, and, besides that, brought home ten million dollars and gave it to Rome.

Riches of the East

In his triumphal procession there were two-horse carriages laden with gold or with ornaments, also the couch of one king and the throne and scepter of another, and the image of Pompey ten feet high made of solid gold. There were, too, vessels of gold and precious stones, three golden statues, thirty-three crowns adorned with pearls, a pearl-decked altar, and an image of Pompey himself made all in pearls. And these were only a few of the wonders of that triumphal procession.

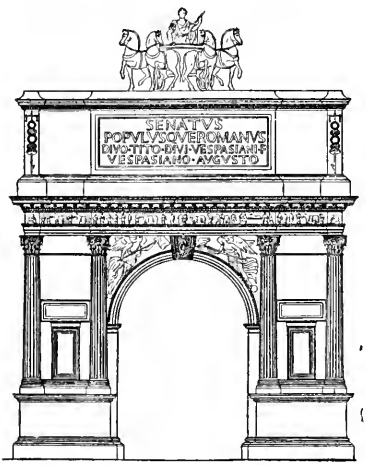
It was a rich land from which one general could collect so much spoil. Romans were glad to go as soldiers or officers or merchants to such a country, hoping to return laden with wealth. Thus Rome got a taste for luxury. Her women became fond of jewels, her men loved expensive banquets in ten or twelve courses with strange foods from distant parts of the world. Her houses were hung with expensive Eastern tapestry and rugs. The rooms were made sweet with burning perfumes from the East. Dozens of slaves filled the houses of the wealthy and followed their masters on the street. Men became millionaires and had city homes, gardens outside the walls, and country houses in the mountains or on the seashore.

Rich Romans

These country villas often "covered the space of a moderate-sized town with their garden grounds and aqueducts, fresh- and salt-water ponds for the preservation and breeding of river and marine fishes, nurseries of snails and slugs, game preserves for keeping hares, rabbits, stags, roes, and wild boars, and aviaries in which

[1] See also page 98.

even cranes and peacocks were kept." Some people, when they saw this new extravagance, sighed for the good old days when Romans had dressed simply, eaten little, worked hard. But most people followed gaily after the new fashions, if they could afford it, and for the rest of her long life Rome grew richer and more and more extravagant.



A Triumphal Arch

Built in honor of a Roman general who conquered Jerusalem. It still stands in Rome, though broken and much repaired. The inscription says, "The senate and Roman people to the divine Titus, son of the divine Vespasian [both emperors] and to Vespasian Augustus"

Generally only men from great and wealthy families were elected to office. It was these ex-officers who sat in the senate.[1] Gradually this aristocratic senate had gained more power, and the officers had lost it, until it was the senate that ruled Rome. The officers were only her servants. Everything was done "by the authority of the senate"—war declared, peace made, money spent, laws passed, generals sent out or recalled. "Senator" was the proudest title in Rome.

While the senate was growing strong, a bitter struggle was going on between the rich and the poor and between the Roman citizens and the Italians outside of Rome. The Italians had no share in the government, and the poor were miserably downtrodden. They lived packed close in tiny rooms in big tenement houses on narrow, sunless streets. They owned nothing. They had no way to earn a living, for some were too ignorant to know a trade.

The Poor of Rome

[1] See page 84.

Even those who were masons or blacksmiths or carpenters could get little work, for Italy was overrun with slaves. There were gangs of them in towns, on farms, on sheep ranches, in mines. They were often chained so that they could not escape, and they were branded, so that if they did escape men could know them as slaves. The ones who did rough work were dressed in rags or in skins and were fed upon the cheapest food, never tasting meat. They were herded in tents and in barracks no better than cattle sheds. For any kind of labor it was cheaper to own and feed such creatures than to hire self-respecting freemen.

The result was that men who would have liked to be plowmen or shepherds were without work. So they flocked to Rome, thinking to get help there; but the same hard conditions existed in the city. There were slaves trained for every trade, and if men did not own them, they could hire them at starvation wages. Poor freemen in the city, as well as in the country, found little work and grew even poorer. Some of them were, of course, lazy beggars and rascals. Some of them were noisy and troublesome, making wild threats against the rich and starting bloody street brawls. Others were discouraged, sullen, dejected. A few were earnest and thoughtful.

Most of the nobles and rich men, looking upon this wretched mass of the poor, only scorned them as beasts. But a few pitied their sufferings, hated the injustice of their case, and longed for some way of righting their wrongs. One of these noble friends of the poor said: "The wild beasts of Italy have their caves to retire to, but the brave men who spill their blood in her cause have nothing left but air and light. Without houses, without any settled habitation, they wander from place to place

with their wives and children. . . . The private soldiers fight and die to advance the wealth and luxury of the great, and they are called masters of the world while they have not a foot of ground in their possession."

Bad Government in the Provinces

The provinces outside of Italy, too, were unhappy and badly ruled. These were the nations that Rome had conquered — Sicily, Africa, Spain, Gaul, Macedon, Asia, and all the rest. They had no right to vote, no voice in choosing officers and making laws. Only the few men of the one city of Rome elected the officers that governed the world. A governor was sent to each of these provinces, with a few young men to assist him and an army to give him strength. He ruled his province for one year, and during that time no one, not even the officers and senate of Rome itself, might check or punish him. He had unlimited power. He might imprison men or have them executed. He made his own laws and governed his province according to them. At the end of the year a new governor came and perhaps overthrew last year's laws and made new ones.

Under this plan, if a bad man had charge of a province, he could do unlimited harm to a country. A certain governor of Sicily arrested rich men on false charges and took their property for himself. He tried cases in court without judges. He laid heavy taxes on the province, so that people were reduced to poverty. He boasted at the end of his year that he had made three immense fortunes out of his helpless people.

Cicero, a Roman orator who lived during Cæsar's time, said, "All the provinces are mourning, all the free peoples are complaining, all kingdoms remonstrate with us for our covetousness and our wrong-doing; on this side of the ocean there is no spot so remote that in these latter times

the lust and wickedness of our countrymen have not penetrated to it."

During a hundred years a few great men tried to solve these problems of Rome. Of them all, Cæsar, the conqueror of Gaul, the builder of the new army, was the greatest. He marched down out of Gaul with his devoted and well-trained soldiers, overthrew the government, defeated the armies sent against him, and made himself ruler of the Roman world. He was general of the army, high priest of the religion, head of the government.

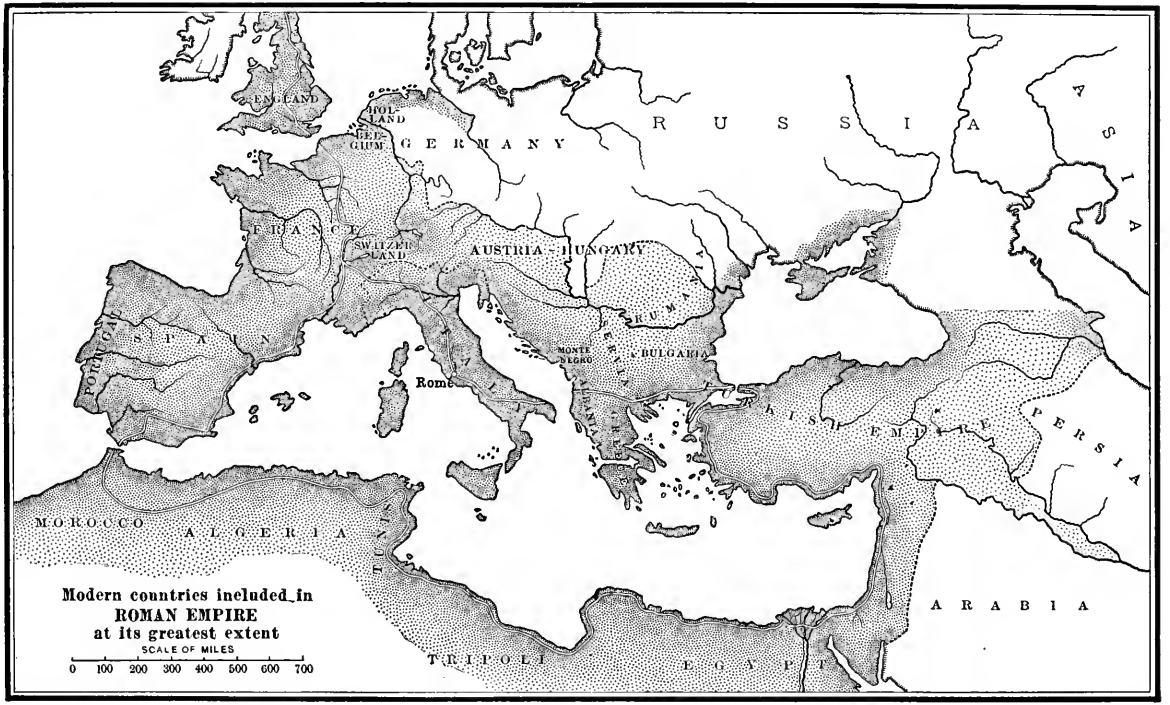
Cæsar Begins a New Government

Immediately he began to remedy the abuses from which the Roman world was suffering. He cut up the public lands and gave them out to his old soldiers and other needy families. He began to give rights of citizenship to men throughout the provinces. He cut down the terrible taxes that they had been forced to pay, and made the people of Rome pay their share as they had not done before. He was given the title of "Father of his Country"; and after his death the senate declared that he had been received by the gods as one of themselves. A temple was built to the "Divine Julius," and a priest was appointed to care for his altar.

The change which Cæsar had made in the government was permanent. The Roman republic of the old days was gone forever. For five hundred years after his time the world was ruled by emperors who built on the foundations he had laid.

---

1. Make a clay model of a triumphal arch, of Cæsar's camp, of a walled town. Build mounds and movable towers and battering rams around the town. **2.** Find pictures of the Alps. **3.** Make a tall, slender column in clay. On it scratch pictures of Roman war scenes. The drawing on page 106 is from such a column now standing in Rome. It was built by the emperor Trajan in honor of his victories.



The double line marks a series of roads around the empire. There were hundreds of other roads not shown on this map

CHAPTER VI

THE ROMAN EMPIRE

How Rome Ruled the World

In the government that the Roman emperors created one man was ruler. He was thought divine, the successor to the "Divine Julius." He lived in a great palace that covered acres of ground. He dressed in a purple robe, wore a crown, and carried a scepter. His will was all-powerful. But he could not do all the work necessary in ruling the world. These absolute emperors organized a body of helpers. They appointed tax collectors, treasurers, governors of provinces, judges, generals. The officers of the second rank reported to those of the first rank, and officers of the third rank to those of the second. Through the chief officials the emperor heard of the doings of all the underlings and visited praise or blame upon them. It was a successful way for one man to control the doing of business too large for one alone to carry on. The empire was much better ruled than in the old republican days when governors and tax collectors had been responsible to nobody.

The Emperors

That empire was practically the world. It stretched northward to the safe boundary of the wide Rhine and Danube rivers, and even the far northern island of Britain belonged to it. Eastward Rome had all Asia Minor and a narrow strip of seacoast besides. At the south she had Egypt and

Size of the Empire, 85 A.D.

a fringe along all Africa, stretching back to the desert. She owned, moreover, all the many islands of the sea.

The most northern point of Roman Britain was more than two thousand miles north of the most southern point of Roman Egypt, and from the farthest western point in Spain to the farthest eastern point of Asia Minor was about three thousand miles. Even the swift ships of our time need about five days to travel the length of the Mediterranean, and in ancient times sailing vessels in the best of weather took about eighteen days.

There were a hundred races or more in that empire. To-day there are packed into that old territory twenty countries or districts: England, Spain, Portugal, France, Belgium, Switzerland, Austria, Italy, Albania, Montenegro, Servia, Rumania, Bulgaria, Greece, Turkey, Egypt, Tripoli, Algeria, Morocco, Tunis, besides little slices of four or five others.

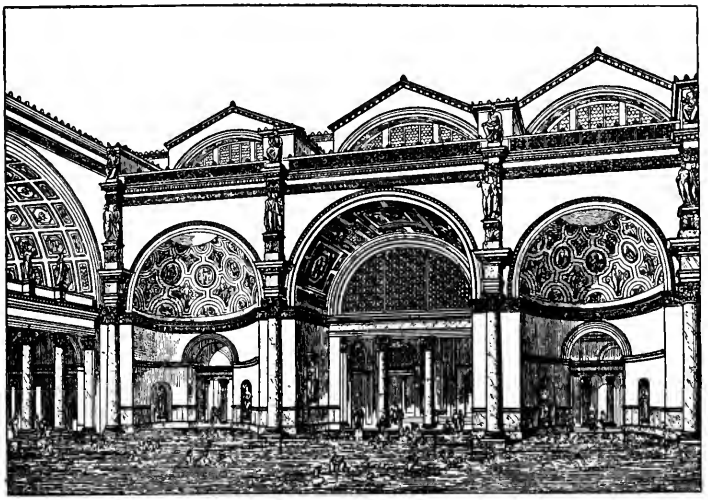
Yet in spite of the great size and the variety of races, Rome governed the empire well. The civilized peoples of the East kept their old habits, prospered, and were more or less content. The new peoples of the West were taught civilized ways and rapidly changed their manners.

The Work of Civilization in Gaul

In 58 B.C. Cæsar had found Gaul a country of wild forests. There had been no vineyards; few grain-fields; few bridges, but only fords across the rivers; few walled towns, but, rather, straggling villages; human beings sacrificed to the gods. Cæsar seems to have had the same feeling of curiosity and condescending admiration for the people that we had for Indians.

Four hundred years later, however, the descendants of these half-civilized Gauls were Roman gentlemen. They had houses of thirty rooms with carved furniture and marble statues and libraries of Greek and Latin books.

In their courtyards cool fountains played, the water brought from mountain springs through great aqueducts of stone. There were gardens where the daintiest fruits and vegetables grew. Hundreds of slaves tilled the fields, pressed the grapes into wine, groomed the fine



THE COLD PLUNGE IN A ROMAN BATH-HOUSE

A modern reconstruction from ancient ruins

horses, trained the hunting dogs, helped their masters to dress and undress, shaved their faces, and perfumed their hair.

There were walled cities like those of Greece and Italy, with stone theaters where the Gauls went to see Roman and Greek plays. In the cities were huge bath-houses where a gentleman could spend his day, now in the warm bath, now in the cold, sometimes taking a sweat in the hot room and again swimming in the tank or playing ball or tennis in the open court, or perhaps lounging on the benches and reading his Greek verses to listening friends.

All these fine gentlemen spoke Latin like their friends in Rome, and even the uneducated people tried to speak it, though they spoiled the pronunciation and mixed Latin and Gallic words.

What had happened in Gaul had happened in Spain, also; she had become as Roman as Rome herself. Even to-day we call the French, the Spanish and the Portuguese, as well as the Italians, Romance peoples, because they have always kept the mark of their early Roman education.

In Britain

But even as far north as Britain, the Romans left their signs. Many an English farmer in our time, in digging or plowing a field, has come upon strange gold coins bearing the face and name of an old Roman emperor. Or he has found a little vase of clay or bronze, tight sealed, and upon opening it has seen a handful of dust, the ashes of some Roman soldier, perhaps, who lived and died and was burned on the funeral pyre fifteen hundred years ago. Or he has wondered at the low, grassy ridge that runs so straight across his field, not knowing that it is the earth wall of an old Roman camp.

Cæsar, who twice led his army into Britain during his Gallic war, says that in his time no one but merchants visited that distant island. "Most of the inland inhabitants," he says, "do not sow corn, but live on milk and flesh and are clad in skins. All the Britons, indeed, dye themselves with wood which makes a bluish color, and thereby they have a more terrible appearance in fight." This sounds like a description of tattooed savages.

But in 85 A.D. the Romans conquered Britain after a war bloodier and much longer than the Gallic war, and Tacitus, a Roman historian, tells how Agricola, the Roman general who finished the conquest, set about Romanizing the country when the war was ended.

He encouraged the natives "to build temples, courts of justice, and commodious dwelling houses. . . . To establish a plan of education, and give the sons of the leading chiefs a tincture of letters, was part of his policy. . . . The consequence was, that they who had always disdained the Roman language began to cultivate its beauties. The Roman apparel was seen without prejudice, and the toga became a fashionable part of dress."

Fifty years after Agricola's time the emperor Hadrian visited Britain. He found fifty towns built like Roman towns, with walls around them and comfortable houses inside them like Roman houses. He could go easily from town to town with his guards, for good roads crossed the country to and fro. He found the towns busy with manufacture. Perhaps there was a pottery or a glass shop or a mine of lead or iron.

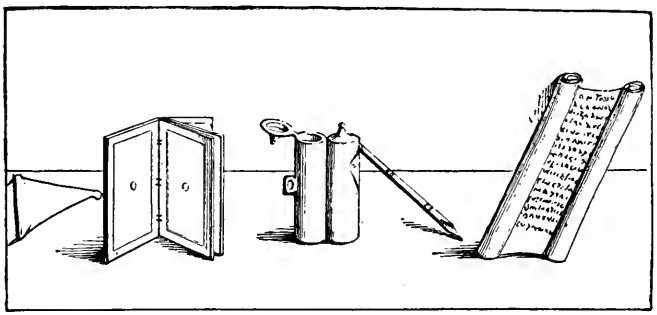
In some cities he visited bath-houses like those great buildings in Rome and Gaul with hot and cold rooms and swimming pools filled by mineral springs. He visited country houses almost as fine as those in the hills near Rome. In the dining rooms he saw floors of mosaic with pictures of the Roman gods, with benches like those at Rome. There he presided at banquets where food was brought on in silver dishes sent from Rome, where guests sang Roman verses and talked in the Roman language.

He saw neat farms along the road with growing wheat and barley and grazing cattle. He found his four Roman legions camped among peaceful people. Some of the soldiers had married British women and were working little fields outside of the camp or keeping shops in the village that had grown up around it.

Between Britain and Caledonia (that is, between Eng-

land and Scotland) he found a line of camps that Agricola had built, with a road running from one to another. Here the emperor made a wall eighty miles long, with watch-towers looking toward the north, with camps of Roman soldiers to keep out the barbarians of Caledonia from Roman Britain.

And so Roman speech, Roman books, Roman laws, Roman dress, Roman ways of building, spread over most of the world. "Wherever I go," says a Roman citizen about 400 A.D., "I find my fatherland. I come as a Roman among Romans." And that Roman citizen was a Spaniard. To-day travelers can see the ruins of a Roman wall on the edge of Scotland, of a Roman bath in England, of a Roman theater in France, of Roman camps on the German Rhine, of a Roman bridge across the Danube in Rumania, of a Roman forum in Athens, of a Roman temple in Algiers. How did the Romans do this Romanizing?



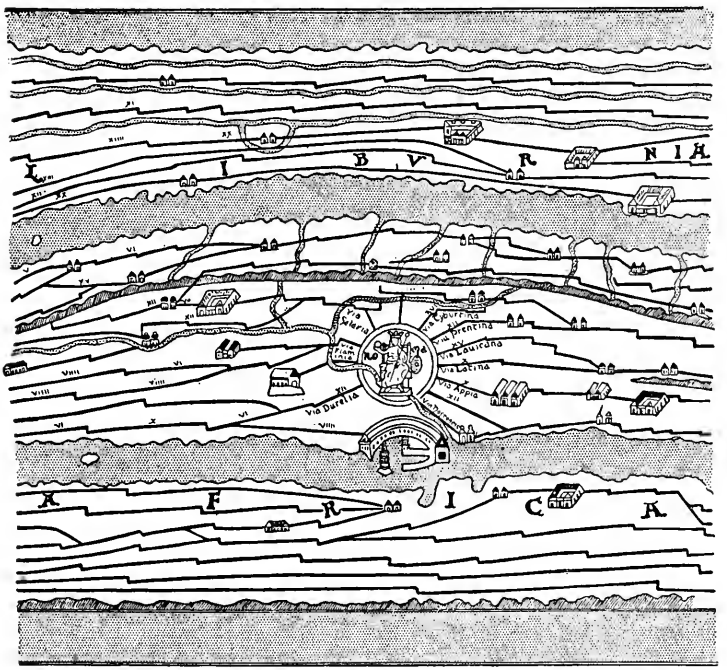
WAX TABLET INKHORN SCROLL OR BOOK

Roman Roads

One of the first things they always did after they had conquered a country was to build roads. They laid them out straight, through marshes, over hills, across rivers. So well were they built that to-day the people of England, France, Germany,

Spain, and Italy are still driving over them. In a few places you can walk on the very paving stones that Roman hands laid down almost two thousand years ago.

First the builders packed the ground hard, then put



PART OF A ROMAN MAP OF THE WORLD

The emperor at Rome sits in the middle of the world, and all roads lead to him. Notice the harbor of Ostia, near Rome, with a lighthouse. The map shows long, narrow Italy, with the seas at the sides. The top of the map is northeast, the bottom is southwest

down a thick layer of cobblestones, on top of that broken stones and lime, and above that a bedding of fine cement. Then on the important roads they put, on top of all that, a pavement of stone blocks fitted close. The road top curved from the center to side gutters or toward the

middle to a center drain. It must have cost many hundreds of dollars to build every mile of road, and must have needed great numbers of men working for many weeks, hauling cobblestone, crushing rock, making cement, squaring blocks.

When these roads were once made, they were kept in good condition. The emperors appointed officers to be in charge of them, to inspect them often, to hire contractors to make repairs, to collect taxes for the work from the landowners along the way. So important were the roads that the great officers and nobles and even the emperors of Rome were proud to give them their names. Thus we have in Italy the Appian Way, the Æmilian Way, the Julian Way, the Flavian Way, the Claudian Way, the Flaminian Way, named for the great men who first built them or later repaired them.

Nor were these roads few and far apart. From the thirty-seven gates in the Roman city wall, roads branched off in all directions. They were almost as many as the railroads of to-day, crossing and meeting in the same way, covering the whole empire as with a spider's web. The center of that web was Rome, so that the saying grew up, "All roads lead to Rome." In one of the forums of the city, the emperor Augustus set up a golden milestone with the names of the greatest cities of the whole empire carved upon it, with their distances from Rome.

A man could start from the Roman wall in the north of modern England and drive in a wheeled carriage through the cities of York and London to Sandwich on the southeastern coast. Then he could cross by boat the narrow English channel to what is now Boulogne in France. Here he would find a road again leading southward through Lyons and across the steep Alps. From here it went on through long Italy, through Milan and

the heart of Rome, past the golden milestone to Brindisi down in the southeastern corner.

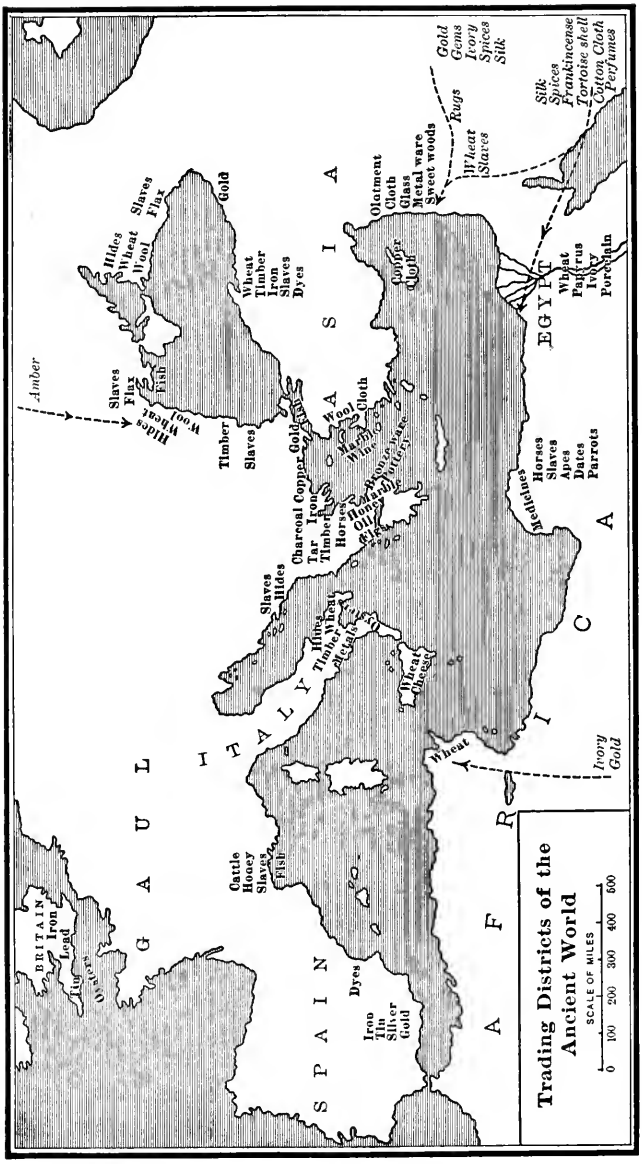
Here the traveler would have to take ship again and cross the Adriatic to modern Durazzo. From there a great road would lead him eastward to Constantinople. He would cross the narrow Bosporus by boat, would land and continue southward across rich Asia Minor, passing through many old cities, following the coast through ancient Phœnicia, and at last, after many weeks of travel, would arrive in Jerusalem, having journeyed on straight, clean, level roads for four thousand miles.

If he wished, he could continue on down the coast, across the Isthmus of Suez, across fertile Egypt, and along the whole coast of Africa to modern Tangier on the Strait of Gibraltar. There he would cross by ship to Spain and pass along the wonderful coast road back to Lyons, across France, across the channel, and back through England to his town in the North, having made a circle around the Roman world.[1]

At every mile of the way he would pass milestones of marble with the names of the nearest cities carved upon them and their distance from Rome. He would travel about forty miles a day, though people sometimes made a hundred, and one of the generals in hurrying to his sick brother in Germany went two hundred miles in twenty-four hours. We cannot do much better in our automobiles to-day.

At the end of every day's journey of forty or fifty miles the traveler would find inns where he could get bed and meals and hire horses, if he needed to do so. And often, as he sat in the inn, he would see a messenger dash up on a horse, leap off, fling his saddlebags upon a fresh horse that had been brought out from the stable, and

[1] See map on page 116.


Trading Districts of the Ancient World
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500
GAUL
ITALY
SPAIN
ASIA
AFRICA
EGYPT
BRITAIN
Iron
Lead
Tin
Oysters
Cattle
Honey
Slaves
Fish
Dyes
Iron
Tin
Silver
Gold
Slaves
Hides
Hides
Timber
Wheat
Metals
Wheat
Cheese
Wheat
Ivory
Gold
Amber
Slaves
Flax
Hides
Wheat
Wool
Fish
Timber
Slaves
Slaves
Flax
Hides
Wheat
Wool
Gold
Wheat
Timber
Iron
Slaves
Dyes
Charcoal
Copper
Gold
Tar
Iron
Timber
Horses
Wool
Cloth
Marble
Wine
Bronze ware
Pottery
Marble
Honey
Oil
Figs
Copper
Cloth
Olotment
Cloth
Glass
Metal ware
Sweet woods
Rugs
Wheat
Slaves
Gold
Gems
Ivory
Spices
Silk
Silk
Spices
Frankincense
Tortoise shell
Cotton Cloth
Perfumes
Wheat
Papyrus
Ivory
Porcelain
Medicines
Horses
Slaves
Apes
Dates
Parrots

dash on again. Or perhaps he would see the long line of a legion marching past to a war, with heavy baggage wagons lumbering behind. And always he would see servants carrying their masters' letters, and merchants passing with rich goods on pack mules or in wagons. For along those great roads flowed war and peace and the whole life of the world.

Commerce was another thing that held the empire together and taught East and West and North and South the ways of one another. Many men are content with life so long as they are making money, and merchants and manufacturers and ship-owners surely had a good chance to make money under the Roman empire. Ever since Pompey had put an end to the pirates,[1] the sea had been safe for commerce. Every merchant thanked Rome for peace and prosperity.

Trade

Another thing was done to stimulate commerce. In that day all cities had market-places where buying and selling was carried on.[2] In every one of these the Roman officers posted up rules as to when the market should be opened and what kind of money should be used. And in the market stood a great block of stone with basins hollowed out holding the right amount for the different measures like our bushels and pecks and quarts. Any man who thought he was being cheated by the merchant from whom he was buying could take his goods here and test the amount. This enforced honest selling and encouraged people all over the empire to use the same measures.

As a result there was much world-wide trading in the empire. Just as the food on our own breakfast tables to-day comes from all corners of our country (oranges from California, breakfast foods from Niagara Falls, the

[1] See page 99. [2] See pages 43 and 80.

wheat in our muffins from Minneapolis, maple sirup from Vermont, bacon from Chicago), so a Roman house was furnished from all corners of the empire. There were rugs and hangings from Asia Minor. Gold and silver came from Spain, as in the earlier time of the Greeks; tin and lead and iron from Britain; vases and statues and marble from Greece. From Alexandria in Egypt came all the fine luxuries that far-off India sent to the West — ivory, tortoise shell, rare cloth of cotton and silk (for the earlier Romans had only linen and wool), pearls, diamonds, spices, perfumes. The food on the table was from as many places. The wheat from which the flour was made was from fertile Egypt or Sicily or the Black Sea region, the wine from the Greek Islands and from Asia Minor, oysters from the Gallic coast.

Whether these goods that traders handled were sold in Gaul, Syria, or Egypt, they were paid for in Roman silver, and everywhere Roman money was good — among the half-civilized Germans who had no money of their own, and among refined Greeks. Now, when different peoples are using the same money, the same roads, the same ships, the same weights and measures; are buying and selling among themselves; are visiting one another's cities; and are feeling protected and safe, they are learning from one another, are becoming broader-minded, are growing more alike, and are rather sure to be contented and peaceful and grateful to the government that causes it all. So it was for most of the time in the Roman empire.

A New Religion in the Ancient World

While the empire had been growing, another great thing had happened: Christianity had begun. Its origin was very humble, with one poor man and a few of his poor friends over in a little corner of Asia that was owned

by the Romans. As you know, that country was Palestine, and that man was Jesus. When he was born, the great Augustus was emperor of Rome, and Rome governed the world. That world had many religions. The Jews worshiped Jehovah as they had done in the days of David. The Greeks worshiped Zeus and Apollo and Athene and the rest as they had done in the time of Pericles. The Romans worshiped Jove and Mars and the others as they had done since early times. Egypt had gods of her own — gods whose statues had heads of birds or beasts. The German tribes adored Woden and Thor and their companions. Some of these gods were good and gentle, others were fierce and jealous and given to fits of anger.

Beginning of Christianity

Christ taught an idea new to most peoples — that there is but one God for all the world and that He is the God of love, the Father of His people. Christ's followers, looking at all the heathen gods, thought them foolish and wicked, and pitied the people who worshiped them. Besides this, Christianity promised more after death than did any other religion. According to the Greek and Roman worship the land of the dead was only a beautiful meadow where phantom people lived phantom lives and longed for news of their old beloved world. Among the Germans it was only warriors that died in battle who gained happiness after death. They would lead a life of constant feasting and fighting in the presence of the gods. Christianity pictured a gentler, fairer heaven for the righteous after death.

Here is a description of the walled city where they were to live: "And the twelve gates were twelve pearls: every several gate was of one pearl: and the street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass. . . . And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine

in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof. And the nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it: and the kings of the earth do bring glory and honor into it." Instead of the warlike heaven of the Germans, Christianity promised peace and love and gladness. "And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes," says the Bible. "And there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away."

Christians were excited by their new religion, by its beauty and wonder, and they were eager to teach it to other people. So the most earnest of them went about from town to town of Palestine preaching to their fellow Jews and saying, "Repent ye and be converted." They had some success and gained new converts.

Soon they began to travel farther, to the cities of Asia Minor and to the islands of the Ægean. Here they preached not only to Jews, but to the Greeks and Romans who lived there. At last Paul, the greatest preacher of them all, crossed over to Greece. He preached in Macedon, Alexander's old country. He preached in Athens, under the very shadow of Athene's temple. In Corinth he lived and taught for a year and a half. Meantime other Christians were visiting other cities. And as "all roads led to Rome," the very center of the world, Christians soon found their way there. In many places people listened to the new teaching, left their old gods, and became Christians.

Missionaries

Because they were few in the midst of other religions, and because they were much in earnest about their new doctrine, these early Christians felt themselves held fast together by a strong tie of brotherhood. They had frequent meetings in their houses for preaching and prayer.

Moreover, since they were brothers, they felt that they must share their goods and clothes and wealth with one another. "Neither was there any among them that lacked, for as many as were possessors of lands and houses sold them, and brought the prices of the things that were sold, and laid them down at the apostles' feet: and distribution was made to every man according as he had need." So says the book of Acts, in the Christian Bible. Officers were appointed to take care of this money and to attend to the distributing of it to orphans and widows and to serve at the tables when the brethren ate together.

Other members were chosen to teach or to preach. They wrote letters of encouragement and advice to the churches that were being formed here and there. They went about from town to town visiting their brethren. In the market-places or on the temple steps they preached to any who would listen. Sometimes the audience was interested, sometimes it was angered and was ready to fight for its old gods with these men who spoke against them. Stephen was stoned to death by an angry mob, and Paul was more than once arrested and put into prison.

But the Christians were ready to suffer for their religion, and they kept on worshiping and preaching. Soon they were so numerous that they built large stone churches for their meetings, and each church had priests to preach and read the prayers. The bishops who had charge of church affairs wore beautiful white robes and embroidered stoles and needed secretaries and servants to help them attend to their business. Christianity had begun among the humble folk, — fishermen, carpenters, tentmakers, — but within two hundred years many of the great people of the world adopted the new religion, — learned scholars, Roman nobles, officers, and relatives of the emperor. They were

Growth of the New Religion

scattered all over the empire, from Spain to Asia Minor, from rich Africa to wild Germany. A great Christian writer two hundred years after Christ says: "We are but of yesterday, and yet we already fill your cities, islands, camps, your palace, senate, and forum."

Yet to be a Christian was contrary to law. Moreover, Roman officers and Roman soldiers were required to sacrifice to Jupiter and the twelve gods and to worship the emperor. Some Christians were willing to go through these sacrifices and prayers with their hands and their mouths, while they felt that they kept their hearts clean for God. But most of them refused to sacrifice or to pray to any god but their own. Generally Roman officers overlooked this disobedience. For after all, in other ways Christians were good citizens. They kept the laws and paid their taxes. Moreover, the Romans were not very much in earnest about their religion. Most of them thought that people should be allowed to choose their favorite gods from all those in the world, and for many years before Christ, Romans had imported new gods from Egypt or Persia. So in spite of the laws against them, the Christians grew in number and strength and wealth.

Christian Martyrs

Yet now and then an emperor came to the throne who thought it best to punish the followers of the new religion, for refusing to serve in the Roman army or for saying that they were not subjects of the emperor but of a greater king. Eusebius, a Christian writer about three hundred years after Christ, gives this story of Apphianus, one of the early martyrs in Africa:

An order had been given "that all persons everywhere should publicly offer sacrifice, and that the rulers of the cities should see to this with all care and diligence. The heralds were proclaiming . . . that men, women, and

children should come to the temples of the idols at the command of the governor. Moreover the military tribunes were calling upon each one by name, from a list, and the heathen were rushing in an immense crowd from every quarter. This youth, [Apphianus,] fearlessly and without imparting his purpose to any, stealing away from us who dwelt in the same house, and unobserved by the military band around the governor, approached Urbanus [the governor], who happened then to be making libations. Fearlessly seizing his right hand, Apphianus suddenly interrupted him in the act of sacrificing. Then he counseled and exhorted him in a solemn and serious tone to abandon his error, saying it was not right we should desert the only one and true god to sacrifice to idols and demons. . . .

"He was immediately seized and torn by the soldiers like ravenous beasts, and after suffering most heroically innumerable stripes on his whole body, was cast into prison until further orders. There, being stretched by the tormentors with both feet, a night and a day, on the rack, he was the next day brought to the judge. When force was applied to make him sacrifice, he showed an unconquerable courage in bearing pain and horrid tortures. [His sides were cut, his face was beaten, his feet were burned.] . . . But as he did not yield even to this, . . . he was again cast into prison. At last he was summoned the third day before the judge again, and still declaring his fixed purpose in the profession of Christ, already half dead, he was thrown into the sea and drowned."

If men were willing to suffer like this for the Christian religion, is it any wonder that people admired them and said: "There must be something good in this religion that men love better than life. We must find out about it." Weak people, of course, were frightened away from

the church, but many of the braver sort were won by such courageous, joyful, loving martyrdom. One of the Christian writers, crying out to the Roman persecutors, says: "Go on, rack, torture, grind us to powder; our numbers increase in proportion as ye mow us down. The blood of Christians is their harvest seed."

A Statue of the Emperor Constantine

An Emperor Becomes a Christian

That seed, the blood of the martyrs, was sown all over the empire, in Gaul, in Africa, in Italy, in Palestine, in Greece. And there did, indeed, spring up from it great harvests for Christianity, so that there were millions of Christians in the Roman world.

At last even an emperor became one of them. That emperor was Constantine the Great. Eusebius tells this marvelous story of a vision that Constantine had during a war:

"He said that about midday when the sun was beginning to decline, he saw with his own eyes the trophy of a cross of light in the heavens above the sun, and bearing the inscription, 'Conquer by this.' At this sight he himself was struck with amazement, and his whole army also which happened to be following him on some expedition and witnessed the miracle. He said, moreover, that he doubted within himself what the meaning of this apparition could be. And while he continued to ponder and reason on its meaning, night imperceptibly drew on; and in his sleep the Christ of God appeared to him with the same sign which he had seen in the heavens, and commanded him to procure a

standard made in the likeness of that sign and to use it as a safe-guard in all engagements with his enemies. At dawn of day he arose and communicated his secret to his friends, and then calling together the workers in gold and precious stones, he sat in the midst of them and described to them the figure of the sign he had seen, bidding them represent it in gold and precious stones."

Whether this miracle happened or not, Constantine did carry the standard of the Christian cross in his battles, and he and his soldiers did have the sign of the cross marked on their helmets and breastplates. After several years he was baptized into the Christian church, and even before that, as soon as he was emperor, he gave Christians the right to worship according to their religion. Moreover, he restored to them lands and money which had been taken from them, and himself built churches in honor of God. When the emperor was a Christian, when the laws no longer made it a crime to be a Christian, thousands of people began to flock into the church. Stories say that in one year, at Rome alone, twelve thousand men, besides women and children, were baptized. Christianity had become the religion of the empire.

Results of Roman Rule

Rome had ruled the world for four hundred years or more. For four hundred years the peoples of the world had, generally speaking, used the same money, traveled the same roads, spoken the same language, obeyed the same law. They had all faced toward one city, had looked up to one man. Alexander had dreamed of a world empire; Rome had realized that dream. This long unity made a permanent mark upon the earth. Men have never since

Centralized Government

lost the idea of a unified world. You will find people in the Middle Ages trying to revive just such an empire as Rome had created. In much later times Napoleon made the same attempt.

Rome not only made a great empire; she changed the peoples of it, made them all more or less alike. The United States has been called a melting pot, where all the races of the world are thrown together, melted over a fire of education and freedom, and recast into Americans. But long before our time Rome was also a melting pot of nations. The little city-states of Greece had always scorned foreigners, had never given them the right to hold office or to vote, had even shut them out of the religious festivals, and had made separate laws for them. In the Roman empire, on the other hand, all freemen were equal: Gauls and Germans belonged to the senate, Spaniards and Arabs sat on the imperial throne. Without knowing it, perhaps, every country of western Europe has followed this Roman example, has generally made friends with the conquered or the conquerors, accepted them as citizens, and intermarried with them. The result is that not a nation of Europe is of unmixed blood, as the Greeks boasted themselves to be. The modern man, with this mixed blood in his veins, boasts, not of his exclusiveness, but of his liberality and broad-mindedness toward nations and races.

Generous Attitude toward Foreigners

There were two things about Roman government which had a deep influence upon Europe. One was the idea of an absolute ruler. Kings of later times never allowed their people to forget the old Roman rule, "The pleasure of the prince has the force of law." Only in modern times have we been able to put that idea aside and to set law above the ruler.

The Absolute Ruler

The other idea of government that the Middle Ages took over from the Romans was that of organizing a body of king's helpers, rank below rank, and all responsible to the king.[1] Every state of Europe and America and every great business firm now does its work in this way. The plan was made for us by the Romans, and from them we have inherited it.

King's Helpers

The people of Rome were very unlike their teachers, the Greeks. They were not artistic, imaginative, emotional. Rather they had the minds of lawyers. It was a Roman habit to obey law. The Roman way of doing anything was the legal way. Let one example illustrate. For two hundred years, you remember, the plebeians fought for equal rights with the patricians.[2] But how did they fight? Not with the sword, but with laws. Slowly, step by step, like a horse pulling a heavy load uphill, they advanced, never breaking an old law, but doggedly persuading the patricians to pass new ones granting this little right, that little privilege, until at last they had them all. That was the Roman way.

Roman Law

Such a law-loving people would make a great mass of laws and would be proud of them. The orator Cicero said that the laws of all other nations, especially of the Greeks, seemed to him ridiculous when compared with the Roman law. Doubtless many a Roman at one time or another might have said something like this: "We have many laws here in Rome. There is hardly any action of a man toward his neighbor that is not covered by some law. And yet they are all so just and so natural that they never surprise us. We look upon them as upon the wise words of our father. They guide us in our daily lives. It is very different in Greece: men hardly

[1] See page 117. [2] See page 84.

know what their laws are, and so they have to walk without a guide. I have heard Greeks say: 'What need of laws? We Greeks can argue things through without them.' I once saw a case being tried in a Greek court, and I was reminded of a group of boys quarreling over a ball game: no one of them knows the rules, or they all have different rules, or half of them think the rules are bad and therefore will not obey them. And the family of the man on trial were in court, weeping, and begging the judges for mercy in spite of the laws. A Roman would never do so childish a thing. He would have too much respect for the law."

The Romans studied their laws as no people before them had ever done. Great lawyers gave lectures upon them and wrote books about them. At last the emperor Justinian had capable men collect all written laws, all lawyers' opinions that had been written, all the decisions of judges in the courts, all the unwritten customs that people usually followed in making contracts and in doing business. All these laws and practices they compared, sorted, put in order, restated clearly, and wrote in books. Besides that, they wrote explanations of the reasons and meaning of law. All this made Roman law very fixed and clear, and although the empire fell, yet these books have remained down to the present day. Through the Middle Ages in the universities young men studied them, and in church and state people lived according to Roman law. To-day the law of Italy, Spain, France, Germany, is Roman, brought down through the Middle Ages from far-off Rome. If an old Roman lawyer should return to earth and walk into an Italian court, he would feel much at home and might almost sit as judge.

529–534 A.D.

Of course Rome left us her roads, her ruined buildings,

and some of her great books; but more important than these are the less material things that she gave the world — the idea of an absolute ruler, organized and centralized government, generous adoption of foreigners, her law, and the habit of obeying law.

---

1. The Greeks loved beauty; the Romans loved law. Greece was divided; Italy was united. Make more sentences of this sort, contrasting the Greeks and Romans. **2.** Greeks wore shawl-like cloaks; so did the Romans. Greeks had low, flat-roofed houses; so did the Romans. Make other sentences stating the likenesses of Greeks and Romans. **3.** Draw silhouettes of scenes on a Roman road as the Greek vase-painter would have made them. (See cut on page 33.) **4.** Look up the following words in a large dictionary and see what language they come from and what they meant in that language: annual, army, century, governor, judge, language, legal, legislature, military, senate.

PART II. THE NEWER NATIONS

CHAPTER VII

THE BARBARIAN CONQUERORS

THE great Roman empire, the civilizer of the West, was not to stand forever. Many things were helping to bring about its end, but perhaps the greatest wreckers of all were the barbarians of the North. From a day in early times when the Gauls had swept into Italy and had burned Rome, she had never been quite free from the fear of barbarians. She had met them over and over again, sometimes inside her own territory, sometimes outside of it. For hundreds of years she had been successful against them. The Gauls, as you know, she had conquered [1] and had made a part of her great family, teaching them her ways, using them as soldiers, making them citizens.

Rome and the Barbarians

Yet there always remained, beyond her farthest marches, a great un-Roman wilderness, peopled with un-Romanized tribes. It was to keep out these peoples that she built frontier forts and boundary walls and had her warlike legions. But the barbarians filtered through even these strong defenses. Though Rome kept out their hostile armies, yet all the time small numbers were coming in friendly ways into the empire. They enlisted in the army and were to be found in the emperor's bodyguard

[1] See page 101.

and in the frontier forts. Hardly a battle was fought that had not barbarian troops on the Roman side. Some of these men worked up to the high position of generals, and a few even became consuls. The barbarian captives after a battle were sold as slaves in the empire, to work Roman farms and to act as household servants.

Several times, too, emperors opened the door of the empire to this or that tribe and allowed them to settle inside the Roman boundaries, thinking it wise to make friends among the barbarians and to use them as frontier guards against the others of their race. At one time 40,000 Goths were allowed to settle on the Roman side of the Rhine. Gaul was peppered over with little barbarian colonies, owning land and under promise to fight for Rome when she called. In all these ways the empire was soaking up barbarians as a sponge soaks up water.

The Germans

There were many of these barbarian tribes — Franks, Vandals, Goths, Burgundians, Saxons, Lombards — but they were all related and had similar customs, laws, languages. People often speak of all of them as the "Germans." They are the races from whom the modern Germans and Dutch and English and Scandinavians are descended. Tacitus describes them as they were about a hundred years after Christ, in districts where they were untouched by civilization. They seem in many ways like one of our Indian tribes.

"Generally," Tacitus says, "their only clothing is a cloak fastened with a clasp, or if they haven't that, with a thorn; this being their only garment they pass whole days about the hearth or near a fire. . . . There are those, also, who wear the skins of wild beasts. . . . They select certain animals, and stripping their hides,

sew on them patches of spotted skin taken from those strange beasts that the distant ocean and the unknown sea bring forth."

It seemed strange to the Romans to find people not having walled cities. Tacitus speaks of it with surprise.

Tribal Life

"It is well known that none of the German tribes live in cities nor even permit their houses to be closely joined to each other. They live separated and in various places, as a spring or a meadow or a grove strikes their fancy. They lay out their villages, not as with us in connected or closely joined houses, but each one surrounds his dwelling with an open space." Their houses were crude log huts. The land did not belong to individual men, as with us, but the village owned it and divided it among people as it was needed.

A Frankish Barbarian of Early Times

"They cultivate fresh fields," Tacitus says, "every year, and there is still land to spare. They do not plant orchards nor lay off meadow lands nor irrigate gardens." They only scratched the ground, evidently, and threw upon it a little wheat and were content with whatever crop came; for they did not like farming. "Nor could you persuade them to till the soil and await the yearly produce so easily as you could induce them to stir up an enemy and earn glorious wounds. Nay, they even think it tame and stupid to acquire by their sweat what they can purchase by their blood."

They seem to have been lazy people, for Tacitus says: "In the intervals of peace they spend little time in hunting but much in idleness, given over to sleep and eating; all the bravest and most warlike doing nothing, while the hearth and home and the care of the fields is given over to the women, the old men, and the various infirm members of the family."

A German Warrior

Very few of those ancient German warriors wore armor and helmets. They carried shields and javelins and could throw their spears to a great distance. Therefore, it was without swords and without armor and with ill-trained horses that they met the Roman legion. Yet they fought with marvelous courage. "It is the greatest disgrace," says Tacitus, "to have left one's shield on the field, and it is unlawful for a man so disgraced to be present at the sacred rites or to enter the assembly; so that many after escaping from battle have ended their shame with the halter." They went into battle shouting, with their shields before their mouths, so that they swelled the noise and made what Tacitus calls "a wild and confused roar."

German Warfare

There was almost constant warfare, Germans against

Romans, or Germans against Germans: for every chief had a band of young warriors. "There is great rivalry among these companions," says Tacitus, "as to who shall rank first with the chief, and among the chiefs as to who shall have the most and the bravest followers. . . . When they go into battle it is a disgrace for the chief to be outdone in deeds of valor, and for the following not to match the courage of their chief; furthermore, for any one of the followers to have survived his chief and to come unharmed out of a battle is lifelong infamy and reproach."

"Certain figures and images taken from their sacred groves they carry into battle, but their greatest incitement to courage is that a division of horse or foot is not made up by chance, but is formed of families and clans; and their dear ones are close at hand so that the wailings of the women and the crying of the children can be heard during the battle. These are for each warrior the most sacred witnesses of his bravery."

These half-wild warriors had other virtues than courage. They loved their families and respected their women.

German Virtues

They loved liberty and held public meetings where all freemen helped to decide tribal business. Their kings and generals they chose by vote, and these kings did not have unlimited power; in all important matters the people were consulted. Such were the Germans who were now facing the empire, a very different sort of people from the Romans, with much to learn from them, and something to teach.

The Conquests of the Goths

Before 400 A.D. something happened to set all these tribes in motion. The stir began on their far eastern border in Asia among the German Goths. A Roman

writer and soldier of that time says: "A report spread far and wide through the nations of the Goths that a race of men, hitherto unknown, had suddenly descended like a whirlwind from the lofty mountains . . . and were ravaging and destroying everything that came in their way." **The Huns Set the Germans in Motion**

He describes the ugly, scarred faces of these Huns and their strong, short-legged bodies. "They live," he says, "on roots or the half-raw flesh of animals. . . . They never shelter themselves under roofed houses, . . . but they wander about, roaming over the mountains and the woods. . . . There is not a person in the whole nation who cannot remain on his horse day and night. . . . None of them plow, or even touch a plow handle, for they have no settled abode, but are homeless and lawless, perpetually wandering with their wagons, which they make their homes. . . . This race went on slaughtering all the nations in their neighborhood."

The Goths, brave and warlike though they were, fled before this yet fiercer people and came to the Danube River, to the northwest of Constantinople, which since the time of Constantine had been the capital of the Roman empire. They looked into the protected land of the empire and thought that surely there was safety. One group of them sent messengers to the emperor at Constantinople and "humbly entreated," says the old historian, "to be received by him as his subjects. They promised to live quietly and to furnish troops." The emperor consented, and the Goths "crossed the stream day and night, without ceasing." **376 A.D.**

But the Romans and the Goths could not live peaceably together for very long. The Romans treated their new subjects cruelly and dishonestly, and soon the Goths rose. In the great battle of Adrianople **378 A.D.**

they found that they could defeat the Roman armies.

Alaric is Chosen King of the Goths

A few years after that they revolted from the empire and decided to have a king of their own. They chose a brave young warrior, Alaric, and raised him on their shields in German fashion.

They had made a good choice. He was a man of intelligence and power and of ambitious dreams. He saw the whole empire open before him, rich in spoil and adventure. He gave the word, and a great host of his countrymen began to move, perhaps 300,000 people. A long line of clumsy wagons with thick, wooden wheels started out from Constantinople. In these rode the women and children and the feeble old men. In these were packed, also, a few necessary things — tools, pots and kettles, extra arrows, swords, and battle axes. The full fighting force of the nation rode on horseback.

Such a great number of people needed huge quantities of food. They got it from the fields, the full granaries, the herds, that they passed. Or, better yet, they took flour ready ground and bread ready baked, wine ready pressed and meat ready killed, from the houses and the shops of the villages. When they tired of journeying, they quartered themselves in a town, sleeping in the citizens' beds; helping themselves to food, rich clothes, treasures, whatever they would. Meantime, the citizens fled, except those whom the Goths captured as slaves to serve them here in their borrowed houses.

When the tribes started on again after a few days, the wagons were fuller than before. There were little bags of money, perhaps, tools, weapons, provisions, a silver vase that might upon need be melted into coin. A Gothic woman here and there was adorned with a Roman necklace or was wrapped in a soft Roman shawl. To the wagon ends were chained a few slaves, men and women from the

plundered village. Little of value remained in the town. Indeed, perhaps it was left blazing behind the troops.

In such manner the Goths marched westward and southward from Constantinople. There was no army to meet them at the famous old pass of Thermopylæ,[1] and they went on into Greece. They camped in Athens, they burned the rebuilt Corinth[2] and Argos and Sparta, that old lion, feeble now. Through Greece they went, always burning towns, tearing down ancient temples, stripping harvest fields. Their wagons grew heavier and richer as Greece grew poorer; for they filled them continually with the treasures of plundered cities.

395 A.D. Goths Plunder Greece

After several years they entered Italy and went through the land, living, as before, by plunder. Three times they besieged Rome itself. Once the starving and frightened Romans bought peace with "the payment of 5000 pounds of gold, of 30,000 pounds of silver, of 4000 robes of silk, of 3000 pieces of fine scarlet cloth, and of 3000 pounds' weight of pepper." Though she was not now the capital, yet Rome had money and treasures, it appears. Finally, the Gothic army entered her gates, however, and plundered the city. A foreign army in the streets of Rome! Such a thing had not happened in 800 years, not since the Gauls had done the like.

410 A.D.

Alaric, however, had no mind to remain in Rome. He had his eyes fixed on a richer place, grain-growing Africa. So he led his tribes south to take ship, but before they left the shores of Italy, he died. The new king, Adolf, had a different dream from Alaric's. He had once hated the very name of Rome, he said, and had hoped to erase it from the world and to write "Gothia" over the old Roman

Goths Take France and Spain

[1] See pages 57 and 98.

[2] See page 98.

empire. But as he had watched the Goths on their journeys through civilized lands, he had seen that they were lawless, uncontrolled. He had learned to respect the quiet and the culture that he had beheld in Italy. Instead of becoming Rome's destroyer, he had decided to become her helper. When he was king, therefore, he allowed the Roman emperor to keep his office and asked him to accept the Gothic army as Roman troops and their king as a Roman friend and confederate. You may be sure that his request was granted by the frightened and powerless Romans.

So the Goths, as defenders of the empire, marched northward out of Italy and crossed the Alps into lower Gaul and northern Spain. These, remember, were civilized lands, as Roman as Italy. In this rich and peaceful country the Goths settled. They were not welcome, of course. They were rude barbarians, without learning and without good manners. Gallic gentlemen scorned them. Besides, Gallic farms and Gallic purses had to support them. The Goths even pushed themselves into gentlemen's houses, ate ravenously at their tables beside the masters, and slept in the guest rooms. Yet courage and strength were on the side of the Goths, and they stayed and grew strong. After a few years one of their kings had a realm stretching over most of what is now France and Spain.

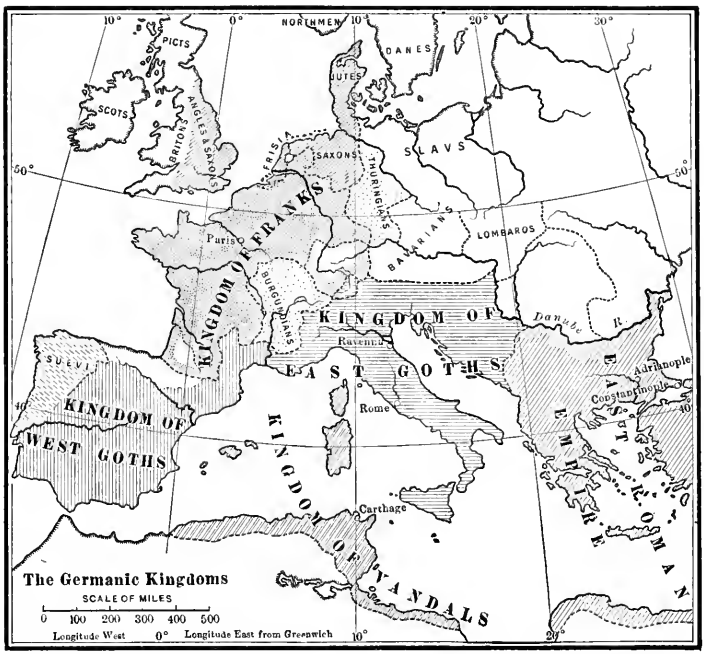
415 A.D.

The Franks

Now, these Goths were not the only German people set in motion by the Huns. At the time when Alaric was overrunning Greece and Italy, other German tribes were invading nearly all of western Europe. One of the most important of these peoples, one which put the deepest mark on Europe, one which founded two of

her greatest nations — France and Germany — was the Franks.

About the time of Alaric they were on the northern shore of what is now Germany, at the mouth of the Rhine River. But they were growing stronger, and they soon



Showing the remnant of the Roman empire and the lands held by the various barbarian tribes toward the end of the fifth century

began to spread westward and southward into Gaul. They were blessed with great success in battle and with a strong and wily king, Clovis. They conquered certain German tribes to the west of them. To the east, in northern Gaul, they conquered a remnant of the Roman empire.

CLOVIS

A statue above his grave. As in all tombs of the Middle Ages, the figure is lying down, with head on pillow and cushion at feet

But Clovis was not satisfied with this. He decided that he would have all of fertile Gaul. So he took an army southward against the kingdom that his German kindred, the Goths, had founded, beat them in battle, and drove them down into Spain. In a few years he had conquered a great country — practically all of modern France and Belgium and Holland and perhaps half of modern Germany.

The Franks Become Christian

The Franks of his time were still heathen, worshiping Thor and Woden; but Christianity was in the very air of this old Romanized country. The conquerors of Gaul were settled among Christian people and Christian churches, and Clovis soon married a Christian princess. It was not long, therefore, until the Franks, also, adopted the new faith. The way in which it happened according to the old story is interesting.

Clovis was at war with

certain neighbors, and the battle was going against him. No human help seemed able to save him. Then he thought of the God to whom his Christian wife prayed, and he cried out: "O Jesus Christ, . . . I humbly beseech thy succor! I have called on my gods, and they are far from my help. If Thou wilt deliver me from mine enemies, I will believe in Thee and be baptized in Thy name." Immediately the enemy began to lose, and the battle ended in a glorious victory for Clovis. Soon afterward he was baptized as he had promised, along with three thousand of his warriors. It was not many years before all the people had followed their king's example. A hundred years later the Franks had even forgotten the names of their earlier gods.

496 A.D.

Charlemagne's Empire

So this Christian people, the Franks, settled in the broad lands that Clovis had conquered. Kings were crowned and died, descendants of Clovis, most of them poor, weak creatures. But they had officers ("mayors of the palace," they were called), strong and wise men, who did their work for them. So the Franks prospered and grew stronger, until there came to be their king one of the greatest men of the world, Charlemagne, or Charles the Great. He was a brave warrior and a wise general, a descendant of one of the "mayors of the palace." By his wars he doubled the size of his kingdom. He pushed his eastern border to the Danube, conquering fierce heathen tribes that dwelt in that region.

Wars of Charlemagne

771 A.D.

At the north he carried on a terrible war for thirty years with the Saxons, brave German kindred of the Franks themselves. Only after cruel slaughter did Saxony lie quiet under Charlemagne's

772–803 A.D.

hand. He won the northern part of Italy, also, where a German tribe called Lombards had been settled for 200 years. Charlemagne defeated them, placed their iron crown on his own head, and was declared their king.

POPE CROWNING CHARLEMAGNE

A little decoration on a manuscript seven hundred years old

Another Empire Formed

All these conquests gave the Franks an empire larger than any other that had existed for four hundred years, since the Roman empire had begun to fall to pieces. They made Charlemagne the greatest ruler in Europe. People thought of his kingdom as a second Roman empire and of him as a new emperor.

It seemed proper for the greatest king in Europe to bear the highest title possible to a ruler. So when Charlemagne visited Rome, the head of the Christian church, the pope, "set a crown upon his head, while all the Roman populace cried aloud, 'Long life and victory to the mighty Charles, the great emperor of the Romans, crowned of God.' After [that] . . ." the chronicler goes on, "he was called emperor and Augustus." He was famous through all the world of that time. Ambassadors came to his court from far-off Arabia and strange Africa. They brought him gifts, too, curious things from their lands — perfumes, spices, monkeys, and even an elephant, the only one that western Europe had seen since Hannibal's time.[1]

[1] See pages 92–95.

Charlemagne's wars were important, not because they made Frankland larger, but for other reasons. For one thing, Charlemagne Christianized all German lands as he conquered them. He built churches in them and sent out priests to preach and to baptize. When he was trying to make Christians of the newly conquered Saxons he made some laws that seem cruel and unchristian to us, but they show, at least, how much in earnest he was, and how stubborn the Saxons were. One law read somewhat like this: "If any Saxon shall try to hide himself unbaptized and shall scorn to come to baptism and shall wish to remain pagan, let him be punished by death."

How Charlemagne Ruled

Charlemagne made laws, also, to protect and support the churches that he built and the missionaries that he sent out. "We command that all shall give a tenth of their property and their labor to the churches and the priests. . . . On the Lord's day all shall go to church to hear the word of God. . . . If any one shall enter a church by violence and carry off anything in it by force or theft or shall burn the church itself, let him be punished by death." Under these hard laws and the gentler teaching of the missionaries, Saxony was soon converted and thoroughly Germanized.

Charlemagne carefully planned how his great empire should be ruled. He kept a strong army, and it was the duty of every freeman who owned any property to do his share in fighting or in helping to furnish arms and food for a substitute. The neighbors to the east were still dangerous, barbarous tribes. Here Charlemagne built forts and put strong men in command of the land and the people. These counts were responsible for protecting the land from the barbarians and for collecting troops and bringing them to the king upon need.

He wrote to them at assembly time much as follows: "We have decided to hold our general assembly this year at the place called Stassfurt. Come with your men to this place prepared to go in any direction whither our summons shall direct. Each horseman shall have a breastplate, shield, lance, sword, dagger, bow and quiver with arrows. In your carts shall be axes, planes, augers, boards, spades, iron shovels, and other tools which are necessary in an army. In the carts shall be, also, supplies of food for three months and arms and clothing for half a year. And we command that you proceed peaceably through our realm. You shall take nothing except fodder, food, and water."

The Frankish Assemblies

These assemblies were held twice a year, first in one city of the great empire, then in another. They were not only for the purpose of collecting an army. Any freeman had the right to go. There were rich nobles and poor farmers there, learned bishops and ignorant workmen. Officers of the king, who had been going about inspecting the country and seeing that the counts did their duty, here reported to Charlemagne. If any count had acted ill, Charlemagne punished him as he thought fit. Moreover, any man, high or low, who thought he had been unjustly treated by his count made complaint here in the assembly and got redress. Here Charlemagne announced, too, any new laws that he had planned.

Education

One of the best things that this great ruler did for his people was to educate them. In his early years only priests and a few other men in Germany could read and speak Latin, and even fewer could write. Books were rare, and there were no schools. Most people were ignorant of history and geography and everything that books can teach us. Charlemagne him-

self could not read until he was a grown man, and he never learned to write, though he kept tablets under his pillow at night and often drew them out and practiced his letters.

But Charlemagne loved learning and hated ignorance. He complained that even from monasteries, where most education was, he often received letters which were full of mistakes and uncouth expressions. Now, he thought that "those who desire to please God by living rightly should not neglect to please him also by speaking correctly." So he set about instructing his people. He brought church singers from Italy, the home of culture. He sent for Italian artists to decorate his churches and palaces. He even brought up statues and carved columns from Italian cities to beautify his new buildings.

He had copies of great

CHARLEMAGNE

The picture was made much later than his time. He carries the globe, as the Roman emperors had done to show that they ruled the world. He wears the Roman eagle on his shoulder. (Many modern nations have adopted the same emblem.) The fleur-de-lis reminds us that modern France as well as Germany was a part of his kingdom

books made, and so collected a library — a rare thing in Frankland. He invited scholars from other lands to come and live at his palace and to teach there. Not only boys studied at that palace school, but nobles of the court, and the most eager student of all was the king himself. But one school was not enough. Charlemagne wrote frequently to the monasteries, saying, "Let schools be established in which boys may learn to read." He went about among these schools and examined the pupils. At one time he praised some boys who studied well, saying: "My children, you have found much favor with me. . . . Study to be perfect, and I will give you bishoprics and splendid monasteries, and you shall always be honorable in my eyes."

For hundreds of years people looked back to Charlemagne with affection and told marvelous tales of his courage and his wisdom. Indeed, he was a man to love and admire. His friend, Einhard, says: "His body was large and strong, his stature tall. . . . His eyes were very large and piercing. His nose was rather larger than is usual, he had beautiful white hair, and his expression was brisk and cheerful, so that whether sitting or standing, his appearance was dignified and impressive."

The Man Charlemagne

He must have made a noble picture as he sat on his throne, with his high boots, his long Frankish tunic and blue cloak of silk, embroidered with gold and clasped with gold buckles, with a jeweled crown on his head and at his side a sword with a jeweled hilt. Those were indeed worthy ornaments for the wise Charlemagne, with his quick eyes flashing over the crowd of courtiers and his keen mind listening, learning, planning sound laws or great battles or new schools, — the greatest king in Christendom.

The Vikings

During the last years of Charlemagne enemies appeared on his coasts that promised trouble for his descendants. These were the Northmen, from the countries which we now call Norway, Sweden, and Denmark. They, like the Franks and Goths and Saxons, were German.[1] They had not moved with the other Germans, however. When Alaric and the Goths were besieging Rome,[2] these Northmen had probably been in their far northern homes for hundreds of years. There they had developed a brave, hardy kind of life. They loved danger, as the Greeks had loved beauty. They were at home on their ships, as the Huns were on their horses. They could swim like fish and fight like tigers.

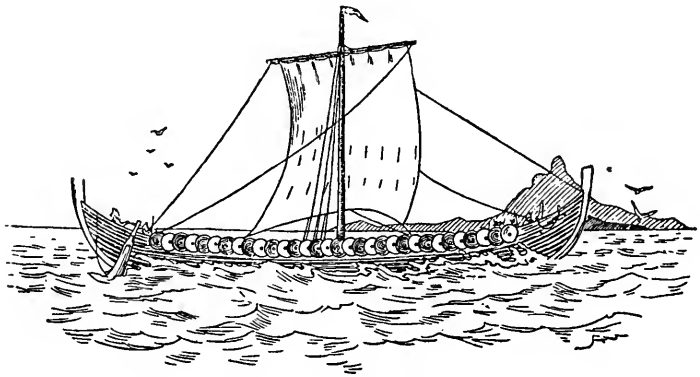
They had boats much like those of the early Greeks — long and narrow, with forty or fifty oars, a single mast, and a square sail. The sail was for fair weather, the oars for storm; the sail for leisure, and the oars for speed. A boat was warship, pirate ship, trading vessel all in one. The men were at the same time pirates, peaceable merchants, and useful explorers. In the boat were provisions for a few days: at the men's sides hung swords that could get them more at the first landing. Around the ship's sides glittered forty or fifty shields, hanging ready for use. Behind each rowed its warrior owner. As a voyage ended, and the ship neared land, out leaped the agile oarsmen, dragged the shallow boat upon shore, snatched down shield and battle-ax, and stood ready for fight.

An old Norse story tells of one Viking hero who "from his youth up loathed the fire boiler and sitting indoors, the warm bower, and the bolster full of down." The hard

[1] See page 141.

[2] See page 147.

northern winter held these men in their homes. Scores of big-voiced warriors sat in the wide feast halls and shouted applause, as the bards sang of old battle glory. But when spring came, and the salt breeze blew inland, the wild blood began to dance in their veins, and the smoke of the hearth fire was hateful in their nostrils. Then they longed to go a-Viking, as we long in the spring to go tramping and camping, gypsy-fashion. Going



VIKING SHIP

A modern drawing from an old ship found buried in a marsh. Notice the oars instead of rudder, and the shields along the gunwale

a-Viking meant making a pirate voyage, landing here and there to swing swords, to gather treasure, and to leave smoking houses behind. It meant fighting joyously wherever man or ship barred the way.

There were scores of petty kings in these Scandinavian countries. Every man of any wealth and strength haughtily thought himself the descendant of the god Woden and the equal of any man. About 800 A.D. three strong kings — one in Norway, one in Sweden, and one in Denmark — each in his own country, conquered all the lesser kings, and made themselves supreme.

Their haughty foes scorned to remain and be the underlings of any man, so they sought their Mother Sea and went wherever she led. They traveled on the long rivers of Russia down to the Black Sea. The emperor at Constantinople[1] had Northmen soldiers for his guard. Coins of far-off Arabia have been found buried in the soil of Norway, brought, perhaps, those thousands of miles by some Viking adventurer. On the floor of a temple in Athens is scratched a drawing of the hammer of Thor, the Norse god of war, and on the coast not far from Piræus is an old Greek statue of a lion carved over with Norse letters that tell the story of a Viking raid.

Viking Travel

The Northmen fell like locusts upon all the shores round about their homes, and whatever land they touched suffered bloodshed and burning and thieving. They settled by the thousands in England and Scotland and Ireland. They discovered Iceland and Greenland and peopled them. In the year 1000 they even touched the shores of North America. They followed the coast of Europe around to Spain and sacked Seville, far inland on a river. They rowed up the streams of Frankland and plundered cities, burned bridges, and laid the country waste.

Viking Raids

Charlemagne had held them in check while he lived. An old Frankish historian says: "He had ships built on all the rivers of Gaul and Germany which flow into the northern ocean, and . . . he erected solid structures at the entrances of all the harbors and navigable mouths of rivers and thus blocked the route of the enemy."

But when Charlemagne's strong hand was gone, no armies or boats or fortified bridges could check the Northmen. The same historian says of a later year: "A fleet of two hundred ships, coming from the country of the

[1] See page 145.

Northmen, landed in Frisia [now Holland] and ravaged all the islands adjacent to this shore." This army went inland and won three battles against the Frisians. The Danish conquerors imposed a tribute of a hundred pounds of silver upon the people.

Indeed, there was not a seacoast of Europe that these pirates did not ravage. They were so dreaded that a special prayer was sung in the churches, "From the fury of the Northmen, O Lord, deliver us!"

Centuries earlier the German tribes had moved into the Roman empire and had begun tearing it to pieces until it was quite gone from western Europe. The Goths had torn off Spain;[1] the Lombards had taken northern Italy; the Franks had taken Gaul and Germany[2] and by new conquests had built them into a great empire. And now came these other German barbarians, the Vikings, and helped to tear that Frankish empire to pieces.

---

1. Compare our Indians with the early Germans. **2.** Write a letter such as a Roman trader might have written when traveling among the Germans. (For more information than the text gives, the teacher may select parts of Tacitus, *Germania*, Everyman edition, — e.g. Bks. iii, iv, vi, viii, xv.) **3.** What things did Charlemagne do that prove him a great man? **4.** Tell the story of a Viking raid as some skald, or singer, might have told it. **5.** Model a Viking ship in clay or make it in wood.

[1] See page 148. [2] See page 150.

CHAPTER VIII

HOW GERMANY AND FRANCE BEGAN

Charlemagne's Empire Divided

THE later rulers of Frankland, the sons and grandsons of Charlemagne, were not such men as their great ancestor had been. They did not reverence the wide empire that he had built up. They saw in it only their separate shares of land and wealth and power. Instead of working to keep it together, they fought to cut it up into small kingdoms for themselves. A father often divided it among his sons, and the sons fought over the parts. The Norsemen were battering at the empire on every coast. Kinsfolk of the Huns [1] moved westward, and this fierce enemy attacked Frankland on the southeast. And still other barbarous races were pushing on her eastern border. Under all these enemies and under the weakness of the rulers, the empire fell to pieces.

HOLY ROMAN EMPEROR

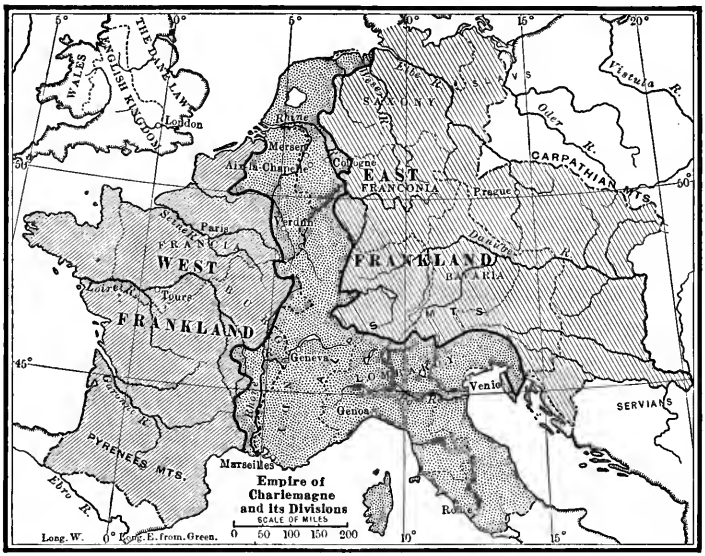
He sits on a carved chair. In his hand is the round world marked "Asia, Europe, Africa" to show that he is ruler of the whole earth

Thirty years after Charlemagne's death there was a king of East Frankland, or Germany, a king of West

[1] See page 145.

Frankland, or France, and an emperor who held Italy and a strip between the west and east countries. His fine title of emperor amounted to nothing. There really was no empire. Two new countries were growing up,—France and Germany. They had always been rather different from each other. East Frankland was almost purely Frankish, that is, German. But West Frankland was old Roman Gaul.[1]

East and West Frankland



Showing the three sections into which the empire of Charlemagne was divided. Later East and West Frankland were extended so that their boundaries touched, as shown by the broken line

The Gallic people there had taught their soft Latin and their gentle customs to their Frankish conquerors. Now that the empire was broken up and each country had its own king, they went on growing, each in its own way. But in both East and West descendants of Charlemagne

[1] See page 118.

still wore the crown, and good-for-nothing rulers they usually were.

Germany

So in East Frankland the people had little protection from the Vikings and from the Huns and other savage peoples that were settling on the eastern border. Every man had to take care of himself by hook or crook. Good fighters were better off than other men in those days of constant warfare, because they could better protect themselves. So they rose to power. Weaker men, or men of peace, asked for the strong warrior's help in time of war and exchanged for that help money, grain, wine, a piece of land, or even their own labor in the stronger man's fields or service in his army when he needed soldiers.

The Beginning of Germany

Such a man built a strong castle with a great surrounding wall to keep out his enemies. It was really a fort. Other men built their huts near to it and in war time took refuge in it with their families and helped to beat off the enemy. By such means the lords in all the countries of western Europe grew richer in lands and in men. Some of them came to own not one castle, but many, and lands as wide as one of our New England states, with forests and farming land and wide rivers and busy towns. Under a great duke were perhaps twenty or thirty other lords only a little less rich and powerful.

Nobles

Charlemagne had not been willing to allow such great princes to exist in his kingdom. He had believed that so many powerful men were bad for the country. They were likely to be haughty and selfish and jealous of one another. They would perhaps manage their lands in such a way as to gain more wealth and power for themselves, regardless of the good of their people. They

would fight, one against another, in selfish quarrels, and the fields would be devastated and the people slaughtered. They would disobey the command of the king, if it pleased them, and would make laws of their own in their own lands. They might even throw off all rule of the king, tear off their lands from their country, and set up new, smaller kingdoms of their own.

Perhaps Charlemagne's descendants saw these dangers as clearly as he had done, but they had not the wisdom and the strength to prevent the growth of these great dukes. So before a hundred years had gone, East Frankland was divided into five or six great duchies, — among them Saxony, which Charlemagne had conquered with so many hard years of fighting[1]; Franconia, the oldest of Frankish lands; Bavaria, whose troublesome master called himself "duke by the grace of God," and not by the consent of the king; Lorraine, on the border between the east and west country.

The kings of Germany had other troubles besides those with their ambitious dukes. You must remember that

German Kings as Roman Emperors

Charlemagne was crowned at Rome "where the Cæsars and the emperors were always used to sit," and he was called "the great emperor of the Romans, crowned of God."[2] It was a magnificent title, and his descendants and the other kings of Germany after them were eager to wear it. That crown could be given only at Rome and only by the pope's hands.

The pope had been at first only bishop of Rome, in charge of the religious affairs of its few score churches. Now, however, he was much more than that. Wise, strong men had been Roman bishops; and priests and rulers had formed the habit of asking their advice in

[1] See page 151. [2] See page 152.

many matters. The church had come, also, to own land in Italy, as great dukes or kings owned land, and the Roman bishop ruled these lands as dukes ruled theirs, or gave them to nobles to hold as kings gave land to their nobles. So the pope came to have, not only heavenly power, but earthly power also. He called himself "Christ's vicar," that is, one to whom Christ had given the power to do part of His work for Him. Some people thought that this meant only looking after the souls of men, appointing priests and officers of the church, planning and attending to church affairs. Other people thought that it meant much more than that. It seemed to them that religion and the church and the pope ought to control all the actions of all men. They thought that God had given the pope power to appoint and to command princes and kings and the emperor, that the pope was the rightful umpire of all troubles and the decider of all questions.

Pope's Power

THE POPE ON HIS THRONE

A great English earl on a pilgrimage kneels before him. Notice the pope's triple crown, a symbol which he still wears. At the pope's right stands a cardinal, known by his hat. Behind the earl is a bishop, known by his staff

A great bishop of that time once said: "The church triumphant stands next to God, and the power of this church next to divine power, then comes the power of the

clergy and the priesthood, whereas [earthly] power comes last and is placed subject to that of the clergy and the priesthood." And one of the popes, in speaking before a meeting of cardinals and bishops, said: "Holy Fathers and Lords! let the whole world now know and understand that as you can bind and loose in heaven, you can also upon earth give and take away from each according to his merits, empires, kingdoms, principalities, duchies, marquisates, counties, and all possessions. . . . If you judge the angels, who are the masters of the proudest princes, what may you not do with the princes, their slaves!"

Indeed, to get this pope's forgiveness a very proud emperor once climbed barefoot up the hill to the pope's castle and threw himself weeping on the floor at the pope's feet. And every newly chosen emperor journeyed hundreds of miles to Rome, knelt before the pope, kissed his feet, and received from him as a gift the sword, the lance, the golden apple, the scepter, and the emperor's crown.

Emperors' Struggle with the Popes

Yet the emperors claimed to be the equals of the popes in earthly matters. They thought of themselves as the descendants of the Roman emperors of old time, who had possessed the whole civilized world, and who had been worshiped as gods. Therefore, they believed that no other prince could hold land except as a gift from them. They thought, moreover, that special power to rule had been given them by God. Many other people believed the same things. An old writer calls a certain emperor "the greatest of earthly princes, the wonder of the world, and the regulator of its proceedings." This left no room for an equal of the emperor.

Trouble would necessarily come out of such a situation. Sometimes the pope for one reason or another was

not willing to crown a German king emperor. Generally the people of Italy sided with the pope; then there was war. Oftentimes some of the German nobles took the pope's part and rebelled against the king. And because

THE GREATNESS OF THE EMPEROR

He is in his palace. The word behind him names him "Wisdom"

the pope was the head of the Christian church, there were religious troubles. Sometimes he would not allow any priest to perform services for the king. Sometimes he would order all the churches of Germany to be closed and so would leave the country feeling cut off from God.

His hope was that the people in their distress would force the king to obey the pope in order that the churches might again be opened.

The story of Frederick II shows how emperors had to struggle against their own Germans, against the Italian people, and against the pope. It shows, too, how Germany suffered and Italy suffered, because the German king wished to be, also, emperor of the "Holy Roman Empire." Frederick's father had been one of the most powerful of the emperors, but he had died when his son was a child. The German dukes were unwilling to elect a mere boy for their king; and the pope did not think it wise to make him emperor, for the child was king of Sicily, and the pope was afraid that Germany and Sicily would combine against him.

Frederick II, 1194–1250 A.D. His Fight to Become Emperor

So two of the great dukes, Philip and Otto, put themselves forward as candidates. Each of them called a meeting of the electors to choose a new king. But Philip's friends went to one meeting, and Otto's friends to another. Philip's friends elected Philip, and Otto's friends elected Otto. Then they tried to decide the matter by war. Sometimes Otto won the battles, and sometimes Philip. At one time the pope favored one man and at another time the other, and nobles often changed sides. So Germany was a distressful place, full of war and treachery. At last Philip died, and Otto was emperor, and safe, he thought. But before long the pope became displeased with him and looked about for a new man.

Meantime the little Frederick had been growing into a clever, learned, mild-mannered prince down in Sicily. Perhaps the pope now thought that Frederick was sure to be his friend, and when the princes of Germany re-

membered the greatness of his father and his grandfather, they were easily persuaded that he was the right one for their king. So in spite of the fact that Otto was still wearing the crown, they listened to the pope and chose Frederick for German king and future Roman emperor. 1212 A.D.

But Otto would not tamely step aside. He gathered together his few remaining friends in Germany and got money and men from some foreign dukes and from the king of England. The war, however, went against him, his friends deserted him, and Frederick was left in power.

It was this Frederick whom the men of his own time called "the wonder of the world." He could speak half the languages of Europe — Italian, French, German, Greek, Latin, besides Arabic. He was poet, singer, warrior, physician, lawyer. He had read, so it seemed to people of his time, all the books of the world and possessed all the knowledge of men. His court in Sicily was as brilliant as that of an Eastern prince, with black slaves blowing on silver trumpets, with a "throne of gold decked with pearls and precious stones," and a menagerie of strange beasts. He had an elephant, lions, panthers, camels, and tame leopards that were trained to hunt on horseback. He was a great and rich merchant, too. Matthew Paris, the English writer who lived at this time, says, "In [one] year twelve camels were sent to [Frederick] from the East, laden with gold and silver; for he was a partner in mercantile traffic and a great friend of all the Sultans of the East, so that traders traveled both by land and sea, even to the Indies [that is, to India], on his account." **Frederick, the Man**

It seemed as though this gifted man, this learned scholar, this elegant knight, this powerful king, might

make the dream of his ancestors come true; as though at last one man might, indeed, bind all of Europe into one huge empire. And yet this great man's life was a failure. For thirty-four years he ruled as emperor, and nearly all that time was one continual struggle against enemies.

A Caravan in the East

It was not long before Frederick, emperor of the world, did things displeasing to the pope, also ruler of the world.

Frederick is Excommunicated

At last the pope rose in wrath before a meeting of cardinals and bishops; and after reminding them of Frederick's wrong-doing, he solemnly pronounced sentence against him in words much like these: "We therefore declare this prince to be bound because of his sins, and cast off by the Lord and deprived of all honor and dignity. All who have taken the oath of faithfulness to him, we free from such oath. We forbid any one hereafter to obey him or to look upon him as emperor or king." Then the pope and all the churchmen there present took candles and lighted them and afterward extinguished them as a sign that the light of religion was removed from Frederick and that he must thereafter dwell alone in darkness of soul. This action of the pope was called "excommunication."

It was a sad thing for ordinary people, when the two

rulers of the world were enemies. Many a one wept in that assembly where the pope spoke. One man cried, "Remember that the pillars which uphold the world are two: the one the pope, the other the emperor." What would happen if one of them should fall? How could men know to which to cling? Some went to one side, and some to the other.

On the pope's side were the Lombard[1] cities of northern Italy. These cities were rich and proud and strong. They traced their history back to old Roman times. They hated tyrants and kings and big states. Each town liked to choose its own ruler, make its own laws, coin its own money, carry on its own wars in its own way. Every one looked with dislike and fear upon a strong emperor, a man who claimed Italian cities as mere little corners of a great empire for which he made the laws, coined the money, declared the wars, collected the taxes, appointed the officers. So they banded together, with the pope to encourage and help them, raised their armies, and made ready for war.

Cities of Italy

A terrible war it was! There were cruel sieges of those fine old towns. Around one brave city Frederick's captain cut down orchards and burned fields and houses so that people had to live in caves, and many died of starvation. An Italian writer says that for all the years of that long war men could neither plow nor sow nor reap nor till vineyards nor gather the vintage nor dwell in villages. But close to the city walls men tilled the fields under guard of their own soldiers, who protected them at their work all day; for so it must needs be by reason of the ruffians and bandits and robbers. And evils were multiplied upon the earth, and the wild beasts increased

[1] See page 152.

beyond all measure. The wolves gathered together in mighty multitudes round the city moats, howling dismally, and they crept into the cities by night and devoured men and women and children who had come in from the villages and were sleeping under the porticoes or in wagons. There were many years of this Lombard war. A whole book could not tell all the brave and cruel things that were done on both sides and all the suffering and burning and destroying that came in its train.

As the years went on, the pope and the emperor grew more and more bitter against each other. They flooded Europe with letters accusing each other of a hundred wrong deeds. People began to whisper evil things of the emperor. Many thought him a wicked man and fell away from him. Twice there were plots to poison him. The princes of Germany, urged on by the pope, even chose a new king.

Frederick Fails

All this unkindness and misfortune soured Frederick's good nature, and he became harsh and bitter and scornful. When he heard that the pope had excommunicated him for the fourth time, "he burst into a violent rage," says Matthew Paris, "and darting a scornful look on those who sat around him, he thundered forth . . . 'Where are my cases which contain my portable treasures?' And on their being brought and unlocked before him by his order, he said, 'See if my crowns are lost, now.' Then finding one, he placed it on his head, and being thus crowned he stood up, and with threatening eyes and a dreadful voice . . . he said aloud, 'I have not yet lost my crown, nor will I be deprived of it . . . without a bloody struggle.'" Before that bloody struggle was ended, he died there in Italy with defeat about him.

1250 A.D.

For two hundred years the popes had striven against the emperors. They had encouraged the Lombard cities to rebel. They had tried to make the other kings of Europe enemies of the empire. They had stirred up the German people to rebellion. This failure of Frederick's was the end: the popes were victorious. The empire was in ruins. Italy was lost to it. Sicily the pope himself gave to a Frenchman. Germany was a camp of quarreling great dukes with no one strong enough to lead them.

Germany Breaks Up

It would have needed all Frederick's time to hold these princes under and to bind them into a nation. But he had spent very little time in Germany. He had been in Italy, in Sicily, in Jerusalem, and had left the rule of the Germans to his son or to some other assistant. And the nobles had kept up their old proud, quarrelsome habits. Indeed, Frederick himself had helped to increase their pride and their strength. He had bribed them in order to get their aid against Italy and the pope. He had allowed each duke to make his own laws, hold his own courts, coin his own money, make his own wars, almost as though he had been an independent king. After Frederick's time there grew up a ruler of Saxony, a ruler of Bavaria, a ruler of Prussia, Grand Duke this and Grand Duke that. Germany was again in pieces, and Italy, also, was breaking up into little city-states, — beautiful, brilliant, rich, proud, jealous. It was six hundred years, moreover, before either Germany or Italy became a united nation.

France

Let us go back to West Frankland at the time just following Charlemagne's death. You remember that this great man's descendants had no large idea of the duty of an emperor or of the mean-

814 A.D.

ing and value of a wide empire.[1] Therefore, they cut the empire up into three states. The rulers of West Frankland, like those of East Frankland, were weak men, unable to control their strong nobles, unable to keep out the Vikings who were attacking the coast.[2] And so in West Frankland, just as in East Frankland, great lords built castles and filled them with bold fighting men, sworn to serve them.[3] It mattered little to such men what weakling descendant of Charlemagne in some distant corner of the country wore a shadowy crown and called himself king. Yet a king there must be, for some reason. So the great nobles of West Frankland came together, deposed the useless descendant of Charlemagne, and chose one of themselves to wear the crown.

The Nobles

987 A.D.

That name of king, however, meant very little. There was many a duke and count who had more land, more wealth, more castles, more soldiers, than the king. These great lords made their own laws, fought their own wars, collected their own moneys, each in his own territory. They themselves felt like kings and were unwilling to bow to another.

The king of the Franks was also duke of a territory which his family had owned for many generations, the dukedom of France. Here the king (who was also duke) was reverenced and obeyed. But if he moved out of his own dukedom into the land of his neighbors, he had to do it at the head of an army. Rarely did a nobleman loyally open his gates and hospitably entertain his ruler. The royal army had to force open the gates and carry the king in. Nor did the neighboring counts and dukes often supply money for his expenses. He must get that from his own dukedom.

[1] See page 161. [2] See page 160. [3] See page 163.

But the nobles had chosen a clever family to wear the crown — the Capetians, people call them. Father and son through three hundred years, this family toiled to unite France and to make the French king a power. Their first move was to get more lands for themselves. For if a king of the Franks, besides being duke of France, became also a count of Vermandois and duke of Normandy, he got with that land faithful subjects who would be likely to obey his laws, serve him in battle, and supply him with money. The kings gained these lands in different ways. Sometimes they married their sons to the daughters of great counts and so brought the property into the family. Once a king even bought a dukedom. They occasionally fought for one and conquered it. Sometimes a duke died without any children to inherit his possessions. Then the king rightfully took them.

The Capetian Family

A King of the Franks on His Carved Chair

In all these ways the Capetians kept gathering in territory until they owned more than half of France. As the king's lands grew, his power grew. As his power grew, his laws spread over the country, and loyalty increased. The great nobles had to respect the king and obey him. Men began to turn their faces away from this and that castle and to look toward the king's city of Paris as the capital of the land. In

fact, the nation of France was made at last — pieced together out of old warring dukedoms and counties.

One of the kings who did much for this growing France was Louis IX. His grandfather, Philip, had built up a large kingdom. It was Louis' work to make that kingdom feel like a nation, to strengthen it with peace and prosperity, to teach its people to live according to law. This last thing was perhaps the hardest and the most necessary. In Paris, for example, things had come to a bad pass. "Because of the great injustice that was done and the great robberies . . . ," writes Joinville, an officer and friend of King Louis, "poor people did not dare to live in the king's land, but went and lived in other lordships. . . . The king, who was very diligent to inquire how the people were governed and protected, soon learned the truth of this matter. . . . And he abolished all the evil customs that were hurtful to the people, and he [found] men who would execute good and strict justice and not spare the rich any more than the poor," and he made them officers in the city.

Louis IX, 1226–1270 A.D.

After that "no thief nor murderer dared to remain in Paris, seeing that if he did he was soon hanged or killed. Neither [great name] nor gold nor silver could save him. So the king's land began to improve, and people came there to live for the good justice that was done there. Ofttimes it happened that the king would go, after mass, and seat himself in the wood of Vincennes and lean against an oak and make us sit round him. And all those who had any cause in hand came and spoke to him without hindrance of usher or of any other person. Then would the king ask out of his own mouth, 'Is there any who has a cause in hand?' And those who had a cause in hand stood up. Then would he say, 'Keep silence,

all, and you shall be heard in turn, one after the other.'"

But the king could not hear all cases, even in one city. He had lawyers and councilors about him. Some of these he sent to "hear pleadings at the gate [of Paris] which is now called 'The Gate of Requests,'" Joinville says. "And when he came back from church, he would send for us and sit at the foot of his bed, and make us all sit round him, and ask if there were any whose cases [we could not settle. And if we named any,] he would send for them and would settle the matters himself." Into the other parts of France, also, he sent judges to hear cases and other officers to carry out the laws. And he made strict rules somewhat after this style to govern these officers. "We, Louis, by the grace of God, King of France, ordain that our bailiffs, viscounts, provosts, mayors, and all others, whatsoever office they may hold, shall make oath that, so long as they hold the said office, they shall do justice to all, as well to the poor as to the rich and to strangers as to those who are native-born; and that they shall observe such uses and customs as are good and have been approved. And if they do aught contrary to their oaths and are convicted thereof, we order that they be punished in their goods or in their persons." In such ways did the king try to make honest officers and to give all the people of France fair treatment and the protection of law.

The King's Officers

Moreover he was a great peacemaker in that age when men liked to fight. He thought it a sad spectacle to see "two kingdoms gnaw each other at the prompting of the devil," and "pillage and slay each other." He tried to settle by peaceful agreement the quarrels between his hot-blooded nobles. And he was often called upon to act

King Louis' Standing in the World

as peacemaker between rulers; for he was respected and loved throughout Europe. He received foreign kings in his palace at Paris, and he sat in the most honorable seat among them. His advice was sought by the pope, the emperor of Germany, and the king of England. Matthew Paris, the English writer, calls King Louis "the king of all earthly kings on account of [his holiness] as also on account of his power and his eminence in chivalry."

St. Louis

This compliment, paid by a foreigner, shows what the French kings had accomplished in two hundred years. The king of France was no longer a mere crowned duke among many dukes as powerful as himself. Now when he moved through the country, farming people left their fields and lined the roads to gaze at him and to huzzah. Cities opened their gates and decked themselves in his honor. When he needed an army, the nobles loyally came riding to him at the head of their knights. When he sat down to table, great counts and dukes carved the meat and served the plate, and knights in tunics of silken cloth stood on guard. Once when he held court, so many men came flocking to serve him that "many said," so Joinville writes, "they had never, at any feast, seen together so many surcoats and other garments of cloth of gold and of silk; and it was said that no less than three thousand knights were there present."

King Louis was mild and gentle of soul, fair and delicate of body, and very lovable. His kindness and courtesy won him friends wherever he went. Moreover he was

very honorable in keeping his promises. He was entertaining, too, and liked pleasant talk with his friends. He said it was better than any book. He was very religious, going to mass every day, giving alms daily to the poor and washing their feet, building churches and monasteries, asking God's help and counsel upon all occasions.

Just before his death Louis called to him his son and advised him how to live. What he said then shows the kind of man he was; for he himself had lived according to the same rules he laid down for his son. "Fair son," he said, "keep thyself from doing aught that is displeasing to God. . . . If God send thee adversity, receive it in patience, . . . if He send thee prosperity, then thank Him humbly. . . . Let thy heart be full of pity toward those who are poor, miserable, and afflicted; comfort and help them to the utmost of thy power. Maintain the good customs of thy land and abolish the bad. . . . Do not burden [thy people] with taxes save when thou art in great need. . . . See that thou hast in thy company men . . . who are right worthy and loyal, and fly the company of the wicked. . . . Beware of undertaking war against any Christian prince without great deliberation. . . . If wars and quarrels arise among thy subjects, see that thou end them as soon as thou art able. . . . God give thee grace to do His will always, so that He be honored in thee and that thou and I may both, after this mortal life is ended, be with Him together and praise Him everlastingly. Amen."

1270 A.D. King Louis' Advice to His Son

For all his virtues the church declared the king a saint after his death, and many people in their prayers still ask St. Louis to intercede for them.

While Germany was growing more broken and dis-

united, France, under this good king, was well started on the path toward national unity and kingly strength. She continued in that way for hundreds of years, becoming a powerful, wealthy, cultured nation.

---

1. Which is better, a large country under one government or several small countries? **2.** What advice do you think some wise old man might have given Frederick II that would have kept Germany united? **3.** Make a play in which people come before King Louis with complaints, and he makes wise decisions. **4.** Would the study of Roman law be favorable or unfavorable to strong monarchies? (See pages 135–139.) **5.** Find out when the present kingdom of Italy began; the present German empire.

CHAPTER IX

HOW ENGLAND BEGAN

In ancient times, you remember, Britain had belonged to the Roman empire.[1] Roman governors had ruled it and Romanized it; Roman legions had held it. But as the empire had grown weak, she had needed all her legions nearer the center. When Alaric had stormed Rome,[2] the British legions had been called to fight on the continent, and Roman Britain had been left undefended. Immediately the barbarians to the north, the Picts whom Rome had not been able to conquer, had begun to make raids into Britain. 411 A.D.

The Angles and Saxons Take Britain

At that time, long before the days of Charlemagne, when Adolf and the Goths were settling in Spain and Gaul,[3] and the Franks were spreading west and south,[4] other German tribes, called Jutes and Angles and Saxons, lived across the narrow sea to the east of Britain. They were warriors and pirates. A Roman poet sang about them: "Foes are they fierce beyond other foes and cunning as they are fierce. The sea is their school of war, and the storm their friend. They are sea wolves that prey on the pillage of the world."

They loved danger and the fight. In an old Anglo-Saxon poem the hero, Beowulf, says, "Ever would I be in advance in the host, alone at the front, and so shall I,

[1] See page 120.
[2] See page 147.
[3] See page 148.
[4] See pages 149–150.

while life last, make fight, so long as the sword endureth, that oft early and late hath served me." In long ships of many oars and with a single sail, these lovers of war, of the sea, of plunder, sailed out, as the Vikings did in later days,[1] after riches and adventure.

A Saxon Warrior

An ornamented wooden shield with an iron boss. An iron helmet with a short nose guard. A tunic with long sleeves. Some kind of armor over this, perhaps of leather. Leg wrappings instead of hose

To these warrior peoples, according to an old tradition, the British king turned for help against his foes. There is an old book called the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle. It is a sort of diary of the early English people. Here are some jottings from it: A.D. 449. Hengist and Horsa, invited by the king of the Britons to his assistance, landed in Britain. The king directed them to fight against the Picts, and they did so and obtained the victory wheresoever they came. They then sent to the Angles at home and desired them to send more assistance. They described the worthlessness of the Britons and the richness of the land. Then came the men from three powers of Germany — the old Saxons, Angles, and Jutes. [They had decided to have this land for their own, you see.]

The Angles and Saxons Come into England

The Anglo-Saxon Victories

A.D. 455. This year Hengist and Horsa fought with

[1] See page 158.

the king of the Britons. Horsa was slain, but Hengist and his son Esc took the kingdom.

A.D. 473. This year Hengist and Esc fought with the British and took immense booty. And the British fled from the Angles like fire.

[The news of these successes went back to the Angles and Saxons at home and tempted others across the narrow sea.]

A.D. 477. This year came Ella to Britain with his three sons in three ships. There they slew many of the Britons and some in flight they drove into a wood.

A.D. 495. This year came two leaders into Britain, Cerdic and Cynric his son, with five ships. They fought with the British the same day.

A.D. 501. This year Porta and his two sons came into Britain with two ships.

So it goes. It is evident that hardly a year passed that a few ships, full of fighting Germans, did not land here and there on the British coast. Probably they were beaten sometimes, but their proud descendants when they wrote the Chronicle did not tell of their defeats. And certainly they won more often than they lost.

It is a strange, long, slow story, this German conquest of Britain. Probably the Britons did not realize that they were actually losing their country. In some little corner of the coast a few shiploads of the dreaded pirates landed, dragged their low ships upon the sand, pulled out their long, two-handed swords, and advanced upon the surprised farmers and villagers. The Britons, with wives and children to save, fled inland to friends and kinsfolk. The Germans took possession of the deserted houses and fields and sent back home for their families. All along the southern and eastern shores of Britain little settlements of this sort were being made year after year.

Yet, doubtless, the Britons felt fairly safe in their wide land.

But these Germans were eager, ambitious folk and were not content with little spots of ground. As more of them kept coming, they spread inland and continued to push the Britons slowly backward. There are many such entries as this in the Chronicle: "A.D. 571. This year Cuthulf fought with the Britons at Bedford and took four towns. . . . A.D. 577. This year Cuthwin and Ceawlin fought with the Britons and slew three kings . . . and took from them three cities. . . . A.D. 591. This year there was a great slaughter of Britons."

SAXON HORSEMEN

Evidently the horses are shod

So the Germans slowly enslaved the earlier people or drove them back and after about 400 years had all of modern England for their own. The Britons were mostly cooped up in Wales and Cornwall, where their descendants still live to-day. They had been rather thoroughly swept off their own land. British customs and Roman culture were gone from it. It was German now. Its new inhabitants had settled down for all time to make this new country of theirs "England."

This Anglo-Saxon land was not a peaceful place. It was a great battlefield for warlike chiefs. A leader who had brought over a few shiploads of warriors and had won a piece of coast felt himself the independent lord of it. His son after him enlarged the territory and called

himself king. Sometimes there were ten or twelve separate kingdoms in that small country. Then, again, one man, mighty in battle, would conquer two or three of his neighbors and unite them into a larger kingdom. Each part would keep its own ruler as under-king, but would pay tribute and obedience to the conqueror as overlord or head king. Slowly three great states formed themselves out of all these struggling groups, and at last Egbert, the king of one of them and a pupil of Charlemagne's,[1] made himself overlord of them all.

King Egbert, 829 A.D.

These early Anglo-Saxons had one custom that is of very great importance to us. All the freemen of every village or township met, whenever it was necessary, to talk over village business. They were simple farmers, come between plowings and harvestings. They met in the open air on a knoll or under a great tree sacred to the god Woden. A priest opened the meeting, and the head man took charge. These farmers brought up questions that needed settling. A newcomer was admitted into the village, officers were chosen, a farmer who had cut hay on some other man's field was punished, land was divided out among the villagers. Every man at that meeting had a right to say what he thought and to vote as he would upon these matters.

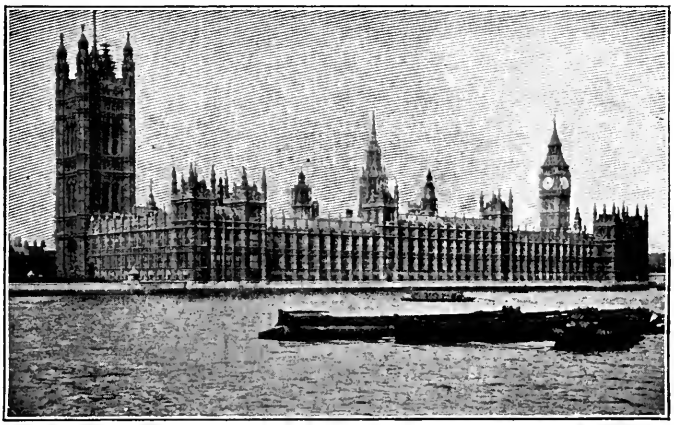
Anglo-Saxon Moots

But this assembly, or town-moot, as it was called, handled only the small business of the village. Once a month there was a hundred-moot. The hundred was a collection of several villages that were neighbors. To this assembly all the villages sent their head men and four representatives each. There came, besides, the chiefs of the hundred and their warriors. This moot,

[1] See page 156.

also, met out of doors, on a hilltop or under the trees. The men discussed questions that had to do, not with the village, but with all of the hundred.

As the hundred bound together several villages, so the folk or tribe bound together several hundreds. And



The House of Parliament in England To-day

as the hundred-moot discussed questions too large for the town-moot, so the folk-moot discussed matters that were of importance to all the hundreds. Here came together all the chiefs and warriors and also the head men and four representatives from the simple farmers of the village. This meeting, too, was out of doors, and was opened by the priest. Here great crimes were punished, war was declared or peace made, leaders chosen. This was an important meeting, and only the most important people did the talking. The common men listened and shouted when they were asked to vote and clashed their swords or spears against their shields. For this, like Charlemagne's assembly,[1] was a meeting of the army as

[1] See page 154.

well as of lawmakers, and often the members marched from discussion into fight.

When several tribes had been made into a kingdom, the king was accustomed to call together the chief men from all the folk-moots to give him advice. This was called the witenagemot, or meeting of the wise men.

England has been called "the mother of parliaments": these old Anglo-Saxon moots of rude farmers and fierce warriors were her first children. To-day the Parliament of England and the Congress of the United States, which meet in great buildings of stone to discuss the needs of the country and to make laws for its governing, are the descendants of that little outdoor assembly with shouted vote and clashing weapons.

The Reign of King Alfred

Egbert had conquered the English people in war, but he had not been able to unite them in feeling. They did not forget old memories. The men of each earlier kingdom clung together and longed for old times and their old kings. Egbert's grandson, Alfred, inherited the rule over these dissatisfied people. After a reign of thirty years he left the country united and the English proud of their land.

871–901 A.D.

One thing which helped to accomplish this great change was the lovable nature of Alfred himself. Asser, his friend and one of his bishops,[1] wrote of him, "He was wonderfully kind toward all men and very merry." He was gentle and humble, not haughty,

Alfred, the Man

[1] Long before Alfred's time Christian missionaries had come into England. Slowly, family by family, kingdom by kingdom, they had converted the country and had built churches and monasteries. Alfred was born a Christian and ruled a Christian land. (See pages 297–298.)

as some kings are. He was very religious, rising in the night to go alone to his chapel for prayer.

He loved the poor. "On their behalf, among all his duties," writes Bishop Asser, "he was wonderfully thoughtful day and night. . . . And in judgment he sought earnestly the good of his people both high and low." Indeed, his heart was full of love for all men, and they loved him in return. Many old English sayings call him "England's darling," "England's shepherd," "Good King Alfred." After his time "king" meant a different thing to Englishmen from what it had meant in the old days of ambition and unending war. It meant a strong, wise, loving man, who labored for the good of his whole people.

Alfred's Laws

Besides loving the memory of the man himself, for hundreds of years Englishmen looked to the "laws of King Alfred" as the safeguard of their liberty. Before his time few laws had been written down, but men had remembered what their fathers had done and called that the law. Alfred had these old traditions written, chose what he thought the best from the recorded laws of the earlier kings, and added a few new rules of his own making. In the preface to this body of law the modest king says: "I, then, Alfred, king, gathered these [laws] together and commanded many of those to be written which our forefathers held, those which seemed to me good; and many of those which seemed to me not good I rejected them, by the counsel of my 'witan.' . . . I durst not venture to set down in writing many of my own; for I could not know what would please those who should come after us."

Yet some of these laws, because of their kindness, sound as though he must have made them. "Judge thou very evenly; judge thou not one doom to the rich, another to the poor; nor one to thy friend, another to

thy foe, judge thou. . . . Vex thou not comers from afar and strangers. . . . Injure ye not the widows and step-children nor hurt them anywhere: for if ye do otherwise, they will cry unto me, and I will hear them, and I will then slay you with my sword; and I will so do that your wives shall be widows and your children shall be step-children."

Even in the laws of this gentle king, however, we find some things to remind us that, after all, he lived a thousand years ago and that men have grown a little wiser and kinder since then. For example, some men were slaves in that day, and even King Alfred did not think it wrong. In one of his laws he speaks of a father's selling his daughter as a slave, but only to say, "He ought not sell her away among a strange folk." And when we see even this kind man freely dealing out the death penalty and cruel punishments, we realize that he lived in a time of fierce warfare and bloodshed. "He who smiteth his father or his mother," he writes, "he shall perish by death . . . if any one thrust out another's eye, let him give his own for it; tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot, burning for burning, wound for wound, stripe for stripe."

Like Charlemagne, Alfred was a lover of knowledge. His mind was open to learn from any one having information. He listened greedily to the stories of sailors and travelers, that he might know something of foreign lands. He kept a note-book in his bosom and jotted down interesting things that he heard or saw or thought. He was, besides, an inventor, and he could draw designs and instruct goldsmiths how to work. He knew how to train dogs and falcons for the hunt. He loved the poems of his country, and many of them he learned by heart, and sang them to the lyre.

With much labor, after he was a grown man, he learned to read and write both the Anglo-Saxon language, which the common people spoke, and Latin, the language of books and learned men. He was a great lover of reading. "Day and night," says Asser, "whenever he had any leisure, he commanded men to read books before him, nor would he ever suffer himself to be without one of them." Many of these books that he loved were in Latin; for although the Romans had long been gone from Britain,[1] and the Roman empire had disappeared, yet people had so formed the habit of using Latin, the tongue of the world's rulers, that it continued to be the language of writers and of all learned men.

Alfred's Learning

But most of Alfred's people were uneducated, did not know Latin, and could not read those good books that he loved. So he translated several of them into the common speech. In one of them he says, "Long and much I [wished] to teach my people then these mixed sayings of sweet speech." In another he mourns because Englishmen have become so ignorant, and he hopes by translating good books to instruct his countrymen. He established schools, too, where he hoped that "all the free-born youth of the land might persevere in learning." And Asser says that it came to be true that many an old man of that day "would command his son to read Saxon books to him day and night whenever he had any leisure. And, sighing greatly from the bottom of his heart, he mourned because in his youth he had not devoted himself to such studies."

Another thing that helped to weld all the men of England into an English people was their war with the Danes, Vikings of the same sort as were attacking

[1] See page 181.

Charlemagne's empire.[1] These men were also much like the Angles and Saxons of earlier times and swarmed across the narrow sea as they had done. They landed from the same sort of boats and with the same kind of fierceness drove the inhabitants before them. In the same way they settled upon the land and began to spread out and push the English back.

The Danish Invasion

By Alfred's time these Danish raids were an old story. They had been going on for many years, and there had been continuous warfare. Towns lay burned and empty, farms lay neglected and grown to weeds, monasteries stood ruined and deserted. Alfred saw the need of peace. The nation must rest. Farms must be tended, and granaries filled. Children must be educated. Roads must be built. An army must be planned so that every man should do his share of his country's fighting and should yet have time to do his own work.

So the king made peace with the Danes and allowed them to settle in a great stretch of eastern England. He permitted their own king to rule them, and yet Alfred was their overlord. He helped to make their laws, he sent Christian priests among them, and in every way he treated them like his own Englishmen. It was not many years, therefore, until the Danes were as English as their neighbors. They spoke the same language, worshiped the same God, obeyed the same laws, loved the same country. They intermarried with Angles and Saxons, and many an Englishman to-day has the blood of Danish Vikings in his veins.

878 A.D.

Bishop Asser gives us an idea of what Alfred accomplished in his long reign. He writes: "And what shall I say of his many wars against the pagans [that is,

[1] See page 157.

the Danes] and of his battles and of the never-ending care of ruling his kingdom? What shall I say of the cities and towns which he restored and of the others which he built where before there had never been any? Or of the work in gold and silver, incomparably made under his direction? Or of the halls and royal chambers wonderfully made of stone and wood by his command? . . . As a master pilot strives to bring his ship, filled with many riches, to the safe haven of his native land, . . . so the king permitted himself neither to faint nor to waver, though he was set amid the rough waves and various storms of this present life."

What Alfred Accomplished

The Norman Conquest

For eighty years after Alfred's death the kingdom that he had made strong continued united. But then a weak king lost it to a new swarm of Danes. In 1066 yet another conqueror entered England. This was William the Norman, a descendant of one of those Viking Northmen who had long before plundered Frankland.

This ancestor, Rolf the Ganger (that is, "the goer"), had spent all his fearless life in fierce raids on the coasts of England and Frankland. He had burned and plundered, and by his courage had won the headship of his band. The Frenchmen, in spite of their bravery, feared him and at last bought peace for themselves by giving him a wide district on the Seine. Here he and his warriors settled down. They were baptized as Christians. They changed their names to French names. They married French wives. Their children spoke the French tongue, wore French clothes, followed French customs; and the

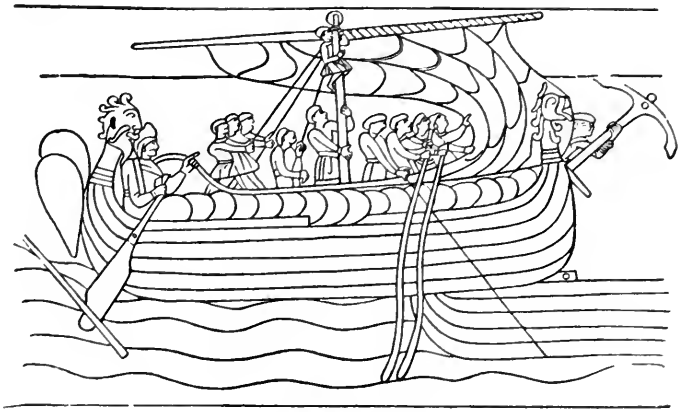
Normandy, a Great Viking Settlement

descendants of Rolf, the Viking, were polished French knights and rich dukes of Normandy, "Northmen's land."

William of Normandy Conquers England

The great-grandson of Rolf's grandson was a powerful man, Duke William. An old writer says of him, "So very stern was he and hot that no man durst do anything against his will."

This stern warrior got Normandy and her knights thoroughly under his control. He and his ancestors had



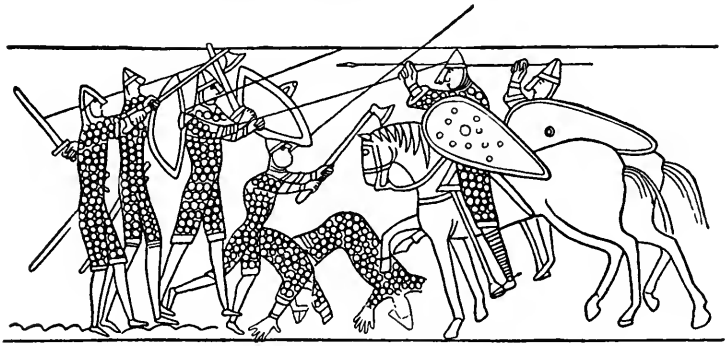
NORMAN SHIP

From an old piece of embroidery called the Bayeux tapestry. Perhaps King William's queen and her ladies made it. It is 200 feet long and has 48 scenes. The next five pictures, also, are from this tapestry

had many dealings with the kings of England. They had exchanged visits. English princes had even been educated at the Norman court. And the English king of Duke William's time was the son of a Norman princess. When William was a young man, this English king died, with no son to be king after him. Then William, his friend and distant cousin, decided that he would wear the English crown.

But Englishmen had the fine old German custom of

choosing their own king.[1] They would have none of William. They elected a man of their own blood, Saxon Harold, big and blonde, and handsome and brave. But in spite of Harold's courage and strength, and in spite of the fact that Englishmen "sacrificed their bodies and poured out their spirits for their country," yet Duke William and his horsemen and archers won against King Harold and his footmen and bowmen. Harold was killed in the first great fight, the battle of Hastings, and



SAXON FOOT-SOLDIERS AND NORMAN HORSEMEN

Notice the Saxon battle-axes. The armor is made of metal scales sewed on leather

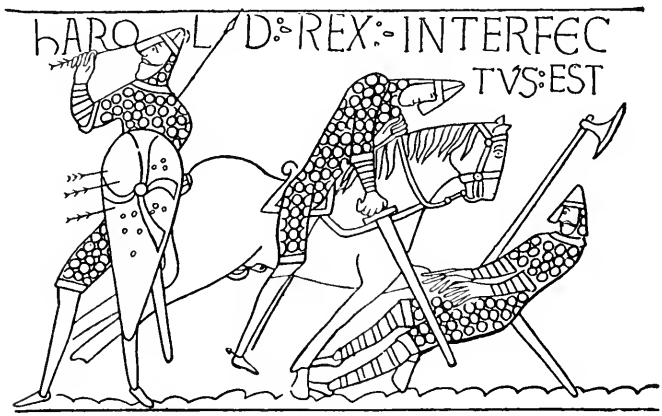
hundreds of dead Englishmen and Normans lay on the field. The English hope was gone. A few weeks after the battle, the same council that had elected Harold king elected William with great shouting, and the same bishop that had crowned Harold now blessed William and put the crown upon his head.

Then began for England a stern rule of twenty-one years. Many men who had not fought in that first battle were unwilling to submit, and the king had to lead his army about through England, putting down revolts. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle says, "He let his

[1] See page 144.

men always plunder all the country that they went over." Some rebels and traitors, as the king called them because they would not obey him, were thrown into prison, and some "were punished with blindness, some were driven from the land." And wherever he had to put down revolts, he built strong castles and manned them with Norman knights to hold the land.

The Norman Rule

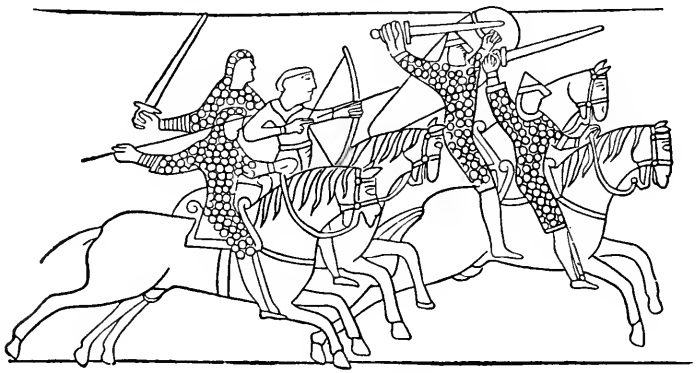


Death of King Harold

He was shot in the eye and is pulling out the arrow. The lettering is in Latin, and says, "King Harold was killed"

"Assuredly in his time had men much distress," the old Chronicle says, "and very many sorrows. Castles he let men build and miserably oppress the poor. The king himself was so very rigid; and extorted from his subjects many marks of gold and many hundred pounds of silver. . . . He was fallen into covetousness, and greediness he loved withal. He made many deer parks [where he and his friends might hunt], and he established laws therewith; so that whosoever [else] slew a hart or a hind, should be deprived of his eyesight. . . . His rich

men bemoaned it, and the poor men shuddered at it. But he was so stern that he recked not the hatred of them all; for they must follow withal the king's will, if they would live or have land or possessions, or even his peace." To the Norman knights who had come over with him he gave rich lands. Gradually most of the old Saxon nobles lost their possessions, for one reason or another, and saw them in the hands of the strangers.



NORMAN HORSEMEN

There were different styles of helmets at the same time. Two of these are hoods attached to the body armor. Two are of iron plate with nose guards. Notice the oblong shields

Yet King William did good things for England. "Amongst other things," says the old Chronicle, "is not to be forgotten that good peace that he made in this land, so that a man of any account might go over his kingdom unhurt with his bosom full of gold. No man durst slay another." For he made strict laws against theft and murder and all crimes, appointing officers to carry out those laws, and he himself traveled through the country now and then, to see that there was peace and obedience.

King William's Laws

Alfred and Alfred's grandfather[1] had done much in their time to make a united England. William took more steps now in the same direction and made that unity more sure and lasting. He did not allow in the land any great earls and dukes who should grow into petty kings and tear the country apart, as had happened in Frankland after Charlemagne.[2] He had noblemen, to be sure, to whom he gave land but never to one man so much in one place that he owned a great tract as big as a state. And every noble, and every man who lived on a nobleman's land, had to go before the king when he sat on his throne, kneel, and put his two hands between the king's two hands and swear to obey the king above all other men. On that condition people received their land, and for disobedience they lost it. By such means the king prevented the great nobles from having under their hands armies of men sworn to obey them. Instead every man all over England turned towards the king for law and commands.

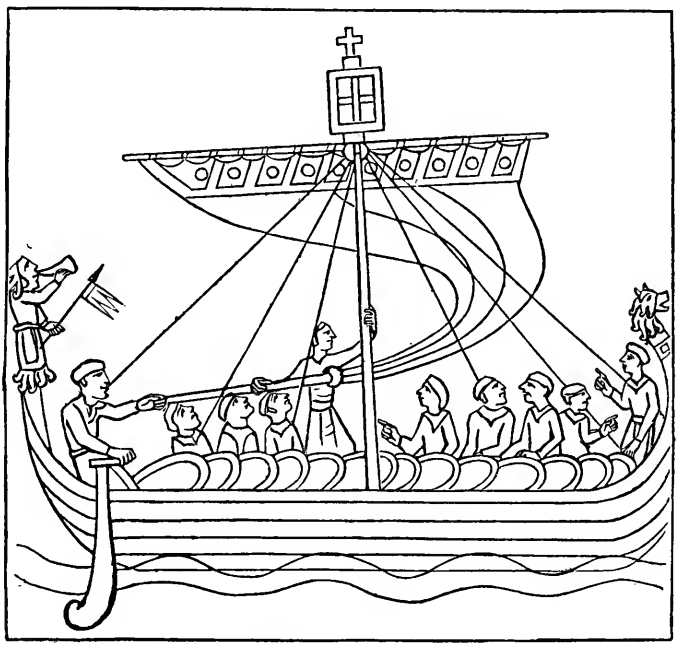
William was not satisfied with any guesswork about who his subjects were and what land they possessed and what they owed him in the way of taxes, or about the wealth of his country and the occupations of his people and the customs under which they lived. The Chronicle says:

The Doomsday Book

"The king had a large meeting and very deep consultation with his council about the land, how it was occupied and by what sort of men. Then sent he his men over all England into each shire, commissioning them to find out 'How many hundreds of hides[3] [of land] were in the shire, what land the king himself had and what stock upon the land, or what dues he ought to have by the year from the shire.' Also he commissioned them to record [this] in

[1] See page 187. [2] See page 163. [3] Hide = about 120 acres.

writing. . . . So very narrowly, indeed, did he commission them to trace it out that there was not one single hide nor a yard[1] of land, . . . not even an ox nor a cow nor a swine was there left that was not set down in his writ.



KING WILLIAM'S SHIP

Like a Viking ship, with carved prow. The pilot holds both steering oar and sail. The gilded trumpeter in the stern shows that it is the duke's ship

And all the recorded particulars were afterwards brought to him."

This record is called the Doomsday Book, and lawyers still read in it to find who ought to own certain pieces of land in England, and they respect this careful work of William the Conqueror.

William and the Normans did another service to Eng-

[1] Yard = one quarter of a hide.

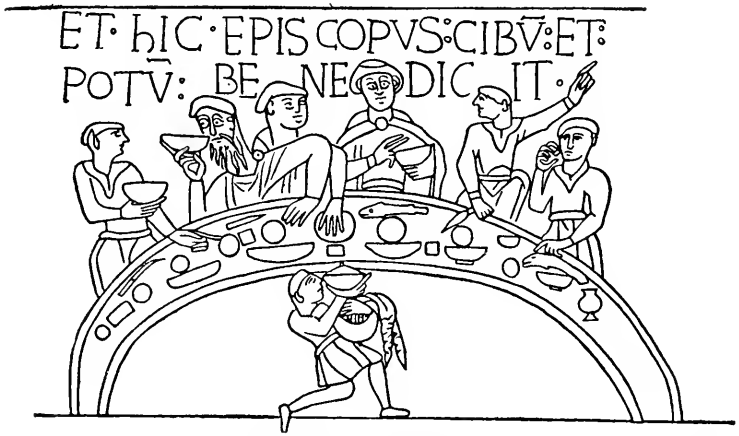
land. They brought it into touch with the rest of Europe. Englishmen on their island had remained rather ignorant of the rest of the world. Of course, kings had now and then married foreign princesses, wealthy men had made visits to Rome, and foreign monks and merchants and travelers had settled in England. Yet the country was off in a corner by itself. William of Malmesbury, a writer who was not born, to be sure, until after the Norman conquest, and so never saw England under Saxon kings, gives a strange picture of the country before the Conqueror's time. If what he says is true, it seems as though Alfred, after all, had accomplished little toward elevating his people; or rather, as though there had been so very much to do that he had been able only to make a beginning.

What the Normans Did for England

This is what William of Malmesbury says: "The priests, content with a very slight degree of learning, could scarcely stammer out the words of the sacraments, and a person who understood grammar was an object of wonder and astonishment. . . . The English at that time wore short garments reaching to the mid-knee; they had their hair cropped, their beards shaven [except on their upper lips,] their arms laden with golden bracelets, their skins [tattooed]. They were accustomed to eat and to drink till they were sick." Moreover, they lived in small wooden houses. There were few buildings of beauty and dignity in the whole country.

But the Normans, William goes on, were "proudly appareled and delicate in their food. . . . They are a race used to war, and can hardly live without it; fierce in rushing against the enemy, and where strength fails, ready to use stratagem. . . . They live in large houses [and are economical]." They revived "religion which had everywhere grown lifeless in England. You might see churches

rise in every village and monasteries in the towns and cities, built after a style unknown before. . . . Each wealthy man accounted that day lost to him which he had neglected to signalize by some magnificent action."



A Norman Banquet

There are no forks, spoons, or plates. The inscription says, "And here the bishop blesses food and drink." He is the third from the right, making the sign with his three fingers

Perhaps William of Malmesbury was trying to flatter the Normans somewhat. But at any rate, they waked up the minds of Englishmen; taught them the courteous manners of the French; introduced them to the songs, the history, and the language of a more polished people; taught them to build beautifully in stone; in many ways added beauty to their lives; and gave them the habit of crossing and recrossing the narrow sea which separated them from their neighbors. For William still remained the duke of Normandy, as well as the king of England.

The Good Laws of Henry II, 1154–1189

William's great grandson, Henry II, was a strong king and a wise lawyer. He made changes in the courts

which brought about in England a justice which other countries had not yet dreamed of. Before his time priests and all men who by writing their names could prove that they had been educated in the church schools were tried, not in the king's courts, but in the courts of the church. Henry, thinking these church courts too lenient, and believing it unjust for some men to escape due punishment, ruled that churchmen who were guilty of common crime should be punished in his courts like common men. He had a quarrel with the pope about this, and had to give up a part of his plan. However, he made another plan whereby twelve men in each hundred,[1] and four in each township, should investigate crimes and bring suspected persons before the judges.

King Henry introduced a new kind of trial, also. According to old custom God was asked to give some sign as to whether or not an accused man was guilty. Perhaps the arms and legs of the accused person were tied, and he was thrown into a pond or a stream of water. If he really was guilty, he would float, people believed, but if he was innocent, he would sink. This was because water, "above which the voice of the Lord had thundered," being pure, could not receive into itself anything impure. In another kind of trial the accused man, after he had taken holy water and had been blessed by the priest and had fasted for three days, grasped a red-hot iron in his hands, took three steps, and cast it from him. After three days his hand was examined, and if there was no wound, he was declared not guilty.

Even the wise King Henry kept this kind of trial for certain crimes, such as murder and robbery. But for smaller crimes he made a more just and merciful plan. Twelve men were chosen to investigate the matter. They

[1] See page 185.

talked with the man himself, inquired from his neighbors concerning him, examined any objects that would help them to learn the truth. Then they decided among themselves as to whether or not he was guilty. This is so great an improvement over the old manner of trial

PILGRIMS LEAVING A TOWN

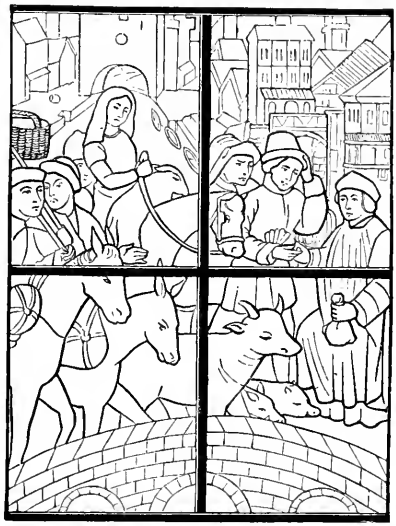
Notice the town wall with towers, gate, and portcullis

that we have kept it with little change to our own day. We call those twelve men the "jury."

Liberty in Free Towns

King Henry was teaching his people what justice was, and they were learning at the same time what freedom meant. During a century or so large towns had been growing up at road crossings, at fords in rivers, around castles and monasteries. These towns were small in comparison with ours.

They were circled about and shut in by moats and walls with gates and portcullises and drawbridges, like those of a castle. Inside this wall the houses were built close, as in the old Greek city. There were no lawns, and neighbors had only a wall between them. The streets were narrow, with often not enough room for two carts to pass. Yet space was always saved in the heart of the city for the market-place, or the churchyard, where all the men of the town could come together for trade or talk or war. The people of this close-packed little town were most of them common folk. And wherever it was, the land on which it was built belonged to some lord — noble or bishop or king. To him the town owed taxes and obedience.



PAYING TOLL ON A BRIDGE

The man on the right is collecting toll for the lord who owns the bridge. The country people are bringing their cattle, pigs, and lambs to sell at the town shown in the background. From an old stained-glass window in a Belgian church

Often this lord was hard upon the people. He demanded too much money from them. He quartered his soldiers in their houses. He cruelly punished men for little misdeeds. He threw innocent men into prison, that he might get ransoms for them. Perhaps he made them pay heavy toll for using a bridge or a road. Perhaps he taxed them for setting up stalls in the market-place. Perhaps he compelled the people to go many miles to his castle in

order to try law cases, thus wasting their time and spoiling their business.

Under such circumstances the people would talk these matters over, and after much discussion might decide to buy from their lord, if they could, the privilege of being free from these troubles. They would send a few of their number to the lord to say: "Our lord, if you will do so and so for us, we will promise to pay you yearly such and such a sum of money. We will write out this promise of ours on a parchment and will sign it, if you will likewise write out and sign your promise." Often the lord, because he needed money to go to war or to repair his castle or to prepare a tournament, would be glad to sign such a charter.

Here are the words of one granted by John, king of England, to a town called Helleston: "Know that we have granted and by this our charter have confirmed that our town of Helleston shall be a free town and that our burgesses of this town shall have a gild-merchant[1] and shall be free from tolls throughout our realm; whether the tolls be for crossing a bridge or using a road or for having a stall in a market or for loading a ship or for the use of the soil. . . . We grant also to them that their law-cases concerning the matters and tenures of their town shall be heard only within the walls of their own town."

Englishmen Learn about Local Self-government

When a village was governed by its lord, it had no voice in its own ruling. But in these free towns like Helleston the townsmen met, elected officers and aldermen, collected money to pay town expenses, and made market rules and police laws. Men in such a town would learn to appreciate their rights as common people, to rule themselves, to think about the duty of a lord and a king to his people.

[1] See page 263.

By the time King Henry died, therefore, Englishmen had learned much about good government. There still existed the memory of Anglo-Saxon free talk and law-making in town-moot and folk-moot.[1] Men had come to expect crimes to be searched out and punished, and accused persons to be justly tried. The people of many towns had gained freemen's charters and were ruling themselves. And men still remembered the good King Alfred as an ideal ruler with whom to compare others.

After Henry II came two kings of a very different sort. One of his sons, Richard I, Lionheart, was a dashing knight and a hero of brave stories, but he was not a good king. He loved war and glory above all things. He had continual struggles in France, where he was a mighty duke. He went far over seas to Jerusalem to fight. So, in order to support armies and hire ships and build castles, he laid heavy taxes on Englishmen. He unjustly took wool and holy dishes of gold and silver from rich monasteries. He was once captured and put into prison by his enemy, the German emperor, and in order to buy his freedom every man in England was forced to give one quarter of all his movable goods — horses and cattle, plows and wagons and crops; furniture, clothes, and jewels; the stocks in merchants' shops. The people groaned under this heavy taxing.

Richard Lionheart, 1189–1199

King John and the Great Charter

After Richard, came his brother John. He had been a rebel against his father and against his brother. Over and over again men have called him the worst king England ever had. He was a selfish man, cruel and wicked. He had a furious temper. He was extravagant and eager for money. Again and again he

1199–1216

[1] See pages 185–186.

took immense sums from rich and from poor, from church and from people. Men dared not refuse to pay, for the king had countless ways of wringing the money from them. Roger of Wendover, an old chronicler, tells of a time when "by the king's order, all the Jews throughout England of both sexes were seized, imprisoned, and tortured severely, in order to do the king's will with their money; some of them after being tortured gave up all they had and promised more, that they might thus escape."

King John's Cruel Acts

KING JOHN

Notice the long toes of the shoes. They were sometimes turned up and fastened to the girdle with chains

People were thrown into prison for no worse crime than that they were enemies of the king. A certain churchman who had whispered against him was imprisoned, and a heavy cap of lead put upon his head so that the weight slowly killed him. The wife and son and daughter of a great Irish noble who had rebelled against John were loaded with chains, thrown into prison, and there starved to death. In many less terrible ways people were annoyed and abused. Roger says that while John was once having a quarrel with the church "religious men and other persons . . . when found traveling on the road, were dragged from their horses, robbed, and basely ill-treated by the agents of the king." Again the chronicler says: "There were at this time in the kingdom of England many nobles, whose wives and daughters the king had insulted . . . others whom he had by unjust exactions reduced to the extreme of poverty; some whose

parents and kindred he had exiled, converting their inheritances to his own use; thus the said king's enemies were as numerous as his nobles." And the chronicler might have said, "And among churchmen and common people there was none that loved him."

THE CASTLE OF AN ENGLISH BARON

At last these Englishmen, whose ancestors had been long training in the moots of Anglo-Saxon times, under the wise rule of Alfred, in the courts and under the just laws of Henry II, and in the self-government of the free towns, determined to endure John's cruelty and injustice no longer. Stephen Langton, a great archbishop, became the leader of the revolt. When many people were one day met in church to hear mass, he called aside a few barons who were there and said, according to Roger of Wendover:

The People Rebel

"'A charter of Henry I, king of England, has just now been found, by which you may if you wish it, recall your long lost rights, and your former conditions.' And placing a paper in the midst of them he ordered it to be read aloud for all to hear."

This Henry I was the great-grandfather of John and son of William the Conqueror. He had drawn up a charter in which he had promised to rule justly according to

the old Saxon laws and not to demand so many and so heavy payments of money as his father had done, but only those dues that every man owed his lord. Henry had kept his promises, and this charter had been a precious document. But here was his wicked great-grandson, John, ruling as though no such promise had ever been made to the English people.

Charter of Henry I

Imagine the joy of these troubled barons when they read in this yellow old parchment the promises that a king had made to their ancestors a hundred years before! "When this paper had been read and understood by the barons who heard it," Roger says, "they were much pleased with it, and all of them, in the archbishop's presence, swore that when they saw a fit opportunity, they would stand up for their rights, if necessary would die for them."

At Easter they gathered, 2000 knights besides common horsemen and foot soldiers, and sent their paper to the king. But it was no longer merely the old charter of King Henry. With discussion men had come to see more clearly the rights of the people and the duties of a king. So it was a new, a larger and more precious charter that they were asking their king to sign. When John heard it, he cried out: "Why don't they ask for my kingdom? I will never grant such liberties as will make me a slave."

The Barons Defy the King

So the messenger carried the charter and the king's refusal back to the waiting army. Then that grim host began to besiege castles and towns that belonged to the king. London and a few other cities opened their gates and welcomed in this "army of God and the Holy Church," because it was fighting for the people's rights. Barons and common men came flocking to the army from all sides until, the chronicler says, King John was deserted by almost every one and hardly had seven knights out of all

who had ever served him. Every face that he looked upon looked back with stern hate. He could not get his own people to serve as his soldiers against this army of Englishmen. He could get no money from his rebellious subjects to hire a foreign army. After sixteen years of cheating, of greed and cruelty, he was now trapped by his own sins. No man could more hate to be beaten, and John was all the time in his heart swearing vengeance. Yet he saw that he must sign. So he sent a message to the barons asking them to appoint a time and place.

Runnymede

On the fifteenth of June, 1215, the two parties met at Runnymede. The king's attendants were on one side of the river. On the other side was drawn up "the army of God and the Holy Church," and the chronicler says that it is not necessary to tell who they were, "since the whole nobility of England were now assembled together in numbers not to be computed." On a small island in the river King John met twenty-five of the barons and under the eyes of the determined army on the banks signed the Great Charter. Nor did he sign it for himself alone, but, as he writes, "for us and our heirs forever."

The Great Charter

Probably the old barons were not thinking of future ages but of their own time and their own troubles. Yet Englishmen who have come after them through seven hundred years have more and more revered that old charter. It has been the battle-cry of men fighting for liberty. It has been called the bulwark of English freedom, a part of the "Bible of the English constitution," "a common blessing of the whole people." Englishmen still look back to June fifteenth as the birthday of their liberties.

There are sixty-three articles in that old charter.

Some of them concern matters that no longer interest us. But some of them are the most precious possessions of to-day: for example, the beginning of the people's right to control the taxing of themselves. The king promises that when he desires to levy a tax for certain purposes, he will call the bishops and barons and all men who hold land from him to a meeting where the matter shall be discussed. He distinctly says that no tax shall be imposed (outside of certain dues that everybody had for centuries considered just) "unless with the consent of the Common Council of our realm." Five hundred years later, when Englishmen in the American colonies said to the English king, "No taxation without representation," they felt that they were but repeating what the nobles had asked and won in the Great Charter.

Most important of all the sections of the charter, perhaps, are these two: "No freeman shall be taken, or imprisoned, or disseized, or outlawed, or exiled, or in any way harmed . . . save by the lawful judgment of his peers or by the law of the land. . . . To none will we sell, to none deny or delay, right or justice." As we read the words, we can see the stern faces of the men whose relatives and friends John had outraged, exiled, robbed, thrown into prison to die or to be bought out by their wealthy families. In later times when men were being oppressed and imprisoned by their kings, they cried out against them as promise-breakers, for they felt that when their ancestors had forced King John to sign this article, they had gained "full protection for property and person to every human being that breathes English air."

It was, to be sure, the nobles who chiefly made up the strength of "the army of God and the Holy Church" and who gained most by the charter. Yet there were commoners, too, in the army — merchants from the free towns,

probably, and farmers from the more prosperous districts. For a certain section promised justice to the people in the matter of fines for breaking the law — small fines for small faults. And no matter what the fault or what the fine, men were to be left the means by which they earned their bread — his land to the farmer, his merchandise to the merchant, his wagon to the poor peasant.

Moreover, there was granted safety for merchants, foreigners often, whom John had been used to annoy and rob. "All merchants may safely and securely go out of England and come into England, and also delay and pass through England, as well by land as by water, for the purpose of buying and selling, free from all evil taxes, subject to the ancient and right customs."

Some of the free towns, too, gained privileges. "And the city of London," says the charter, "shall have all its old liberties and free customs as well by land as by water. Moreover, we will and grant that all other cities and boroughs, and towns and ports shall have all their liberties and free customs."

An English Merchant in Rich Clothes

The promises made in the charter were important, but the fact that there was a charter at all was more important. These men had not bought it with money, as so many towns had done: they had got it at the point of the sword. They had forced a king to do their bidding, to rec-

ognize their rights. John had signed against his will. He had left the green meadow of Runnymede, cursing and tearing his hair and raging like a madman. Yet the charter stood, in spite of his fury. The people had made a weapon with which to control their kings.

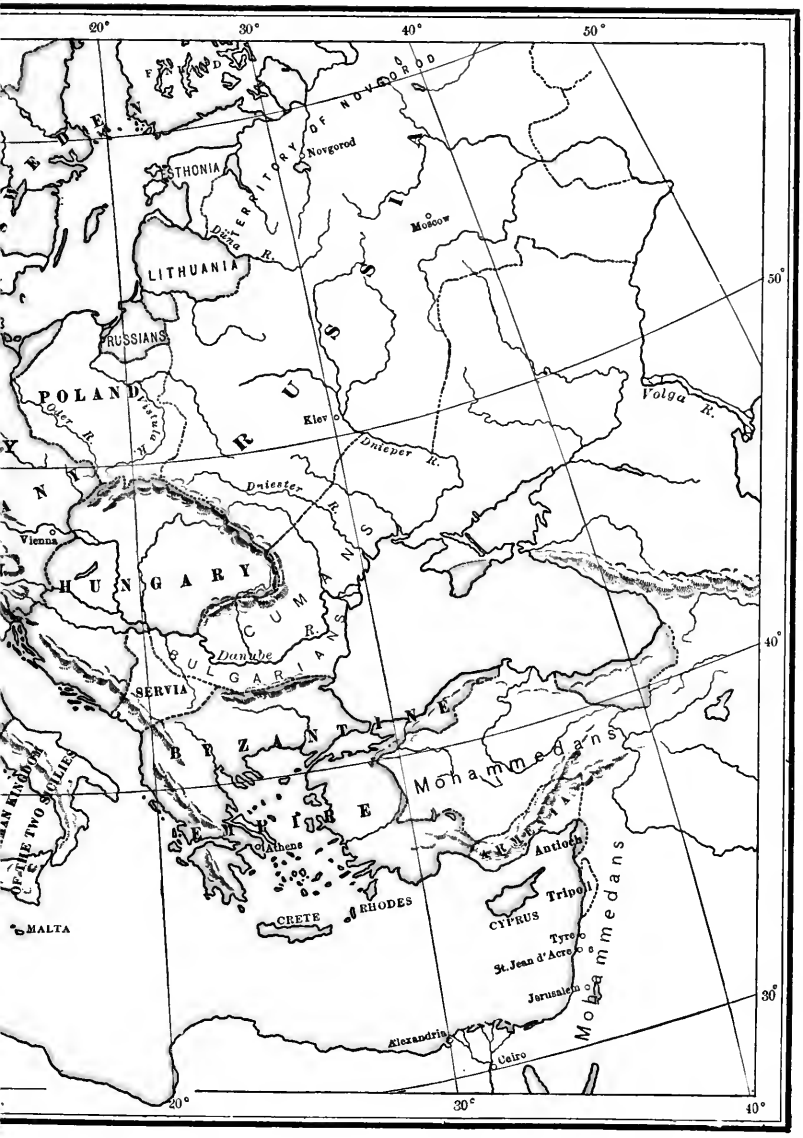
Results of the Great Charter

Thus, while Germany was falling to pieces and France was building up the power of the king, England was slowly preparing for the power of the people, was developing a popular government.

---

1. In what ways were Alfred and Charlemagne alike? In what ways were they different? Which do you admire more? Keep a notebook for a few days, as King Alfred did. (See page 189.) **2.** Make a list of ways in which England suffered from the Norman conquest, and a list of benefits that followed. **3.** Why would a town grow up at a cross-road or a river ford? Write the imaginary history of such a town, telling how it began and how it grew. (For information about the growth of towns, see Allsopp, *Introduction to English Industrial History*, pp. 59–63, or Guest, *Social History of England*, pp. 60–63.) **4.** Try to find out what helped the growth of your own town (or the one nearest to you). **5.** What one of the Anglo-Saxon moots was most like our state legislature? What one was like our Congress? What one was like the Athenian assembly? (See page 51.) **6.** Some of our American towns now hold town meetings like the Anglo-Saxon town-moot. Hold such a meeting to discuss some class project, — organizing a loan library, planning a Saturday class picnic. **7.** Appoint a judge and a jury of twelve, like King Henry's jury, and let them try a classmate for the imaginary breaking of some law. What is the usefulness of the jury? **8.** Some of the girls would get pleasure and profit from embroidering on linen pictures like those of the Bayeux tapestry. (See pictures on pages 193 to 200.)

EUROPE
ABOUT THE CLOSE OF THE
TWELFTH CENTURY
SCALE OF MILES
0 50 100 200 300 400 500
Boundary of feudal dominions
in France held by the English king.
20°
10°
0°
50°
40°
30°
SCOTLAND
IRELAND
WALES
ENGLAND
London
Canterbury
Bruges
Bremen
Rhine R.
NORMANDY
Paris
Loire R.
FRANCE
Milan
Genoa
Rhone R.
Marseilles
LEON
NAVARRE
ARAGON
PORTUGAL
CASTILE
Lisbon
Tagus R.
Toledo
Cordova
Monammedans
Granada
Malaga
Ceuta
Mohammedans
10° Longitude West from Greenwich
0° Longitude East from Greenwich
10°


20°
30°
40°
50°
FINLAND
TERRITORY OF NOVOGOROD
ESTHONIA
Novgorod
Moscow
Dwina R.
LITHUANIA
RUSSIANS
POLAND
Oder R.
Vistula R.
Kiev
Dniester R.
Dnieper R.
Volga R.
Vienna
HUNGARY
CUMANS
Danube
BULGARIA
SERVIA
BYZANTINE
EMPIRE
Mohammedans
Athens
Antioch
Tripoli
CRETE
RHODES
CYPRUS
Tyre
St. Jean d'Acre
Jerusalem
MALTA
Alexandria
Cairo
50°
40°
30°
20°

BEGINNING OF A TOURNAMENT

The knights' faces are covered, but the pictures or "arms" on the shields show who they are. So do the embroidered pennons held by the herald

CHAPTER X

CASTLE LIFE

THE time from Charlemagne to Frederick II and St. Louis and King John is a part of what men call the Middle Ages. In those days life in all parts of western Europe was much alike, and it was in some ways so different from our own that it seems very interesting and exciting. There were three classes: the nobles, the churchmen, the common people.

The Three Classes

The nobles owned the land and were wealthy; most of the common people worked the land and were poor. The nobles looked back with pride to their ancestors, who for generations had been landowners and fighters; while the common man's ancestors had been poor farmers. The churchmen were drawn from both classes. Often a noble entered the church and became an abbot or a bishop, ruling church land and lowly churchmen as his fathers had ruled their own land and people. Common men, also, entered the church and sometimes rose to high places, but

more often worked on the church farms or did humble service, just as they had done before for their earthly lord.

Feudalism, or How Men Got Land

Why was it that the men of pride and power and land were not the men who worked but the men who fought? Think of that savage time after Charlemagne's death, and perhaps the question will be answered.[1] Men's lives were in danger every day from fierce Vikings or Huns or their own lawless neighbors. What man, then, would be most successful? The man who with a strong arm could protect himself. Who could get possession of horses and riches and land? The man who was strong and clever enough to take them when he saw them and to keep them against all comers. Who could get other men to serve him? The good fighter, who could protect his friends. Weaker men were willing to do his plowing, while he and his warriors did their fighting. They were glad to live in little huts near his castle. Men who could fight, though not so well as he, gladly helped to defend his castle and followed him to war. If these men had land, they gave it to the strong man in exchange for his protection. In another way, also, this fighter got other land. When Charlemagne conquered Saxony, when Clovis conquered Gaul, when William won England,[2] the fighters who helped them received pieces of the new land, and their descendants kept it for generations.

In these ways it came about that a few warlike men owned most of the land and that thousands of weaker men owned none. Land, however, is of no use unless it can be worked. So it became the custom for owners of thousands of acres to loan small plots to other men. But they demanded something in return. The man who

[1] See page 163.

[2] See pages 150, 151, 194.

received the land ("vassal," he was called) must help his lord in war and must bring a certain number of knights, besides. He must entertain the lord and his men and horses whenever the lord should demand it. He must come at least once a year to the lord's court and help to decide cases of law. Sometimes the vassal had to promise to do some small

How Land Was Loaned

A Vassal Swearing Fealty

service to show that he was his lord's inferior — hold his stirrup when he mounted his horse, carry a tall candle at his table once a year, present him with a Yule log at Christmas time.

When a man received land from another, he knelt bareheaded before him, put his clasped hands between the hands of his lord, and made a promise like this: "For

each and all of [these castles and lands] I make homage and fealty with hands and with mouth to thee, my lord, . . . and to thy successors, and I swear upon these four gospels of God [and then he placed his hands upon the Bible] that I will always be a faithful vassal to thee and to thy successors . . . in all things in which a vassal is required to be faithful to his lord, and I will defend thee, my lord, and all thy successors . . . against all invaders."

Duties of the Vassal

Then the lord kissed his vassal and raised him to his feet and gave him a little wisp of straw or a little twig of a tree as a symbol of the land that he was giving, and he answered, "And I receive you and take you as my man and give you this kiss as a sign of faith." If the vassal broke his promise of faithfulness or refused to do any of the things that he had agreed to do, he was in danger of losing his land.

One great man, dividing up his wide possessions in this way, often had hundreds of vassals. Some of these vassals had more land than they could use or defend, and they divided it again and loaned parts of it to other men, who then became their under-vassals. There was one piece of land in Scotland, for instance, about which this record was written in the year 1270: "Roger of St. Germain holds [house and land] from Robert of Bedford . . . [and Robert holds from Richard Hylchester] and the said Richard holds from Alan de Chartres, . . . and Alan from William the Butler, and the same William from lord Gilbert de Neville, and the same Gilbert from the lady Devorguilla of Balliol, and Devorguilla from the king of Scotland, and the same king from the king of England."

Every one of these vassals owed money or labor or military service to the lord from whom he held. Now,

suppose the king of England was preparing for war. He would send out to all his vassals a summons like this, "I command you to summon all those who are under your charge and jurisdiction to have armed before me by the week after Whitsunday . . . all the knights which are due to me." Among others, the king of Scotland would receive this summons, and he would send one like it to all his vassals, including the lady of Balliol. Probably she, herself, would not go to war, but she would summon all her vassals to come before her with their men ready for war. And so the message would go down from one to another. At the war-call of one man, there gathered fighting men from all corners of broad lands.

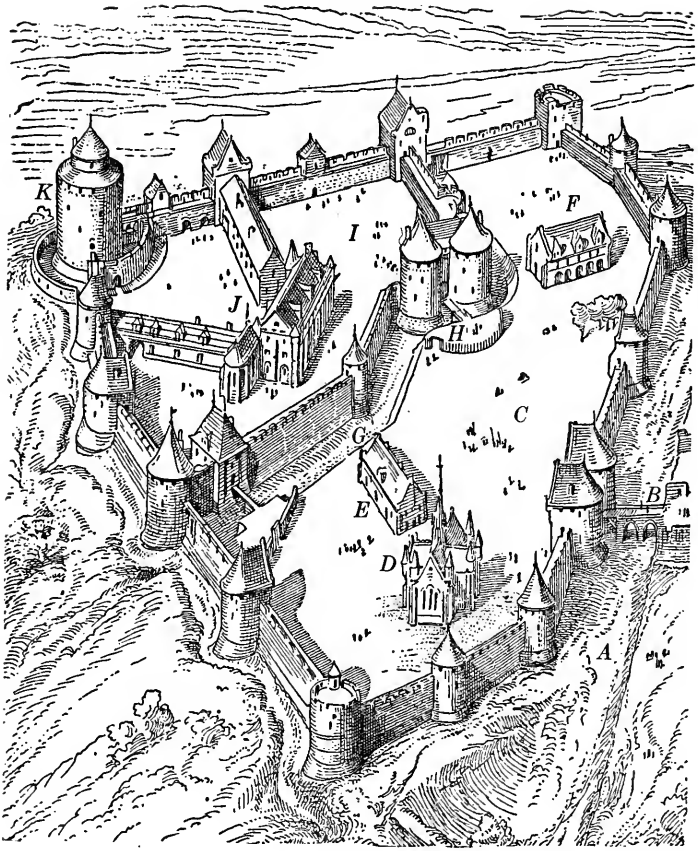
The Castle

These nobles lived in castles. No two of these castles were just alike, yet many things were similar in all of them. Nowadays we choose places for our homes on account of their convenience or their beauty. In the Middle Ages a man chose a site for his castle because of its safety, just as the ancient Greeks chose locations for their cities.[1] The top of a steep hill was a good place. To be sure, a man could almost never find a hill so steep that other men could not climb it. But even on a gentle slope it is hard to climb and fight at once; and there were always the castle men on the walls above, shooting arrows and rolling down stones.

Good Locations for Castles

A rocky island, too, would be an excellent place for a castle. The foe could reach it only in boats; and while they were landing and could not protect themselves quickly, the castle men could fall upon them. Another good location would be a steep headland, jutting into a

[1] See page 38.



A Castle

A modern drawing of a castle. *A*, moat; *B*, entrance gate; *C*, outer court; *D*, church; *E*, outbuildings; *F*, stable; *G*, second moat; *H*, entrance to inner court, *I*; *J*, dwelling houses; *K*, donjon or keep.

lake or river. The owner would build a wall across the neck that connected the head with the mainland. This would be the only place where there would be much danger of attack, and all the fighting men could be crowded here to defend it.

But the best places were taken by the first comers, and after that nobles had to be content with less protected ones. Then they had to make their castles safe by artificial means. One thing that every castle-builder always did was to run a strong wall around the spot where his buildings were to be. In early days this was of earth, but later it was of stone. It was perhaps thirty feet high and ten feet thick. It rarely ran straight and turned square corners, but wandered along the edge of the hilltop or island in an interesting zigzag line. At every corner was a stout round tower, where a guard always stood, looking about. The top of the wall was broad and flat, so that warriors could stand there and fight. And on the outer edge of it a thin wall went a little higher than a man's head to protect the soldiers. But no one could either see an enemy or aim an arrow at him over so high a wall. Every few feet, therefore, it was cut lower, so that a man might look over, shoot, and leap back to safety behind the higher part. This thin wall was called the parapet. With its low slashes and high points it made the great wall seem to be on guard and to be carrying huge spears.

The Castle Wall

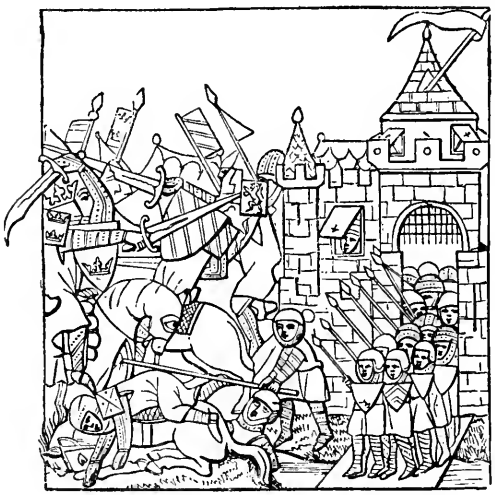
But the enemy might get up to the foot of the wall and put ladders against it and climb up and over. Or they might bring up battering rams and break the wall down. So the castle-builder dug a deep, broad moat at the wall's foot. If there was a stream near, he made a canal to it and turned its water into his moat. But if he could get no water, he left his ditch dry and planted its bottom thick with sharp stakes, that gave no pleasant welcome to an enemy.

The Castle Moat

In time of peace, of course, men needed to get through

the wall and across the moat. So there was a gateway with a bridge leading to it. This gate and this bridge had to be made safe against the enemy, however, for who could tell when he might come? There was a tower at each side of the gateway, where the soldiers could gather. There were strong doors of heavy timber, that could be shut in the enemy's face. But lest he might sometime be too quick for the slow, heavy gates, there was a framework of iron bars hanging above the opening. This portcullis the guard in the tower could drop, fierce and clanging, in an instant. The bridge, moreover, the guards could quickly lift; for it was a drawbridge. Then there were left the yawning moat and the steep wall to keep the castle.

The Castle Gate



A Sally across a Drawbridge

In the middle of a battle before the castle, a troop of soldiers sallies out across the drawbridge in good order. Notice the portcullis in the gateway

People thus shut in must be sure of food and water. There must be a spring or a good well inside the walls. There must, too, be granaries for storing grain; and near by must be fertile fields, where this grain could be grown. There must also be room and sheds inside the wall for cattle, and

The Castle Buildings

pasture land outside. In fact, the castle was the good dragon that guarded a little farming district; and the farms, in payment, fed him. There had to be men to work the farms, and they needed houses to live in. Often they built them snuggled against the big, safe wall, where the guards could look down on the thatched roofs. In times of danger, these peasants left their own houses and crowded into the castle. So the courtyard inside the wall had to be large, with sheds where the peasants might camp for a while and where they might shelter their horses and cattle and plows and wagons.

Sometimes, in a great castle, these common buildings and the castle's own stables and sheds and granaries were in the yard behind the gate; and a second, inner wall went across behind them and shut off a more private courtyard. Here lived the lord and his family. Sometimes there were many buildings in this second court, — a little church, barracks for the soldiers, an armory to store extra weapons, a shop for the armor maker, and the keep, or donjon, strongly built and high. In the larger castles were palaces, the dwelling place of the lord and his family. In smaller castles, however, there were none, but the keep was dwelling place and fortress, all in one. The ground floor was the armory, perhaps. Above that was a large room where the soldiers ate and slept. The next two floors had the living rooms of the lord and his family and the knights who served him.

The Keep

But in any castle, great or small, the keep was the most important of all the buildings. It was the last refuge and hope of its people. Behind the walls it stood with its feet firmly planted. It seemed almost like solid rock. Indeed, its wall was often twenty feet thick, and there were only a few narrow slits for windows. Its one door was in the second story, with a

movable ladder reaching up to it. The roof of the keep was flat, and a parapet went around the edge, so that men might make their last stand here and fight. Everything was done that could make it safe. It was a castle inside a castle.

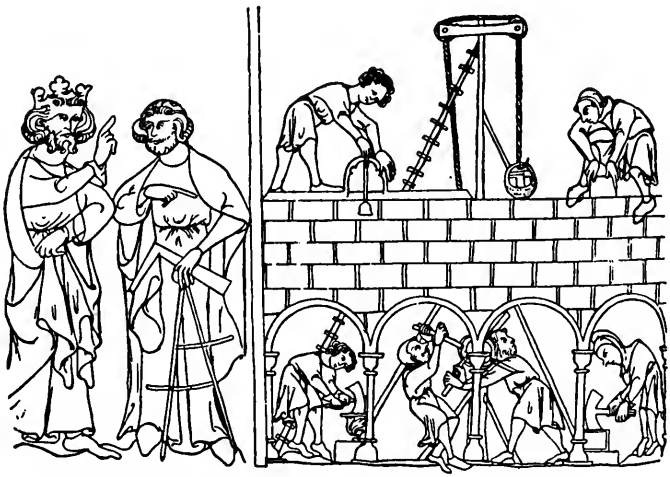
The Living Rooms of the Castle

In the early days of feudalism these buildings were often of wood. But by the time of St. Louis all of them except a few of the sheds and shops were of stone, with thick, rough walls. There were few windows; for windows were holes through which arrows or stones might come. When the builder did allow an opening, he made it very narrow, and in the thick wall it looked like a mere slit. Windows so few and so small made dim rooms. The sun rarely sweetened them. The walls inside, moreover, were of gray stone, unplastered, rough and cold to the touch and bare to look at. The floor, too, was stone. But the castle ladies had planned ways to add beauty and comfort to these bleak rooms. In winter they spread rugs on the stone floor, sometimes the furry skins of bear and wolf and fox that the lords had killed, sometimes woven carpets brought from the far East. In spring they often had the floor strewn with sweet-smelling rushes. And they hung the cold walls with gay tapestry of their own making.

The Growth of a Castle

These castles, with their towered walls and many buildings, were not made in a day. Away back in the times of St. Louis and Frederick II some of them were three or four hundred years old, and during all that time they had slowly grown, as a great tree grows. Perhaps the first builder made only a strong keep of wood with a short wall surrounding it. One of his descendants, perhaps, grown greater and richer than his ancestor, built a new keep of stone and, finding the castle too small, added a bar-

rack for his soldiers. His grandson, with more fighting men, needed more room, and he made another courtyard in front of the old one and put a new wall about it and built a new, larger barrack there. If he was a lover of comfort and elegance, he tore down the old barrack to make room for a new donjon or dwelling place. Perhaps, too, he built a fine chapel in some corner of the wall.



A King Giving Orders to His Builder

These builders of the Middle Ages are using a plumb line, a square, compasses, a ladder, and hoists worked with a windlass. Two men in the end arches seem to be stonecutters

As he looked about he could see the work of three generations, and perhaps he wondered whether any of his descendants would add anything to the family castle. He would never dream, I suppose, that it might become the heart of a city, grown up about its feet for protection. Visit almost any of the castles of France or Germany, and you will find a village or a town spreading around it or nestled beside it. The history of the castle and the town will go back perhaps a thousand years. And it

may be that even before that time the Romans had had a walled camp there, and perhaps yet earlier the Germans or the Gauls had had a fort in that very place.

A Siege

The Siege of Montauban

Did these castles of stone, built to protect their inhabitants, really keep them safe? Did an enemy ever capture one? For answer read the story of a siege as told by an old French poet. It is an imaginary story, of course, but just such things often did happen in real sieges.

"[And Charlemagne said,] 'Lords, make you ready, for I will now give assault to Montauban.'

"When they were ready they came in good order and brought ladders and other instruments and engines to break down the walls, and when the King saw them so well appareled, he ordered the assault.

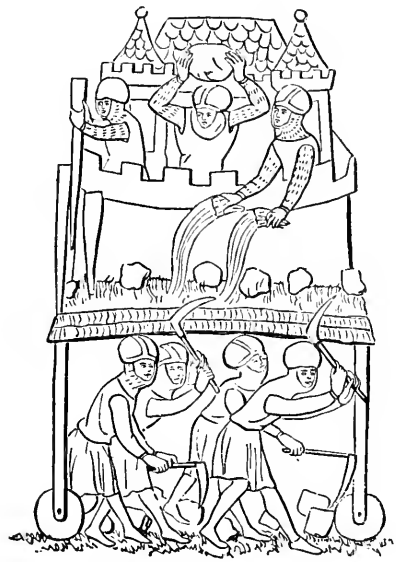
"Renaud saw the movement and sounded his horn three times, and forthwith all they of the castle armed themselves and came on the walls to defend the castle. The Frenchmen [so the French song calls Charlemagne's people, though they really were German] came near and entered into the ditch and dressed up their ladders to the wall, but they within defended so strongly with casting of stones, that many of the Frenchmen were slain. Great pity it was to see the Duchess and the young children bearing stones for their uncles to throw. And when Charlemagne saw that the ladders were overthrown, he knew that he should not take Montauban by force, and made the trumpet to be blown to call his folk back. . . .

"Charlemagne swore by St. Denis of France that he would not depart till they were famished, and he set before every gate of the castle two hundred knights, that nobody might pass in or out. . . .

"So long abode the Emperor at the siege of Montauban that they who were in it had great need of victuals, and he that had any meat hid it straightway, for men could get none for gold or silver, and the dearth was so great that one brother hid his meat from another, and the father from his child, and the child from its mother. The poor folk died for hunger in the streets, and Renaud had need to make a great charnel house and carry them there. . . .

"Then said Charlemagne: 'Lords, it is now long time since we first besieged this castle, and we have lost many of our folk. I command you to make great engines to bring down the towers!' . . .

"So engines were made to cast great multitudes of stones, and for fear of them the folk went and hid under the ground; and so they of Montauban endured this mischief also. So great was the dearth and mortality that men wist not where to put the dead for the charnel house was full, and the young men went with a staff or fell groveling on the ground for feebleness. . . .



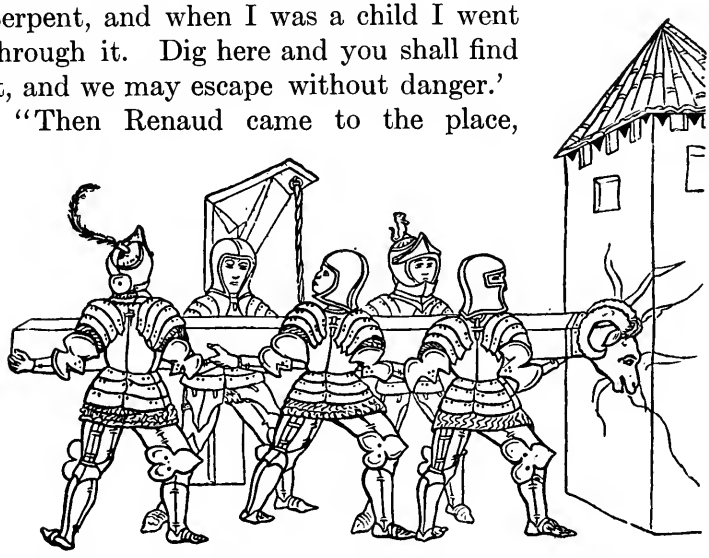
BESIEGING A TOWER

The besiegers are protecting themselves with a movable shed (or cat) while they undermine the walls with pickaxes. The besieged are pouring boiling water on the roof of the cat, and trying to break it with stones and a sharp pole

"There was an old man among them who said to Renaud: 'Sir, I see that Montauban may no longer be

defended, but in you is not the fault. Come with me, and I shall show you a way by which we may escape without danger. Now know that there was once before a castle here, and the lord that builded it first made a way under the earth that bringeth folk into the Wood of the Serpent, and when I was a child I went through it. Dig here and you shall find it, and we may escape without danger.'

"Then Renaud came to the place,



BATTERING RAM

Notice the difference between this armor and that in the Bayeux tapestry. This is about 400 years later. It is made of iron plates

and they digged in the earth and found the way that the old man said, and Renaud, his wife and children, his brethren and the remnant of his folk, put themselves in the way, and Renaud made great plenty of torches to be fired, that they might see the better. . . . So long they went that they came to the mouth of the cave and found them in the Wood of the Serpent at dayspring . . . [and thereafter came to Renaud's own town]. And when they of the city knew that their lord was come, they were glad and came out to meet him

in fair company and made great feast through all the town." [1]

But besiegers were not always forced to wait for starvation to conquer the castle. They could make many machines to help them. These were much like the Roman engines,[2] for they had the same sort of work to do. In spite of the centuries that had passed, the castle and walled tower of the Middle Ages were much like the walled camp and fortified city of late Roman times. So the knights made battering rams much like the Roman ones and for the same purpose of knocking down the stone walls. They made movable towers and catapults for throwing stones. They dug mines as the Romans had done and used scaling ladders.

Siege Engines

But of course the castle men had ways of protecting themselves. Guards were always in the towers watching and at sign of danger gave signal and called the other fighting men; for in time of siege the warriors slept ready for the fray, with their swords at their sides. There were secret passages leading out of the castle and little strong gateways in hidden places. Here a little body of men sometimes stole out at night and fell upon the sleeping camp and, after they had quickly done some mischief, slipped back into safety with only a few men lost, perhaps.

How the Castle Men Could Protect Themselves

The castle men, moreover, had engines on their wall and sent stones crashing into tents and rolling towers. They threw fire on the enemy's wooden engines and poured down burning pitch and lime and boiling water upon the men working below with the battering ram or the scaling ladders.

[1] To be sure, the castles of Charlemagne's time were not so elaborate, but the later story-teller did not know this.

[2] See pages 101–103.

The Warlike Spirit of the Age

The Middle Ages were a time of fierce war and cruelty. I suppose it is impossible for us in our day to imagine how much fighting there was. Every one thought it the only work fit for a gentleman. The nobles loved it and thirsted for fight as the old Vikings had done. It was, moreover, every great noble's right to go to war whenever he pleased, without asking the consent of his king or his people.

The consequence was that war was very common. And where war is the chief business of life we cannot expect to find men gentle and kind. There was in nearly every castle a deep dungeon underground, without windows to give light and air, without chairs to sit on or beds to lie on. Here men were sometimes kept for months and years, merely because they were the enemies of the castle lord and had been captured. The punishments for criminals were horrible. William the Conqueror prided himself on his kindness, because he never sentenced a man to death. Yet he ordered men's tongues cut out and their hands cut off and their eyes blinded.

The Cruelty of the Time

Many a knight was vain of his "honor" as he called it. If a man in a crowd accidentally pushed against him, if a knight of less nobility walked before him through a doorway, he would throw his glove into the offender's face, and the other knight for *his* honor's sake would snatch it up angrily. In a few moments or a few hours, as soon as the plans could be made, these two men, on horseback and in full armor, with spear and sword, would be fighting a duel; and one of them or both would be left wounded or dead on the field.

If for a few months there was no war and no cause for

a duel, the hunger for fighting grew into a madness among the knights, and one great lord or another would announce a tournament. Then there was joy in the

A Tournament

Seats have been built for spectators. Emperor and empress are watching. Horses are wearing armor. Two splintered spears on ground show that this is not the first charge. One assailant has now run the other through, and the heralds are blowing the end of the tournament

castles around about and polishing of armor and making of new trappings for the horses and surcoats for the knights. The ladies, too, were all excitement, each one

hoping that her chosen knight would win, and giving him her glove or an embroidered sleeve or a bit of her girdle to wear in his helmet. On the great day all the ladies of the district and the greatest of the lords, perhaps, and the young pages would sit on tiers of benches that had been built at the sides of a level meadow. On the plain before them the knights on their war horses would clash together in fight. The battles were supposed to be mock fights, but often the mockery became real earnest, and perhaps a score of knights would be killed, for nothing but a game. A man's life was cheap in those days.

A Tournament

Sir Thomas Malory tells of Launcelot, the mirror of perfect knighthood, how, at a tournament, for mere sport and upholding of his fame, he "thrust in with his spear in the thickest of the press, and there he smote down with one spear five knights, and of four of them he brake their backs. . . . Anon therewithal Sir Launcelot gat [another] great spear in his hand, and, or ever that great spear brake, he bare down to the earth sixteen knights, some horse and man, and some the man and not the horse, and there was none [he hit that bare arms again] that day. And then he gat another great spear, and smote down twelve knights, and the most part of them never throve after," that is, they died. And yet according to the same story this was "the meekest man and the gentlest that ever ate in hall among ladies."

Most of these knights were nobles. That is, they and their fathers and their grandfathers had been lords of castles and wide lands, with vassals and servants to do them honor. All this had made them very proud, thinking themselves much better than men of common blood. It seemed to them that the world had been made for

How a Knight Felt toward Common People

noblemen, and the common people were but to serve them. The lords thought little of trampling down the poor men's crops in their wars or their hunts. They had loaned the land to these farmers, and in return they claimed from them so much money and so much work that the peasants were often poor and miserable — how poor the next chapter will tell.

There was another class of people, also, whom the nobles looked down upon: namely, the merchants. For some strange reason a noble thought he had a right to take whatever he could from them. He made them pay for traveling on roads that went through his land, for crossing a bridge over one of his streams, for selling goods in his town near the castle. If he lived on a great river, he made the merchants who passed in boats pay toll.

A Knight of the Thirteenth Century

His outer garment of cloth is called the surcoat. His hood, gauntlets, and mailed shirt are all of one piece, woven of iron links. Spurs are tied about his ankles

Only a man of some wealth could be a knight. He must have steel armor to cover his body, a helmet to protect his head, a long shield to cover him from neck to ankles, a sword to hang at his side, a battle-ax, and long lances. He must have a strong horse to carry him and his heavy armor. He was not content with a poor saddle. It must be of thick leather with carved pommel, made, if possible, in the south of France, where they did good

A Knight's Equipment

work in leather. His reins must be embroidered and perhaps studded with jewels, and his beloved horse must be gay with coverings of silk and gold embroidery. His sword should be made in Spain of steel so sharp that it could cut a silk scarf thrown into the air and so tough that it could slash a shield of steel. Its handle he liked to have of gold with a few precious stones shining, and his spurs, also, must be of gold. He wanted his armor made by some famous, cunning armorer so that every link would hold against a sword stroke. He must have a surcoat or cloak of embroidered silk to throw over his armor when he was riding at peace. He must have at least one follower, or squire, to ride with him and carry his heavy shield and long lances in moments of peace and to help him put on and take off his clumsy armor. So most knights were men of wealth.

Knightly Ideals and Training

Knighthood meant more than fighting, however. In Sir Thomas Malory's old English story-book is a description of Sir Launcelot, the ideal knight. One of his brother knights is mourning over Launcelot's dead body, saying: "Thou were the courtiest knight that ever bare shield; and thou were the truest friend to thy lover that ever bestrode horse; and thou were the truest lover of a sinful man that ever loved woman; and thou were the kindest man that ever strake with sword; and thou were the goodliest person ever came among press of knights; and thou was the meekest man and the gentlest that ever ate in hall among ladies; and thou were the sternest knight to thy mortal foe that ever put spear in the rest." That was the knight's ideal — not only to be brave and strong, but to be well mannered and gentle, to be a true friend and a lover of ladies.

Knightliness

Chaucer, the first great English poet, describes a young squire who is preparing for knighthood. What he says shows that a knight was not to be a mere rough fighter. He describes the squire as[1]

> "A lover and lusty bachelor,
> With locks all curled, as they were laid in press.
> Of twenty years of age he was, I guess.
> Of his stature he was of even length,
> And wondrous nimble he was and great of strength. . . .
> Embroidered was he as it were a mede
> All full of freshest flowers, white and red.
> Singing he was or fluting all the day;
> He was as fresh as is the month of May.
> Short was his gown, with sleeves both long and wide. . . .
> Well could he sit on horse and fairly ride,
> Was able songs to make and well endite,
> Joust, too, and dance, and well could draw and write.
> Courteous he was, lowly and serviceable,
> And carved before his father at the table."

Now, a young man could not learn all of these things in a moment — to carve at the table, to draw and write, to make and sing songs, to dance and to have pretty manners, to ride his horse and carry his lance and swing his sword and hold his shield cleverly, and to be brave always. He had to go through a long course of training. It began when he was only a little boy. Sometimes he stayed at home for his education; but usually he went to live for years at the castle of some other famous and wealthy knight.

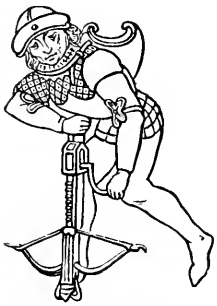
Training for Knighthood

The castle family which he entered might be made up of two or three hundred people. The kitchen might be

[1] Chaucer's poem was written about 1386. His strange old spelling and some of his old-fashioned words make the verses difficult to read, so I have changed them a little.

a great room a hundred feet long and wide, with three or four huge fireplaces, where whole deer and pigs and sheep could hang and turn over the coals. There were, perhaps, twenty or thirty men and boys to cook and clean, running about from kneading tables to fires with great copper kettles or big loads of wood for the flame. At the barracks out in the court-yard there might be a hundred common soldiers, practising with the crossbow, a powerful weapon so stiff that a man had to pull it back with a crank.

A Castle Family



CROSSBOWMAN

The crossbow was the most deadly weapon invented before the use of gunpowder

In the ladies' bower was the lord's wife with perhaps twenty serving women. Some had mantles thrown over their knees and were embroidering the edges. Others sat before tapestry frames and wove with bright threads. A few were cutting and sewing new robes of silk or fur. In the meadow outside the castle were perhaps thirty knights, followers of the lord, bound to serve him at all times and in return supported at his expense. They were exercising their horses and practising with their spears.

The boy's education began in the ladies' bower. He chose one lady and served her lovingly for several years as her page. He helped her in every way that he could — ran upon her errands, carried her messages, held her horse, carried her falcon, wound her yarn, held her embroidery basket. And from her he learned many things. She told him stories of the saints and of great knights. She taught him to bow gracefully and to dance. Perhaps she could read, and spent an hour a day with him over some huge book with big letters and

The Page

bright pictures. Surely she could sing and play the harp and helped him to learn that art. She saw to it that the castle minstrel spent an hour now and then with her page and taught him some of his great knowledge. She made sure that the boy went frequently to church and to confession, and she talked with the castle priest and asked his help and advice in training her little page to be an honorable, Christian knight. So the ladies and the priest tried to teach the boy knowledge and gentle manners before they let him learn from the knights the fierce practices of war.

When the page was large enough and strong enough (perhaps when he was twelve or thirteen years old), he became the squire of some knight, as he had before been the page of a lady. The squires led busy lives. Every morning they went to the stables and helped to care for the war-horses and hunting horses. And well tended those horses were. Cloth of silk was not too fine to rub down their shining coats, for they were the best beloved of their masters' hearts. The horse and the knight had lived together for many a year in peace and war. They had often been wounded together. Together they had lain down at night on a hard-fought field. Together they may have fled in fear and shame from a lost battle. So it was a young squire's great duty and great pleasure to learn to care for a noble war-horse, looking forward to the time when he should have a shining sorrel of his own, with thick, arching neck and high-lifted hoofs and nervous nostrils and intelligent eyes.

The Squire

The squire served his master in many ways. He made his bed, he stood behind him at table, carved his meat, carried his plate, and filled his cup. He helped him to dress and undress. He polished his helmet and sword and shield until they were like mirrors. He mended the leather

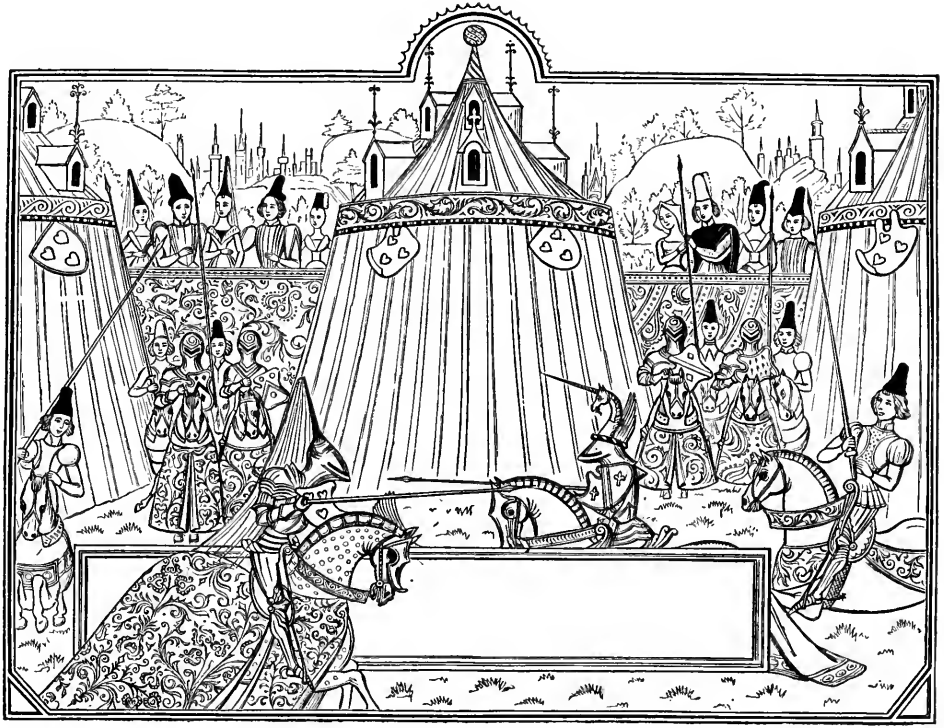
dress that was worn under the long link armor, and he kept it oiled and soft. He carefully inspected the armor, and if a link was broken or if a sword or lance had slashed it in battle, he took the coat of mail to the armorer's shop in the castle court and had it mended. But, best of all, he followed his lord to war, carried his extra lances in battle, rescued him and took him off the field, if he was wounded.

Thus he learned the things that he needed to know. And, besides, his knight taught him how to mount a horse in one spring, without touching the stirrup; how to receive a stroke with his shield and so guard himself; how to hold his heavy lance firm; how to swing the long sword. He tried to train him, too, in courage and faithfulness and courtesy.

The Knighting

Some day, when the boy was full grown and had done a brave deed, or by strength and gentleness had shown himself worthy of knighthood, his lord would knight him. That was the greatest day of his life. Perhaps the knighting would be done in a moment, on the field, after a battle where the squire had done some brave thing. Perhaps it would be done in the castle yard in time of peace. In that case the squire would bathe and put on fresh, new garments, as he was to begin a new, clean life. All night he would spend in the chapel before the altar, where lay his sword and lance and shield; for every knight must be a lover of Christ and a defender of the church, and his weapons must be consecrated to God's cause.

But whether the knighting was done in haste on the battle-field or with all gorgeousness at home, among admiring friends, the great moment was when the young squire knelt before his lord, waiting to be made a knight. Malory tells how King Arthur knighted Tor. "Then Tor



A Tournament of Froissart's Time

Three English knights have challenged three French knights. While two fight, the others wait. Each knight is attended by a squire, wearing a high cap. The barrier, or fence, makes the tournament less bloody than in the earlier days

THE KNIGHTING

A squire has done brave service in a battle, and a friendly knight is giving him knighthood

alight off his mare and pulled out his sword, kneeling and requiring the king that he would make him knight and that he might be a knight of the Table Round. 'As for a knight, I will make you,' [said King Arthur]; and therewith smote him in the neck with the sword, saying, 'Be ye a good knight, and so I pray to God so ye may be, and if ye be of prowess and of worthiness, ye shall be a knight of the Table Round.'"

After that stroke on the back of the neck to test his courage, the young man rose, a knight. And his lord gave him a sword and belted it on with his own hands and buckled golden spurs on the new knight's heels and

gave him a shield. Often he told him what were the duties of a knight and encouraged him to be worthy of his new name.

Lord Tennyson, one of the great English poets of our own time, has King Arthur tell what he made his knights of the Round Table promise before he would accept them:

"I made them lay their hands in mine and swear
To reverence the King as if he were
Their conscience, and their conscience as their King,
To break the heathen and uphold the Christ,
To ride abroad redressing human wrongs,
To speak no slander, no, nor listen to it,
To honor his own word as if his God's,
To lead sweet lives in purest chastity,
To love one maiden only, cleave to her,
And worship her by years of noble deeds."

Knightly Pleasures

The chief joy of these knights was in battle, yet there were gentler sports. About every castle was good hunting; for farms were fewer then than now, and there were more forests and open fields. Deer and wild boar and bear were common in them. All these were good eating, and the castle families were fond of wild meats and fonder yet of the excitement of the hunt. Every castle had kennels with dozens of dogs, and in the stables hunting horses, smaller and quicker than the knights' heavy war-horses.

Hunting

Men went hunting, not in armor, as they went to battle, but in gay cloth suits, with fur capes flung over their shoulders, perhaps, and heavy gloves to protect their hands. Instead of swords they carried bows and quivers of arrows or stout hunting spears and always a broad, sharp knife in the belt; for a boar was a savage

beast, and sometimes the hunter had to protect himself at short range.

Twenty knights, perhaps, would start out from the castle on their prancing horses, with laughter and shouting and blowing of horns. Among them walked the keepers of the hounds, holding back the excited dogs, that were leaping and straining at the end of their leashes. All day the party scoured the woods. The hounds tracked the game, and the hunters followed, coming in with their spears and knives to kill the animal when it was cornered.

Hunting was a savage game, less brutal than war, but a good training for warlike quickness and courage. No man was thought a good knight unless he was also a good hunter, and great and wise kings and bishops were proud of skill and courage in the chase. William the Conqueror owned great "deer parks" or stretches of wild forest, where no one was allowed to hunt except at his invitation,[1] and the old Anglo-Saxon Chronicle says, "he loved the tall deer, as he were their father." King Alfred trained his own hounds, Charlemagne was famous with the hunting spear, and Frederick II was proud of his hunting leopards.

A Gentleman Hawking

The bird is held by leather thongs

Hawking

Hawking was a gentler, prettier sport. The ladies, as well as the knights, were lovers of this. A hawking party went to hunt only rabbits and hares and such wild birds as are good to eat, — ducks, geese, partridges, quails, and the

[1] See page 195.

like. On the wrist of every hunter perched a hawk or falcon, carefully trained and tended at the falcon house in the castle yard. As the gay party rode along, chatting and laughing, the falcon's head was hooded, so that he could not see to fly away. He was, moreover, held by a little silver chain or leather leash attached to his leg. As the party entered the wood, they grew more quiet, lest they might frighten the game, and they scattered through the forest in twos or threes.

If a hunter caught sight of a flying duck, he took off the hood from his hawk's head and loosed the leash from its leg. In a moment the falcon's sharp eyes saw the game. A spring, and he was in the air, flying with his strong wings toward the bird. Once or twice he circled above it, then fell upon it with his savage talons and beak and killed it. The hunter, eagerly watching, at this moment blew, on a little silver whistle, a note that his hawk knew. The falcon, hearing the call, dropped the bird and, flying to his master, settled upon his wrist to be petted and fed some tidbit.

Meantime a servant let go a dog, which sought out the dead game and brought it back. At the end of the day dozens of birds would be hanging at saddlebows. The party would return to feast in the castle hall, to sit about the fire and tell tales of their clever falcons, to hear the minstrel sing of the joys of hawking in the greenwood.

Minstrels

Folk in castle days were great lovers of poetry. There were few books to read, and few people could read them. Instead, there was the minstrel, for the common folk. He wandered about from town to town, afoot, with a stick and a bundle over his shoulder and a viol slung at his back. At some busy street corner, where many people passed, he would unsling his viol and begin thrumming the

A Minstrel Song

strings. At the merry sound doors would open; feet would begin running; glad shouts would be raised; and men, women, and children would crowd about. Then the minstrel, while he played on his viol, would begin singing, perhaps a song like this good old ballad of Scotland:

Ye Highlands, and ye Lowlands,
Oh, where have you been?
They have slain the Earl of Murray,
And they laid him on the green.

"Now wae be to thee, Huntly!
And wherefore did ye sáe?
I bade you bring him wi' you,
But forbade you him to slay."

He was a braw gallant,
And he rid at the ring;[1]
And the bonny Earl of Murray,
Oh, he might have been a king!

He was a braw gallant,
And he played at the ba';
And the bonny Earl of Murray
Was the flower amang them a'.

He was a braw gallant,
And he played at the glove;
And the bonny Earl of Murray,
Oh, he was the queen's love.

Oh, lang will his lady
Look o'er the Castle Downe,
E'er she see the Earl of Murray
Come sounding through the town!

[1] A game in which the knight, riding at a gallop, tried with his spear to pick off rings hung on a standard.

Almost every castle had a poet of its own. There he lived and did his work — the making and singing of pretty songs. At weddings and on birthdays and gay holidays he must make special new lays and stand up when the company was gathered at dinner and sing for their delight. On the evenings of common days, too, the big family gathered in the great hall to talk and tell stories, and at last the minstrel must sing. Perhaps the lord would give him a subject — love or a battle or yesterday's hunt — and would demand a new song made up on the moment.

The Castle Poets

THE KING DINES

The minstrel often played as the servants brought in the food

There are very few people who can do that thing, but some of these old poets were clever at it.

Some of the castle poets had great genius, and they found one lord's castle too small. Most of them loved adventure and found settled life too tame. Then they took to the road. If they were poor, they went afoot, as the minstrels did. If one was richer, he rode on a horse, with a mule to carry his harp and viol and his precious book or two and his extra clothing. Perhaps there was a boy to lead the mule and to wait upon the master.

French Troubadours

Such a singer in southern France was called a troubadour, and there were scores of them in that rich, song-loving land. The names of four hundred are still remembered and many of their songs preserved in books. A famous troubadour went only to the great castles, where he would find men and women of education who would appreciate his poetry and who could pay him well; for poets must live. When he approached the castle, there would be a great stir. The guard would quickly let down the drawbridge and pull up the portcullis and would send a message to his lord and lady, "A troubadour has come!"

A Banquet

When the family gathered at dinner that night, there would be more bright looks and more gay laughter than usual. Perhaps, if it was spring, and the air was sweet, the lord would order the midday meal in the garden outside the moat on the river bank. That was a busy scene, with dozens of serving boys running about under the high trees, carrying trestles and boards for the tables, great platters of steaming meats, drinking cups of silver and even a few of gold for the ladies. Perhaps two servants together would proudly carry a silver plate with the greatest delicacy of all — a roast peacock, its beautiful feathers all carefully saved and so arranged over the roasted body that the bird seemed alive and spreading its proud tail.

A Gay Company

But the ladies and gentlemen of that company were more gay than any peacock. The women were in long robes of shining silk that trailed rustling over the grass. And not a lady was content with one color in her dress. Perhaps a long robe of deep blue fell from her neck to her toes, and it was all embroidered over with little apples of gold. The wide cuffs under her hands dropped so low that they brushed

the grass, and they were lined with green, like the lights in the peacock's tail. There hung from her shoulders a mantle of dark wine color, and around all its edge was a wide embroidery of golden flowers and leaves of green like the long cuffs. She and her ladies had kept their needles busy on it for half a year. And about her body was wound a wonderful girdle, all braided and twisted and embroidered like a Persian rug.

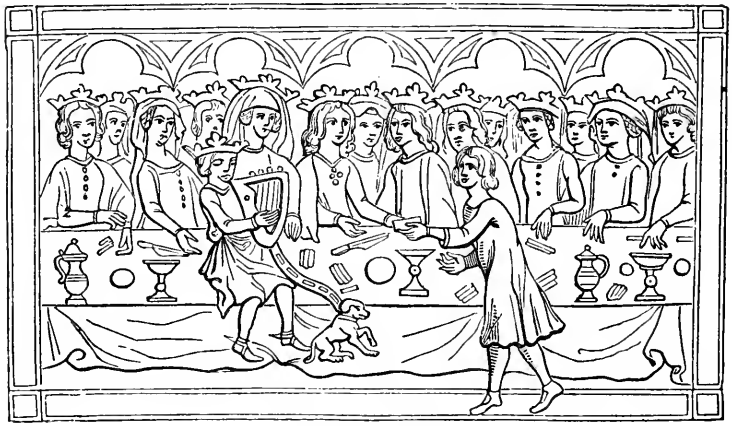
A Lady

The gentlemen were quite as gay, with embroidered capes and crimson shoes and pointed hoods of bright silk and rich fur at neck and wrists, and every one with a jeweled dagger thrust into his belt, a golden chain about his neck, and shining rings on his fingers.

When dinner was ended, perhaps the lord himself took the harp and sang a song of his own making and afterwards sent the harp to another and asked for a lay. But soon he called for the visiting troubadour, and there was glad clapping of hands from the company. Perhaps the poet would sing of his lady; for every troubadour was a lover. Sometimes he was a knight and a lover of war as well as of ladies. This song was made by such a man — lord of a castle, a fierce fighter, a friend of kings:

Troubadour Songs

I love the spring tide of the year
When leaves and blossoms do abound,
And well it pleases me to hear
The birds that make the woods resound
With their exulting voices.
And very well it pleases me
Tents and pavilions pitched to see,
And oh, my heart rejoices



A Royal Harper

The artist has kindly given crowns to everybody except the servant. The harper is playing while the meal goes on. Doubtless all the few dishes are of gold or silver. Dogs were commonly allowed in the dining hall

To see armed knights in panoply
Of war on meadow and on lea.
Not so much joy in sleep have I,
Eating and drinking please me less
Than hearing on all sides the cry
'At them!' and horses riderless
Among the woodlands neighing.
And well I like to hear the call
Of 'Help!' and see the wounded fall,
Loudly for mercy praying;
And see the dead both great and small,
Pierced by sharp spearheads, one and all.

To us this seems a brutal song, but the castle company that listened hundreds of years ago liked it very much, I am sure. Every knight remembered his own battles and felt his heart leap with the savage joy of fight, and he shouted applause. Even the ladies clapped their hands; for they, too, thought that war was noble. Surely the lord of the

How Troubadours Were Paid

castle was pleased with the song and invited the troubadour to be his guest as long as he would — for months or for years. But the poet was doubtless a rover, like all his fellows, and after a summer or two sought another castle and new companions.

The Time of Chivalry

Nobody can tell when chivalry or knighthood began. Doubtless the people of the very time when it was starting did not know what was happening, for things begin quietly and change as they grow. But we know that there were knights in the year 1096. Yet we cannot tell how long before that knighthood may have existed.

It is as hard to tell when knighthood ended as when it began. Indeed, kings of England even to-day dub men knights, but a modern knight is a very different kind of person from a knight of the Middle Ages. Those men of earlier times, who dressed in steel armor, carried lances and swords, loved to fight, lived in stone castles, listened to troubadours — when did they disappear? They did not drop out of the world all at once. Slowly all things changed — costumes, laws, ways of thinking.

The change which had most to do with the disappearance of the old-time knights was in the kind of fighting. About 1340 the people of western Europe began to use gunpowder, which they had learned of in their Eastern travels. Now, gunpowder will send a ball through a man's armor, and a cannon ball will tear through a castle wall. So, gradually, as men invented stronger guns, they put off their useless, clumsy armor and abandoned their useless, gloomy castles.

Yet all over western Europe we have many of these castles left — some in ruins and some that have been

kept in repair. The king of England still lives in castles that were built hundreds of years ago, though they have been enlarged, and modern comforts have been added. In museums we have, too, some of the very armor that those olden knights wore. Stored in books we still have many old troubadour songs and many a knightly story.

But the best thing that the people of the Middle Ages have left us is the knightly ideal of what a man ought to be. Few knights lived up to it, of course; and in the hundreds of years since then we have learned that war is hideous and not glorious, that work is noble and not shameful, and that all men have equal rights. These are the things that the knights did not know. And yet when we now want to say that a man is most honorable in the keeping of promises, true to his friend and courteous to his enemy; that a lie never stains his lips; that his manner is gentle and beautiful, — we call him "knightly."

A KNIGHT

In this knight's time fashions are beginning to change from the old link armor to plate armor. The saddle is planned to brace the knight against a thrust

---

1. Make a play in which a vassal swears fealty to his lord. 2. Model a castle in clay, each one in the class making one building or a part of the wall. 3. In sand model a country with hills, valleys, and rivers, then choose a place for a castle. 4. Did feudalism last longer in France or Germany? Can you tell why?

CHAPTER XI

THE WORKERS

THE knights were few, and the common people whom they scorned were many. Doubtless most of those who read this book are descended, not from some knight of the Middle Ages, but from some farmer or trader or craftsman. These common people were oppressed, and they began the long, hard fight for freedom and comfort that we are still fighting. Facts like these ought to make the common men more interesting to us than the fine castle folk.

Farmers

Common people in the Middle Ages did not own land, as our farmers do; they only borrowed it from the great people — knights, lords, bishops.[1] One of those gentlemen might own several thousand acres of land, scattered in pieces through the country. Each piece was called a manor, and it had upon it a castle or a strong house. Perhaps the lord himself lived here, or perhaps only an agent, who took care of the manor for him. But however that was, neither the lord nor the agent really worked the land. There was too much of it for one man to till, so it was divided up in a strange way.

The Manor

Some of it the lord kept for himself and called it his domain, or demesne. On this he had grain fields; an orchard of apple and pear trees, perhaps; and a garden where grew onions, mustard, cabbage, peas, and beans.

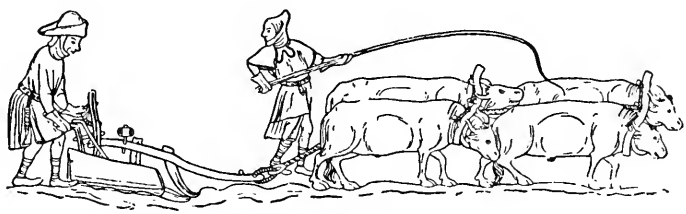
[1] See pages 214–216.

Another part of the land was divided into three fields, each as large as one of our farms, with perhaps two or three hundred acres in it. On one great field was planted wheat, the best crop; on another, oats; and the third field was left unplanted and was used as a pasture for cattle or sheep. The next spring wheat was planted on last year's oat field, oats on the old pasture, and last season's wheat field was left unplanted. People rotated the crops in this way because the land wore out if they planted wheat on it year after year.

These were the fields that were loaned out to the common people. Perhaps a hundred families shared this land. It was cut up into long, narrow strips, with lines of wild grass between instead of fences. Each man had a strip here and a strip there, perhaps as much as thirty acres, scattered about through the three fields.

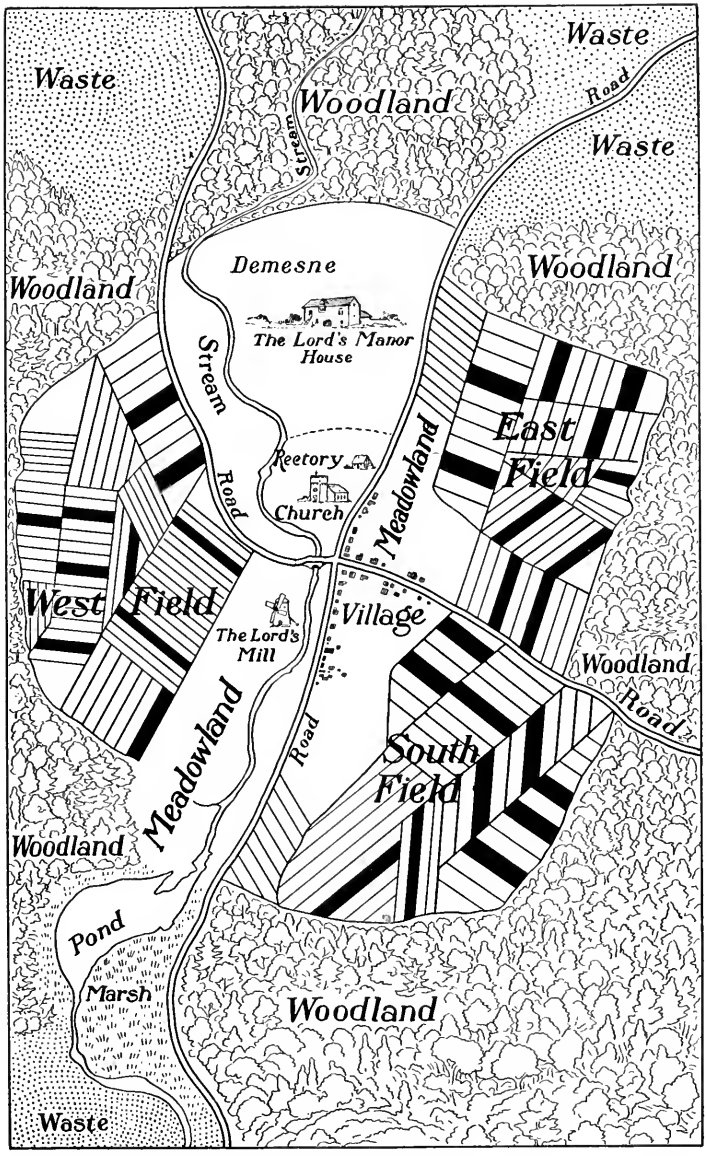
The Farm Work

Of course, he might not work these just as he pleased — plant what he liked and harvest when he would. He had to do what all his fellows did. He had to let his strips in the fallow field lie fallow when his neighbors planned. On his strips in the oat field, too, he had to plant oats; and in the wheat field,



THE OX-PLOW

wheat; as other men wished. Moreover, he had to plow when his fellows plowed, plant when his fellows planted, and harvest when his fellows harvested. For it needed four oxen to pull a plow, and in clay soil eight;



PLAN OF A MANOR

Showing the three fields divided into strips. The black strips are those belonging to one villain

and no poor man could own as many as that, with plows and carts besides. So one man furnished a plow, three or four others an ox apiece, another perhaps two oxen. One day one man held the plow, and another drove the oxen, while their fellows dug the drain ditches.

CUTTING GRAIN

Women are doing the work with hand sickles.

When harvest time came, they all went together to the great field, each to his own strip. The wives and children, too, were there, every one with a little sickle in his hand. So the big patchwork field was dotted over with moving figures, bending and swaying, and with crisscross rows of standing grain and fallen grain. At rest time several families came together, I suppose, in

STACKING THE SHEAVES

friendly fashion and ate their bread and cheese and shared their cider and ale from the leather jugs. And the children, doubtless, ran to the wild patches between the planted strips and played hide-and-seek among the shrubs, and picked daisies and made chains.

When the grain was all cut, the workers raked it up with hand rakes and bound it into sheaves. Then one lent his cart with its heavy wooden wheels, another lent his two oxen to draw it, the harvesters piled it high with bundles and hauled it to the big barn. There they spread the wheat thinly over the floor and with wooden flails beat out the grain from the heads. Then they raked it into piles and with fans blew away the chaff and straw. After that every man came with the woolen sacks his wife had woven, and claimed his share of the grain, according to the amount of land he held.

Some one has called these manors "little islands of cultivation in a great waste," for western Europe was thinly peopled in those days. All about the manor lay a sea of untilled land. Perhaps it was wild forest where the lord might hunt, where the peasants' pigs might feed, where the tenants might get wood for their fires and lumber for their building. Or perhaps it was rocky hillsides or rolling moorland where sheep might feed. Perhaps it was marshland where wild hay might be cut or peat taken out for fuel. Whatever it was, it cut off the manor from the rest of the world. For there were few roads made through it, and many robbers lurking in it. Few men, even if their lords had encouraged them to travel, would have chosen to set off on foot through this dangerous wilderness. Besides, they would not have known how far it was to the nearest manor or in what direction it lay.

Isolation of the Manor

Few peasants, therefore, ever trod any soil but that of their own manor, ever saw any methods of work except those of their own fellows. Very seldom, indeed, did they even see anybody that they had not known all their lives. If ever a visiting lord or king's agent, with his dozen armed followers, or trader with his pack-horse, did

ride out of the great forest, it was an exciting day for all the people on the manor, and for months they talked of the visitors' strange ways and strange dress and strange speech.

So the people in one "little island of cultivation" were knit very close together. They had to do almost everything for themselves. They made their own farm tools. They grew their own wheat, and their own lord's miller ground it into flour. They killed their own pigs and smoked their own bacon and hams. They sheared their

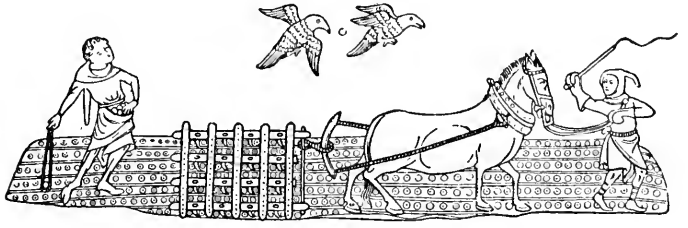
HAULING THE CART-LOAD UPHILL
The horses are hitched tandem

own sheep, spun the wool, wove the yarn, and made their own clothes. Their own lord or his agent held court three times a year in the manor house and heard all complaints and punished all crimes. They went to the church in the heart of the manor, and in the graveyard beside it buried their dead.

Dues and Services

For these farmers were not free men. They belonged to the lord who owned the land. They were not exactly his slaves, for he might not kill them or sell them away from the land, but in all matters they had to obey him. Moreover, they had to work for

him in return for the use of his land and for the protection which he gave them.[1] In the spring they had to go to his field and do his plowing before they did their own. At harvest time they cut his wheat and threshed it. Sometimes they furnished the plows and oxen and carts and sickles; sometimes the lord had his own tools. Each man did much or little, according to the amount of land he used. In fact, just as a great lord loaned out his land to knights and called them to help do his fighting, so a lesser lord loaned his land to common men and called



HARROWING

The medieval artist did not know how to represent the harrow lying flat. A man is slinging stones at the birds

them to do his farm work of all kinds. Besides that, just as the knights had to give money to their lords at certain times, so these common people had to give presents to their lords.

For instance, a certain man used about thirty acres of land and in payment had to do the following things for his lord: eighty-two days' work between Michaelmas [September 29th] and June 24th; eleven and a half days' work between June 24th and August 1st; nineteen days' work between August 1st and Michaelmas; six extra days' work with one extra man; one extra day's work with two men for reaping, with food from the lord; half a carriage [this means, I suppose, that he and another

[1] See pages 163 and 215–216.

peasant together furnished a wagon with oxen to haul it] for carrying the wheat; half a carriage for the hay; the plowing and harrowing of an acre; one day's harrowing of oat land; one horse load of wood; making one-quarter [1] of malt and drying it; one day's work at washing and shearing sheep; one day's hoeing; one day's nutting; three days' mowing; one day's work in carrying to the stack; help once a year at the lord's will.

A certain other man used only a tiny spot of ground in front of his house, and owed only "one day's work on Monday in every week unless a festival prevents him, one hen at Christmas, and five eggs at Easter." Some men were especially good carpenters or blacksmiths and paid for their land by repairing the wooden carts, harrows, and plow frames, by making horseshoes, or by keeping the plowshares and scythes and hoes in order.

Besides all these regular dues, the lords made many special demands. If a man's daughter married, he had to make a present to the lord. If his son wished to go to school, he had to buy the lord's permission. If a pig was killed, the lord had to have his share. A man might not grind his own wheat in his own little hand mill, but had to take it to the lord's mill and pay toll for the work. Indeed a villain, or peasant, could hardly turn over his hand without having to pay.

As a result of all these dues the peasants were very poor, and their lives were hard and unlovely. Their houses were mean little things of wood, with only one room and a dirt floor. At night the family climbed a ladder to a loft under the thatched roof and slept in their day clothes on piles of straw. In the room below was very little furniture — a table on sawhorses, a chest or two, a few stools,

Hard Lives of the Peasants

[1] Eight bushels.

a brass pot, some wooden bowls, a loom for weaving. A little fire burned on the floor, with no chimney but only a hole in the roof to carry off the smoke. Even in the long winter nights the family went to bed at dark, for candles were costly.

Their food would seem poor to us. There were no sweet cakes or puddings, little fresh fruit, and few green vegetables. Fish and peas, or pork and cabbage, were thrown into a pot and boiled and set on the table in one dish. Every one used his fingers or a piece of bread to handle his food.

In 1362 there was a common people's poet in England, — William Langland, himself a poor man. This is the picture he gives of

"the poor in the cottage,
Charged with a crew of children and with a landlord's rent.
What they win by their spinning to make their porridge with,
Milk and meal, to satisfy the babes —
The babes that continually cry for food —
This they must spend on the rent of their houses,
Ay, and themselves suffer with hunger,
With woe in winter rising a-nights,
In the narrow room to rock the cradle,
Carding, combing, clouting, washing, rubbing, winding, and peeling of rushes.
Pitiful is it to read the cottage women's woe,
Ay, and many another that puts a good face on it,
Ashamed to beg, ashamed to let neighbors know
All that they need, noontide and evening.
Many the children and nought but a man's hands
To clothe and feed them; and few pennies come in,
And many mouths to eat the pennies up."

In some countries the lord had the right to punish his villains almost as he would, — to fine them, to brand

them with red-hot iron, to cut off their hands, to take their land from them and turn them out of their homes. And some landlords there were who served their people in this way.

The Struggle for Freedom

But if the lord was just and kind, his villains might prosper. They might buy their sons' freedom, send them to school, and make priests of them. They might pay money to the lord for rent, instead of taking two days out of the week to do his work while their own fields lay neglected. They might even buy his permission to leave their land, to go to a town or to another manor and work there for wages as free men. No lord could claim work or gifts from these men or could punish them in his court.

Freedom of this sort was the highest ambition of every villain. But it was a difficult thing to gain. Life was so hard that few men could save enough to buy freedom. Sometimes they tried to gain it by running away through the forest to some other place. If such a man was not caught within a year and a day the law declared that he should be a free man and that his lord had no right to him. But generally he was found before the year was out. Then he was taken back to his old manor, was whipped and branded, and was worse off than before.

"The Great Revolt"

Once the common people of England banded together against their lords and tried to gain freedom by force of arms. Froissart tells the story of this "Great Revolt." He was a lover of nobles and a scorner of the common people, yet even as he tells the tale we can see that this was a brave, desperate attempt to get the people's just rights. It is as inspiring a story as that of the gaining of the Great Charter, but a sadder one, because in spite of its justice and in spite of men's earnestness, it failed.

Froissart says: "It is customary in England, as well as in several other countries, for the nobility to have great privileges over the common people; that is to say, the lower orders are bound by law to plow the lands of the gentry, to harvest their grain, to carry it home to the barn, to thrash and winnow it. They are also bound to harvest and carry home the hay. All these services the prelates and gentlemen exact of their inferiors; and in the counties of Kent, Essex, Sussex, and Bedford, these services are more oppressive than in other parts of the kingdom. In consequence of this the evil-disposed in these districts began to murmur, saying, that in the beginning of the world there were no slaves, and that no one ought to be treated as such, unless he had committed treason against his lord, as Lucifer had done against God; but they had done no such thing, for they were neither angels nor spirits, but men formed after the same likeness as these lords who treated them as beasts. This they would bear no longer; they were determined to be free, and if they labored or did any work, they would be paid for it.

THRESHING WITH FLAILS

"A crazy priest in the county of Kent, called John Ball, who for his absurd preaching had thrice been confined in prison by the archbishop of Canterbury, was greatly instrumental in exciting these rebellious ideas. Every Sunday after mass, as the people were coming out of church, this John Ball was accustomed to assemble a

crowd around him in the market-place and preach to them. On such occasions he would say, 'My good friends, matters cannot go on well in England until all things shall be in common; when there shall be neither vassals nor lords; when the lords shall be no more masters than ourselves. How ill they behave to us! For what reason do they thus hold us in bondage? Are we not all descended from the same parents, Adam and Eve? And what can they show, or what reason can they give, why they should be more masters than ourselves? They are clothed in velvet and rich stuffs, ornamented with ermine and other furs, while we are forced to wear poor clothing. They have wines, spices, and fine bread, while we have only rye and the refuse of straw; and when we drink, it must be water. They have handsome seats and manors, while we must brave the wind and rain in our labors in the field; and it is by our labor they have wherewith to support their pomp. We are called slaves, and if we do not perform our service we are beaten, and we have no sovereign to whom we can complain or who would be willing to hear us. Let us go to the king [Richard II, great-great-great-grandson of King John] and remonstrate with him; he is young, and from him we may obtain a favorable answer, and if not we must ourselves seek to amend our condition.'

"With such language as this did John Ball harangue the people of his village every Sunday after mass. The archbishop, on being informed of it, had him arrested and imprisoned for two or three months by way of punishment; but the moment he was out of prison, he returned to his former course. Many in the city of London, envious of the rich and noble, having heard of John Ball's preaching, said among themselves that the country was badly governed, and that the nobility had seized upon

all the gold and silver. These wicked Londoners, therefore, began to assemble in parties, and to show signs of rebellion; they also invited all those who held like opinions in the adjoining counties to come to London; telling them that they would find the town open to them and the commonalty of the same way of thinking as themselves, and that they would so press the king, that there should no longer be a slave in England.

JOHN BALL

"By this means the men of Kent, Essex, Sussex, Bedford, and the adjoining counties, in number about 60,000, were brought to London under command of Wat Tyler, Jack Straw, and John Ball."

That is a wonderful picture, 60,000 poor men in their ragged clothes tramping the roads to London, shouting noble sayings of John Ball: "All men were created equal"; or, "When Adam delved and Eve span, who was then the gentleman?" Some of these men were farmers, and carried hoe or scythe or plowfoot in their hands. Others were blacksmiths with their hammers, or woodcutters with their axes. A few knights, whose hearts were touched by the people's wrongs, went with them on horseback. These crowds set out for London, with their dream of freedom ahead of them. But because they were ignorant, and because their poverty had made them bitter against wealth, they did some wild things on the way. They opened prisons, tore down the houses of rich men whom they hated, and even killed some who were their enemies. When they came to London, the young King Richard would not go out to meet

them at first. So they went through the city streets, burning the houses of lawyers and tax collectors, and king's officers who they thought had wronged them. Moreover, they killed many men of that sort, and cut off their heads and put them on poles which they set up on London Bridge.

But at last the king rode out to meet them in a meadow where they were camped, "saying in a most pleasing manner, 'My good people, I am your king and your lord. What is it you want? What do you wish to say to me?' Those who heard him made answer, 'We wish you to make us free forever. We wish to be no longer called slaves, nor held in bondage.' "

At first the king thought to grant their wish but at last he turned against them, "and a proclamation was made through all the streets, that every person who was not an inhabitant of London and who had not resided there a full year should instantly depart, for if any [others] were found in the city on Sunday morning at sunrise, they would be arrested as traitors to the king and have their heads cut off. . . .

"This proclamation no one dared infringe, but all instantly departed to their houses quite discomfited. John Ball and Jack Straw were found hidden in an old ruin where they had gone, thinking to steal away when things were quiet; but this they were prevented doing, for their own men betrayed them. With this capture the king and his barons were much pleased, and had their heads cut off, as was that of Tyler, and fixed on London Bridge." After that the king resolved to visit the country in order to punish the principal rebels throughout England, so upwards of sixteen hundred were beheaded or hanged. The Great Revolt had come to nothing.

Yet we can see that the peasants had progressed since

the early days of the manor. Men who can hold secret meetings, organize an army, and plan a war, are not the ignorant, downtrodden, ununited villains of early times, never setting foot outside of their own manors. Many men, by purchase or escape, had gained freedom, and peasants were beginning to think. This great attempt failed, and so did others like it in France and Germany. But everywhere the slower, quieter ways of gaining freedom went on. Free men working for wages began more and more to take the place of land-bound villains, and the towns grew populous with free workmen.

Townsmen

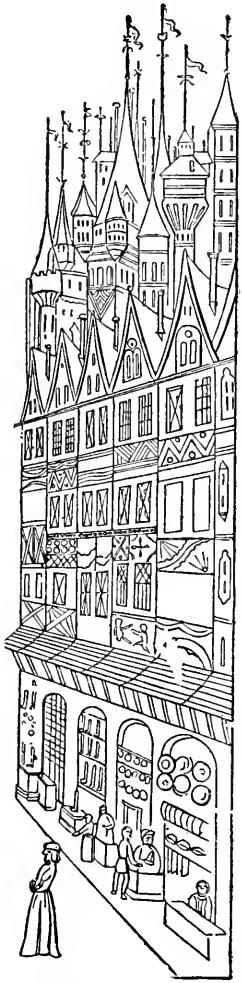
We have seen [1] how villages grew up near the castles, and how large villages or towns grew up in places favorable to trade. Almost all the people who lived in these towns were tradesmen or apprentices who hoped to become tradesmen. Living elbow to elbow inside the city wall, all earning their bread by selling goods, these men felt closely knit together. "Let us join into a society to help one another," they said. "We can thus protect ourselves from dishonest tradesmen in our own town and from foreign traders who come to our gate." So they organized what they called a "gild merchant," or merchants' society.

The Gild Merchant

The law of the gild of Southampton reads: "In the first place, there shall be elected from the gild merchant . . . an alderman, a steward, a chaplain, four skevins, and an usher." These men were "to execute the king's commands . . . and to keep the peace and protect the franchise and to do and keep justice to all persons as well poor as rich, natives or strangers. . . . The common chest shall be in the house of the chief alderman or of

[1] See pages 163, 202–204.

the steward, and the three keys of it shall be lodged with three discreet men . . . who shall loyally take care of the common seal, and the charters and the treasure of the town, and the standards; . . . and nobody shall sell by any kind of measure or weight that is not sealed [that is, inspected and passed by the officers of the gild]. . . ." "And no one of the city of Southampton shall buy anything to sell again in the same city, unless he is of the gild merchant."



MEDIEVAL SHOPS
On the first floor of the houses

Such a gild often grew rich from the dues and gifts of its members and could accomplish much in the fight of the people against the lords. It could buy liberties from the lord of the town and under the charter could establish self-government, with the gild officers acting as the officers of the town and the gildsmen at their meetings making laws for the town and voting money to pave streets and build bridges. Under its rule business prospered, the town grew larger, and many men became wealthy.

Shops

The whole plan of working in these towns of the Middle Ages was different from our plan. There were no great factories where hundreds of men worked at machines. The making and selling were done in a man's own home. Imagine, then, a harness maker's place. On the first floor in the front, coming close to the

street, was a little room where hung bridles and harness for sale. Back of that was a larger room, where work went on. Here two or three boys were cutting the leather or sewing up the harness. Perhaps the master's wife and daughter, too, were at work here. The master went about among his boys, telling how the work was to be done, correcting mistakes, giving out material, doing the hardest tasks himself, and going out to the little shop in front when a customer entered.

These boys were his apprentices. Wishing to learn the trade of harness making, they had come here to practice. They had really become members of the master's family and had promised to stay for seven years, to labor at the master's work from morning light to evening dusk, and to obey the master as a father. On his side the master had promised to give his apprentices food and bed, to pay them a small sum per week, to teach them his trade, to watch their morals and their religion, to be a father to them. In the two or three rooms on the second floor of the house these young apprentices lived with the master's family, and perhaps slept in the attic under the steep roof.

Apprentices

So a workman's house was his home and factory and store, all in one. A customer, entering the front door of the little shop to buy, might step back into the workroom to see his leather cut; and might, if he was a friend, be invited to go upstairs to the living room for a mug of ale, after the sale was made.

One little family shop like this could not make much harness, and so a large town would have perhaps twenty such places. All these harness makers came to feel that they could carry on their business better if they met and made plans together. The gild merchant did not satisfy them.

Craft Gilds and Gild Laws

There were men of all trades in it. It was more interested in the governing of the town and in the management of markets than in the special problems of the harness makers.

So these workers formed a new gild just for themselves. Soon every craft followed the example. There were gilds for bakers, tailors, goldsmiths, spurriers, arrow

A Goldsmith's Shop

Jewelry and silver dishes are on the table and hanging from the rod. Piles of money lie on the table. A gentleman is bargaining with the goldsmith. A servant is carrying the purchases already made. A clerk is writing down the sales in a book

makers, and all the rest. Each gild chose officers, built a hall for its meetings, levied dues to pay expenses, perhaps decided upon a uniform for all its members, made rules about hours of work, prices, treatment of apprentices, and many other such matters. Best of all, the gilds used their influence to get honest work in their craft and decent behavior among their members.

For example a certain William Peeke, an English tailor, abused his servant — bruised his arm and broke his head. The servant complained to the gild, and the gild made the master pay the servant's doctor's bill and his board for the months while he was recovering, and compelled

him to give the servant a good sum of money besides. Moreover, they fined the master as a member of the gild "for his misbehaving against the craft."

The gild of the makers of spurs had a rule against cheating that read thus: "No one shall cause to be sold or exposed for sale, any manner of old spurs for new ones, or shall garnish them or change them for new ones." This same gild had another rule "that no one of the trade of spurriers shall work longer than from the beginning of the day till curfew . . . , by reason that no man can work so neatly by night as by day. . . . And further many of the said trade are wandering about all day, without working at all at their trade, and then when they have become drunk and frantic, they take to their work to the annoyance of the sick and all their neighborhood, by reason of the broils that arise between them and the strange folks who are dwelling among them. And then they blow up their fires so vigorously that their forges begin all at once to blaze, to the great peril of themselves and all the neighborhood around. . . . By reason thereof, it seems unto them [that is, the officers of the gild], that working by night should be put an end to, in order such false work and such perils to avoid. And therefore the mayor and the aldermen [of the gild] do will, by the assent of the good folks of the said trade, and for the common profit that from henceforth such time for working and such false work made in the trade shall be forbidden." The men who made that rule were working not only for honesty in their trade but for order and decency in their town.

Moreover, the gilds compelled their members to give vacations to their apprentices and to take the same vacations themselves — all Sundays and saints' days and Saturday afternoons, and more than a month at Christmas.

Nor was one member of the gild allowed to try to get a brother member's business away from him by selling at a lower price or by buying up all the material that was for sale or by inviting his brother's customers to his shop or by taking his workmen from him. Indeed, a certain gild had this law: "And if any one of the said trade shall have work in his house that he cannot complete; or if, for want of help, such work shall be in danger of being lost, those of the said trade shall aid him, that so the said work be not lost." This, surely, was a proof of brotherhood.

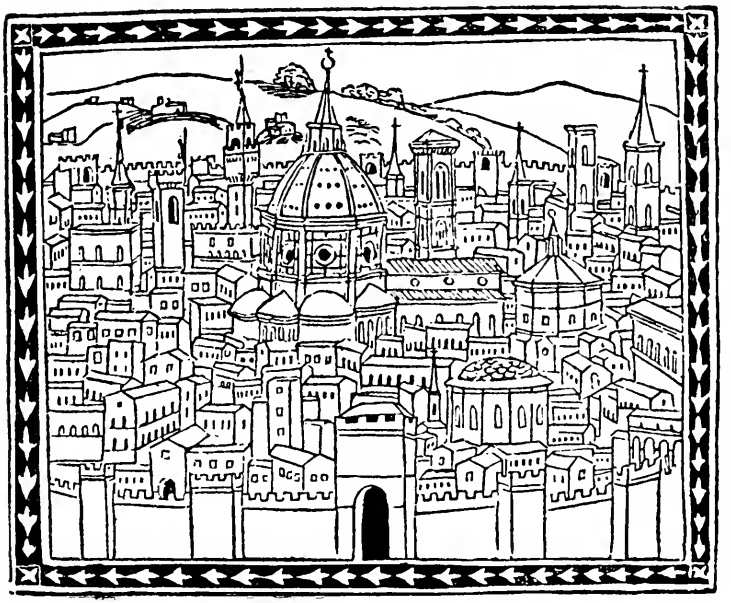
So was another law of this same gild. "If by chance any one of the said trade shall fall into poverty, whether through old age or because he cannot labor or work, and have nothing with which to keep himself, he shall have every week from the [gild] box, seven pence for his support, if he be a man of good repute. And after his decease, if he have a wife, a woman of good repute, she shall have weekly for her support seven pence from the said box, so long as she shall behave herself well and keep single." Almost every gild, in fact, cared lovingly for its sick members and respectfully buried the dead.

But the chief advantages of belonging to a gild were business ones. Each gild usually made it unlawful for any man not a gild member to make or sell any goods inside the town. A blacksmith from another village, for instance, might not bring his goods into a town and offer them for sale. Neither might a baker, or a tailor, or any other tradesman come in from outside and open a shop. The business of the town was saved for its own people and its own gild members. Therefore it paid a spurrier to join the spurriers' gild, a brewer the brewers' gild.

So through all western Europe there grew up free cities, rich and beautiful, with their busy gilds. None of

these was richer, or more beautiful, than was Florence in northern Italy. She was walled, of course, like cities of the time, for she had many jealous enemies. Her men were trained to arms; for she had conquered cities roundabout and needed to hold them to obedience. When the great

Florence, a Free City



AN OLD VIEW OF FLORENCE

Notice the wall all around it. The large dome is that of the cathedral. The low, eight-sided building at its right is the Baptistry. The bell tower is between them. To the left of the cathedral stands the tower of the town hall

bell rang from the tower of the town hall, the people ran to the square ready for war.

Florence was full of rich cloth merchants. They brought brilliant dyes and raw silk from the East. They planted mulberry trees and learned to raise silkworms. They were always experimenting with dyes in order to

find rich, lasting colors. They wove brocaded silks and cloth of gold that were as beautiful and as precious as those which came from far China. They made woolen cloth that was more beautiful than any other city could make. They even took the cloth of Flanders, the great weaving country, colored it with their wonderful dyes, trimmed it, finished it, pressed it, and sent it back twice as valuable as when it came.

Business

The Florentine markets were among the busiest of the world. They were open squares like the market-places of Athens and Rome. Every day they were crowded with tables and benches and little stalls under awnings. Here were all common things

A Corner of a Market in Florence

We see scales like the fish merchant's to-day. The woman who is standing has a string of dried figs over her arm. The woman at the left is spinning with hand spindle and distaff while she waits for customers

from the farms for sale, — flowers, fruit, vegetables, milk, wine, bread, cheese. There were barbers' shops, too,

and doctors' stalls. There was a special market for fish and meats and cattle. Still another was for richer merchants, — goldsmiths, bankers and money lenders, makers of gorgeous silks and embroidered cloths.

But not all the goods of Florentines were on sale in these markets. On every street, tucked into the corners of fine palaces and the lower stories of poor houses, were shops of a hundred sorts, — shops of silk weavers, wool weavers, dyers, armorers, pot makers, blacksmiths, jewelers, bow-and-arrow makers, tanners, saddle makers, shoemakers, carpenters, bakers, ropemakers, glass blowers. And in these shops and in the markets and the gild-halls were the proudest, the richest, the best dressed, and the most honored gentlemen of the city. For after the gilds had become strong, and the traders had grown rich, and the nobles had been put down, no man in Florence was ashamed to be a craftsman or a merchant. Indeed, many noblemen entered trade and became members of gilds.

The people of Florence were educated and brilliant, and they loved learning. "Tailors left their benches, to attend the Greek lecture. Blacksmiths laid aside their hammers for the pen of history, wool carders found time to study law, barbers sought the chair of poetry," and even the donkey boys loved good verses. In fact, the people were lovers of all kinds of beauty, like the Athenians of olden time.

They devotedly loved their city, too, as the Athenians had loved theirs, and they made of Florence a newer Athens. She was one of the great money-centers of Europe, and she was also a center of art and learning. No other city ever had so many great painters and sculptors and builders and writers at one time. About the year 1490 on almost any

Art in Florence

day a visitor to Florence might have counted on her streets five or six artists who were famous the world over.

A Street Corner in Florence

A saint is preaching. Notice how narrow the street is, and the almost blank walls of the houses coming close to it. An old Italian painting

The skilled hands of these artists and the money of these merchants made Florence one of the most beautiful spots in the world. They covered the inside walls of her

churches and her palaces with paintings. They decked her altars and porticoes and fountains with statues. They constructed buildings with dignified fronts as beautiful as a picture. Every street in Florence to-day is material for an artist's pencil.

Suppose, for example, that you were standing in the Cathedral Square. Out near the center of it is the Baptistry, the little church where every child born in Florence during the last 800 years has been baptized. One pair of its bronze doors a sculptor spent forty years in making. They are like a page from some great, marvelous picture book. There is a margin of sculptured flowers and fruit and tiny statues of saints, all cast in bronze. Within this margin are ten bronze reliefs of Bible stories. Every little figure is perfectly modeled. Some of them are drawn in the background in relief. Others stand out in front as little statues. Michael Angelo, a Florentine, and one of the world's greatest artists, once stood gazing at these doors in joy, and he said, "They are so beautiful that they might fittingly stand at the gates of Paradise."

The Baptistry

But the Baptistry, with its wonderful gates, is only one beauty of this square. At the side of it towers a great cathedral with one of the largest domes of the world — the first dome built in western Europe after the days of the Romans, and its maker was a Florentine. Near the corner of this church there rises the bell tower, that has called the Florentines to prayer for six hundred years. It stands high and slender, every inch of it delicately carved, cut through with long, graceful windows, seeming so light that a wind might stir it. Nor is it all of cold, white marble. There are lines of rose color and dark green, and the whole body of white has grown into a rich cream.

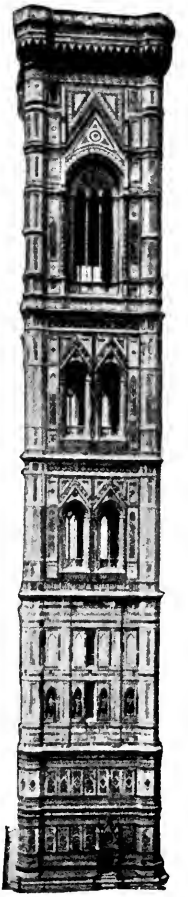
The Bell Tower

The Bronze Doors of the Baptistry

A great Englishman who loved it has said that it is "colored like a morning cloud, and chased like a sea shell." The Florentines, themselves, call it "angel-builded."

One other building may give a hint of the beauties of Florence. It is on a street where in old days were the gild halls and the shops of artists. It is a little square church three stories high, with enough beauty on its four outer walls to feed the hearts of a city. One window alone would make a whole building rich, it is so lovely with columns and interlaced curves and garlands all carved in stone. Between the windows are statues of Christian saints, standing in marble niches, looking down upon the passers-by and reminding them to live holy lives and to love goodness and beauty.

The Church with the Gild Emblems



The Bell Tower

Above every statue, set into the dark stone wall, is a round tile of terra cotta with soft blues and greens and cream, under a shining glaze. Framing every plaque is a modeled and painted garland of fruit and flowers. In one circle is the Madonna with the Child, and the lilies waving beside her. That is the sign that the gild of apothecaries and physicians carried upon its banners. On another plaque are a white lamb and a flying flag, and iris blossoms. That is the mark of the gild of wool weavers. In another circle an eagle spreads his wings and clutches a bale of cloth in his talons. It is the sign of the cloth

merchants. And so over every niche is the coat of arms of one of the great gilds of Florence. For it was they who helped to build this church and who gave these statues in token of their worship of God and their love of Florence. Indeed, just across the narrow lane from

THE ARMS OF THE APOTHECARIES AND PHYSICIANS

the church is the gild house of the wool weavers, where they held their meetings and where their officers lived.

This little church of Or San Michele, the "gates of Paradise," the bell tower, and the great cathedral, are only four out of hundreds of beautiful things that make old

Florence lovely. There are churches, their walls bright with marvelous pictures of Christ and angels and saints. There are palaces with beautiful fountains and staircases in their courtyards. Around the sides of open squares are porticoes, their columns gracefully shaped, and bright plaques of terra cotta set into their walls. There are statues in churches and piazzas. A lifetime is not too long for becoming acquainted with the beauties of Florence.

And this was not the only city of Europe where all the people loved beauty, where men were eager to give money to make their city lovely, where artists were willing to spend many years upon a single statue or altar or crucifix. All Europe is still full of churches, palaces, pictures, statues, that were made in this blossoming time of art. And this age of beauty, remember, is also the age of the gilds. Many of the loveliest cities were the ones where the gilds were strongest, the free cities who gloried in their independence.

Traders

The way in which trading was carried on in those days differed from our way. For one thing it was much more difficult to send goods from place to place. **Travel** There were no railroads, there were not even stage-coaches. Moreover, the roads were poor and unfit for wheeled wagons. There were no continuous streams of goods flowing to and fro across the country, as there are now. In seaport towns people could buy many kinds of strange things from far-off shores, brought by ships. But in inland places people had to be content with little.

Now and then peddlers visited them, bringing foreign goods in packs on their own backs or on horses. **Peddlers** They were welcomed at castles and spread out their stock in the courtyard for servant lasses and

lads and the rough soldiers to buy. Sometimes they were invited into the ladies' bower to show their goods to gentler eyes. They went through the street of a peasant village, calling out their wares in some such song as this:

Will you buy any tape,
Or lace for your cape,
My dainty duck, my dear-a?
Any silk, any thread,
Any toys for your head,
Of the newest and finest, finest wear-a?

But by the time a piece of leather from Spain had traveled in a ship for three or four months, lain in a merchants' storehouse in a German seaport, and been packed along dangerous country roads to a village a hundred miles inland, it was too expensive for a poor cobbler or harness maker to buy. So most men had to use only the things produced around their own town, except for the salt and the pepper and the spices, which could be found only in far countries, and they were much more expensive than they are to-day.

These peddlers were only merchants on a small scale. Greater traders also had to carry goods sometimes from town to town. They, too, had to pack them on horses, and themselves rode with the pack train. For the sake of safety they always went in large companies and even hired strong, warlike fellows to go with them to protect the train against robbers. This land travel was a slow way, a costly way, and a dangerous way.

It was better, whenever it was possible, to go by flat-boats on rivers. There was no expense of buying and feeding horses, and it was possible sometimes to escape from enemies by keeping to the middle of the river. Yet there was danger from river pirates, from robber barons

LANDING AT A SEAPORT

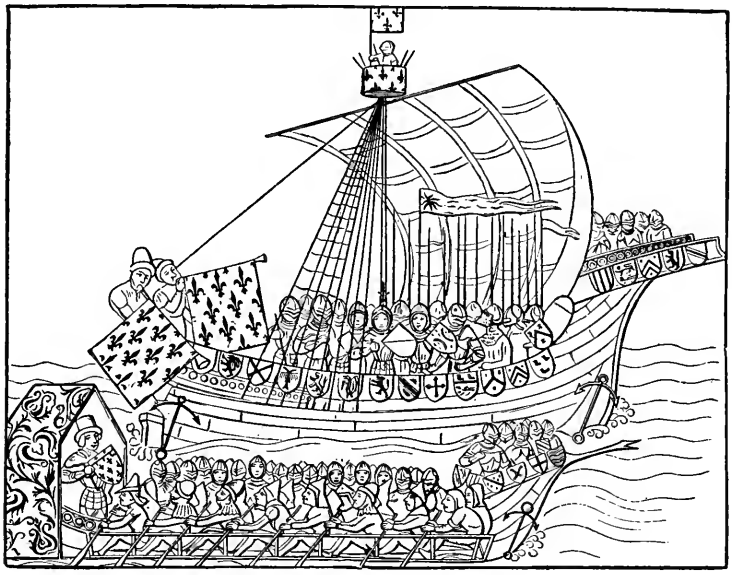
As they land, strangers must pay toll to the coast guard. Notice the docks

whose castles lay on the banks, and from accidents of upsetting. There were, too, river tolls to pay at every ford and every bridge. Little wonder that prices were high!

The best way of all to travel was on the sea. Of course, there were storms, but boats had improved since

Viking days.[1] The ship of earlier times had been a great rowboat with a temporary sail. The vessel that medieval merchants used was a ship with one, two, or even three high masts. It needed a crew of thirty or forty men to work it. It had a real rudder, while the Vikings and Greeks had used an oar for

Ships



MERCHANT SHIPS CARRYING SOLDIERS

Notice the crow's nest on the mast. The ship nearer us is a galley. The rowers sit in galleries built on outside the vessel. The artist has drawn the men too large for the ships

steering. The ship was perhaps a hundred feet long and would carry hundreds of men, if need was. At bow and stern were decked spaces for shelter from storm and cold. All the central part was undecked — a great open place for storing goods, and it would hold perhaps three hundred tons. This heavy boat could not be drawn up on shore, as

[1] See page 157.

the Vikings and Greeks had done with theirs. She anchored in a bay and sent out rowboats, as our ships do now.

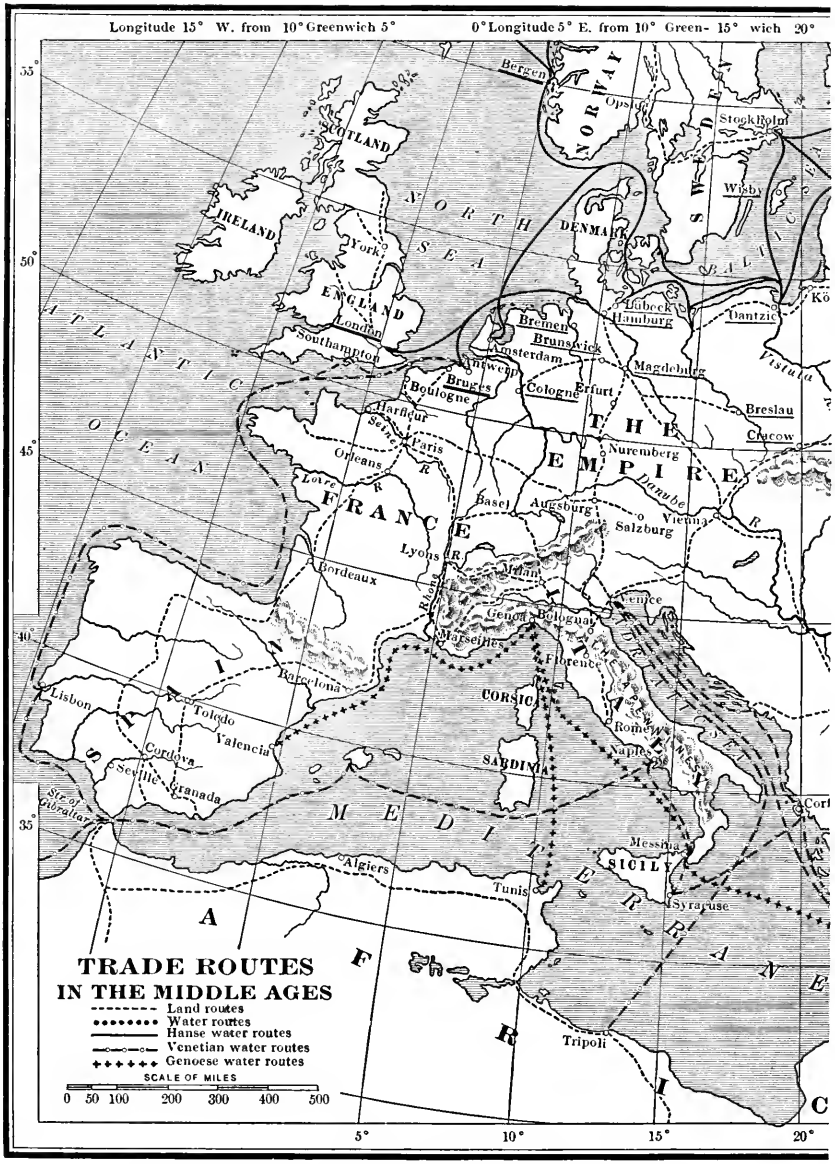
But, even as in Viking days, a vessel had to be both merchant ship and warship, all in one. So in the forward and after ends were platforms with bulwarks about them where men stood to fight. People called these walled platforms castles, and fighting from them was much like fighting from the wall of a stone castle on land. Men used the same weapons — bows and arrows and hurling engines. Near the top of the tall mast, also, was a crow's nest, or fighting-top, where a guard was always stationed to watch for rocks or shoals or, worse still, for pirates; and there, in time of battle, men stood to fight.

Just as the men of a town combined into gilds for the sake of protecting their liberty against their lords, so cities often banded together for the same reason, with the added purpose of helping trade and protecting their traders against pirates. One of the strongest of these associations was the "Hanseatic League." Germany was a distracted country after the days of Frederick II.[1] There was no emperor, or rather there were two or three at a time, all fighting for possession and caring nothing for the safety and prosperity of their people. There were pirates on the sea and robbers on the country roads and no warships or armies to hold them in check.

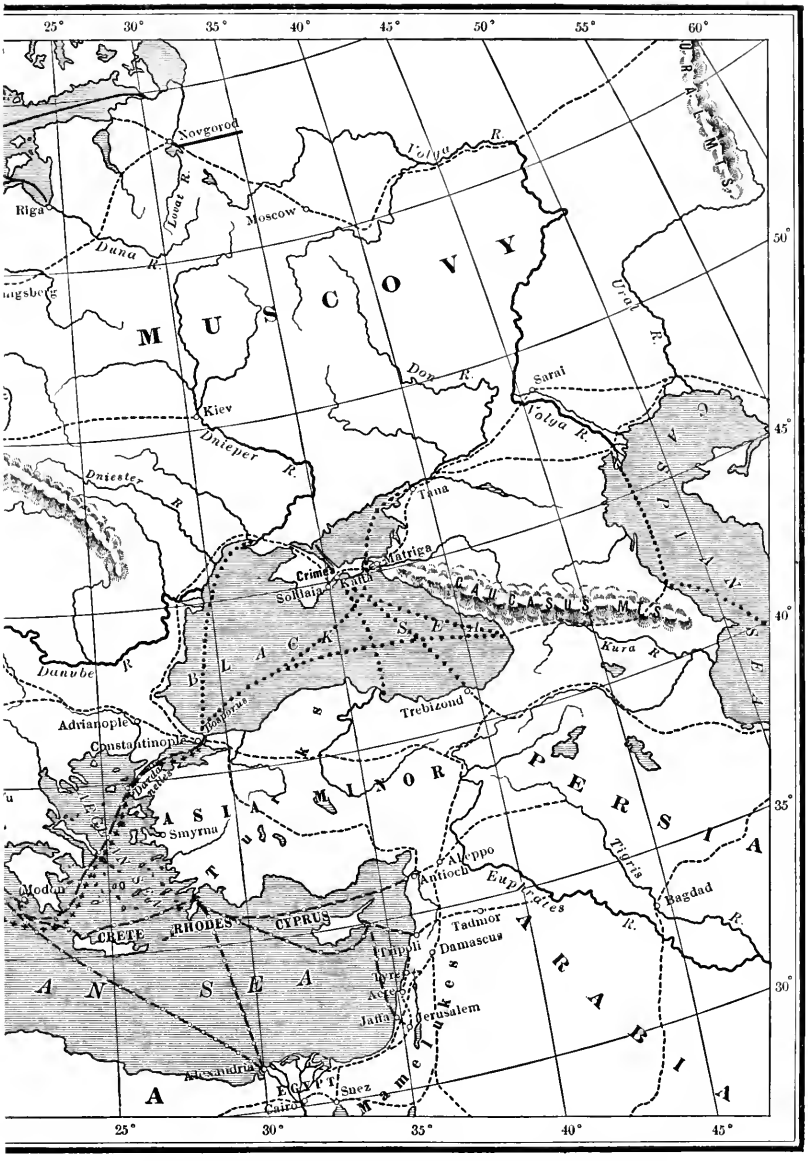
Hanseatic League

Many of the German cities were filled with craftsmen and merchants and gilds, just as Florence was. They wished to trade with the ruder nations around the Baltic Sea, — Russians and Poles and the Viking races of Denmark and Sweden and Norway. These peoples were only beginning to make things for themselves. They were, consequently, eager to buy, and it was profitable to trade with them.

[1] See page 173.



Cities with names underlined are important Hanseatic towns.



Those heavily underlined are foreign Hanseatic factories.

Therefore, since the government could not protect them, the trading cities of Germany and the neighboring countries banded together into the Hanseatic League. At one time more than eighty towns belonged to it. Men were elected from the gilds of each place to go to a congress in one of the cities. Here they decided what share of money each town was to contribute to the League, they elected officers, ordered ships to be built, hired horsemen to police the roads between their cities, made laws to govern their merchants in foreign lands. Their ships sailed to and fro across the Baltic, carrying to the towns of Sweden and Norway and Denmark and Russia the cloth and jewelry and leather goods made by German craftsmen, and bringing back the furs, pitch, lumber, amber, tallow, fish, iron, copper, tar, and salt of the North.

Sometimes a trading expedition was turned into a war against pirates. Sometimes, too, the ships of the League were not welcome in a foreign city. Often the native merchants were jealous of the newcomers and rose up and drove them out and even burned the storehouses where their goods were. In cases like this, the men of the League often made war upon the unfriendly city. In towns where the native merchants had already formed gilds, these gilds sometimes made it very unpleasant and difficult for the visitors. The foreigners were taxed for whatever they bought or sold, and certain things they were not allowed to sell at all. They might not remain longer than the town gild was willing to have them. They were forced to live with some gildsmen of the town who could keep an eye on them.

But gradually the League begged a privilege here and bought one there and fought for one in another place. And as they grew stronger, their ships more numerous,

their cashbox fuller, no people dared insult them, for they answered with war. They even declared war against kings and won. So in some cities they were given land and were allowed to build storehouses for their goods, dwellings for their merchants, a hall for their meetings, a dock for their ships.

The greatest of these factories, as they were called, were at Novgorod in Russia, Bergen in Sweden, London in England, and Bruges in Flanders. At these factories officers and merchants of the League lived all the year round, dwelling together like brothers, eating at the same table, all going to bed at a given signal, doing business and playing games together. These Hanse men were the real lords of some of the foreign towns where they had posts. In Bergen, for instance, there were three thousand of them, and they owned the city, allowing the natives to live only where the Hanse willed, and not permitting them to own ships or to go to sea.

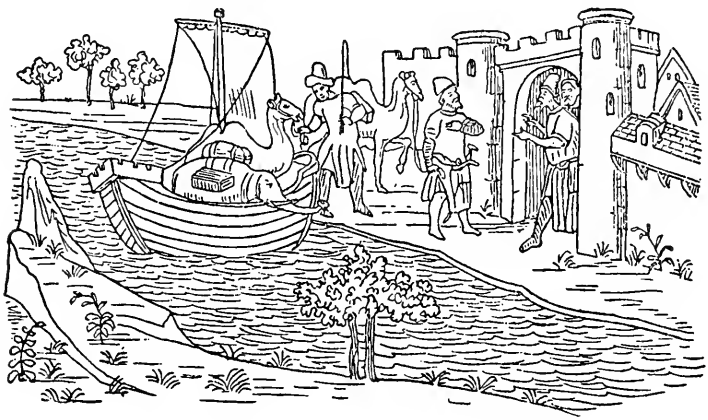
The cities that they honored grew great and rich from the business that the League brought. Moreover, the goods and the manners and the knowledge of cultured Europe went in the Hanseatic ships to the less cultured lands of the North. These Hanse traders did for Scandinavia and Russia what the old Greek traders had done for Italy and France.

European traders covered not only all of Europe, but the African and Asiatic shores of the Mediterranean, besides. The Hanseatic towns took care of most of the northern trading. From Russia and Scandinavia they brought down largely useful things, and most people, of course, had to be satisfied with these. But the wealthy people — nobles and bishops and the monks in rich monasteries — hungered also for beautiful things.

Now, the place where people were most trained in making things of beauty was the East. There was western Asia, that Alexander long ago had conquered.[1] Here he had found Persians dressed in gorgeous red and purple and golden embroidery and bathing their hands in golden bowls. Here he had found the king's army tent sweet with perfumes and burning incense. During the hundreds of years since Alexander the country had kept all its gorgeousness.

The East

There was Arabia, too, with its rose gardens and silk tapestries and delicate wines and heavy perfumes and rare



Traders Landing at an Eastern Town

fruits, — oranges, peaches, pears, pomegranates. Behind that was India, a land of gold and silk and carved ivory, of great temples, rich with statues of marble and bronze. For India even then was the home of an old race, who had been writing books and building palaces when even the Greeks had been a half-civilized people. And there were the islands of the sea beyond India, where grew rare spices for preserving food, — cloves, pepper, cinnamon, allspice,

[1] See page 63.

nutmegs, — and choice woods for making beautiful crosses and altars and tables. Sweet-smelling things they had, also, to make perfumes for the toilet of elegant nobles and ladies, and incense to burn before holy altars in churches. And yet farther away, in the dim East, was China, from which came embroidered silk and costly carvings and precious gems.

Everything, indeed, that was gorgeous and rare and costly came to Europe from Asia, and she seemed to the men of medieval France and Italy and Spain and Germany and England like a real fairyland, filled with beauty and richness and magic. One of these Eastern lands is thus described by a medieval author, in a letter which its king himself is supposed to write. The description is not true, doubtless, but it shows what Europeans of the time thought of the East.

"Over the gables of our palace," the king is supposed to say, "are two golden apples, in each of which are two carbuncles, so that the gold may shine by day and the carbuncles by night. . . . The [doors] are of ebony, the windows are of crystal. The tables are partly of gold, partly of amethyst, and the columns supporting the tables are partly of ivory, partly of amethyst."

Trade with the East

How to get the riches of this wonderful world of the East into the West was the great problem of medieval merchants. Between these Eastern peoples who wanted to sell and the Western peoples who wanted to buy were thousands of miles of land, with steep mountains, cold, barren plains, and dry, hot deserts; with unknown tribes that hated strangers. From Germany to China, or even from Italy to India, was too long a way and too strange a way for merchants to go. But the East was as eager to sell and buy as the West was. So each people brought their goods half the way.

There were different routes of travel from the East. One of them ended at Novgorod in northern Russia.

Northern Route

Chinese merchants who lived near the Hoang-Ho River put their bundles into slow river boats and rowed them or perhaps sailed them upstream as far as they could go. There they sold them, perhaps, to other merchants, who packed them upon horses and carried them by land for hundreds of miles to the Irtish River. Here perhaps a Western merchant bought them, loaded them again into boats, and floated them downstream toward the northwest. But where the river made a sharp turn northward into barren lands that border the Arctic Sea, he stopped and sold his goods to another man, who packed them across land to the Kama River. Here they were sold again, perhaps, and went down the Kama to the great Volga and up the Volga as far as boat could go. Perhaps here they changed hands again, went overland to the Lovat and down this to Novgorod the Great.

But not only Chinese goods had been coming toward Novgorod. With just as many changes from horse or camel to boat and back again, there had been coming, for many months, shawls and fine cotton cloth and diamonds and gold from India, furs from the north country, leather and lumber and beeswax from parts of Russia. And here at Novgorod sat the Hanseatic merchants ready to buy these things, to load them upon river boats, to float them down to the Baltic Sea, to put them into their good ships and carry them to the towns of Germany, Holland, Denmark, Sweden, Norway, England. Moreover, they had brought to sell whatever the West could make — woolen cloth, iron goods, wine, salt.

That fair at Novgorod must have been a wonderful sight. It went on for several weeks in the summer.

There were hundreds of people to visit it. Every inn must have been so crowded that men slept on the floors. Many of the merchants, doubtless, put up tents of cloth or skin or brush and camped on the edge of town. The Hanse traders, perhaps, invited a few of the richest visitors to be their guests in their large, comfortable buildings, where everything could be securely locked at night, inside the stout, high fence, with guards and dogs, to keep all safe. The town was busy with nothing but the great fair. There were a few shops where costly things could be displayed. Some merchants who dealt in precious goods built temporary huts for them. But most things were heaped up on the ground. In one place were hundreds of piles of furs. In another place were bundles of silks. Here were bags of salt. There were piles of German iron. So every kind of thing had its place. Hundreds of merchants walked about among the piles, chattering in a dozen different languages. It was a place where the ends of the earth met.

A Fair

A Fair

There seem to be Chinese characters on two of the parcels. Notice the scales. Another painted glass window

At the same time that goods from northern and central Asia were traveling west and north to Novgorod, other things from southern Asia were taking a shorter journey to

Constantinople or Damascus or Alexandria, — spices from Ceylon, perfume from Arabia, rugs from Persia, pearls and fine weaving from India. And merchants of Venice or of Florence or of Genoa — three trading cities of Italy — met the East at these places and exchanged their goods at great fairs, like the one at Novgorod.

Southern Route

At first the Venetians were the chief of these Italian traders. They were children of the sea. In early times, when their enemies had driven them from the mainland, they had taken refuge on low islands near the coast. Here they had been safe, had grown strong, and had learned to sail the sea, because there was no other way to move about. Since sailors are almost always merchants, these Venetians had become traders. Because they were tucked away on the eastern side of Italy, it was the eastern end of the Mediterranean which interested them. Their ships went to the rich cities of Cairo and Constantinople and the other ports of Asia Minor and Egypt. Their merchants were welcome at these places, for they brought European woolen cloth and European money.

Venice

Moreover, the Venetians had made friends in the East by giving help in time of war. The Greek emperor at Constantinople made a treaty with them, granting their merchants the right to "buy and sell in all parts of the Greek empire unmolested by agents of the custom-houses, finances, and harbors. The latter were forbidden to inspect their goods, or to subject them to any tax whatsoever."

So the Venetian merchants built storehouses and dwellings for themselves in the busiest Eastern towns. Along the shores of Greece and Egypt and Asia was many a little Venice with its rich merchants, its ships

going and coming, its storehouses, and its own governor, sent over from the mother city. They were like the colonies and trading posts of old Greek days, and like the Hanse settlements at Novgorod and other northern towns. From these Eastern posts the Venetian merchants carried silk, cotton, indigo, camphor, pearls, diamonds, gold, ivory, pepper, ginger, cinnamon, allspice.

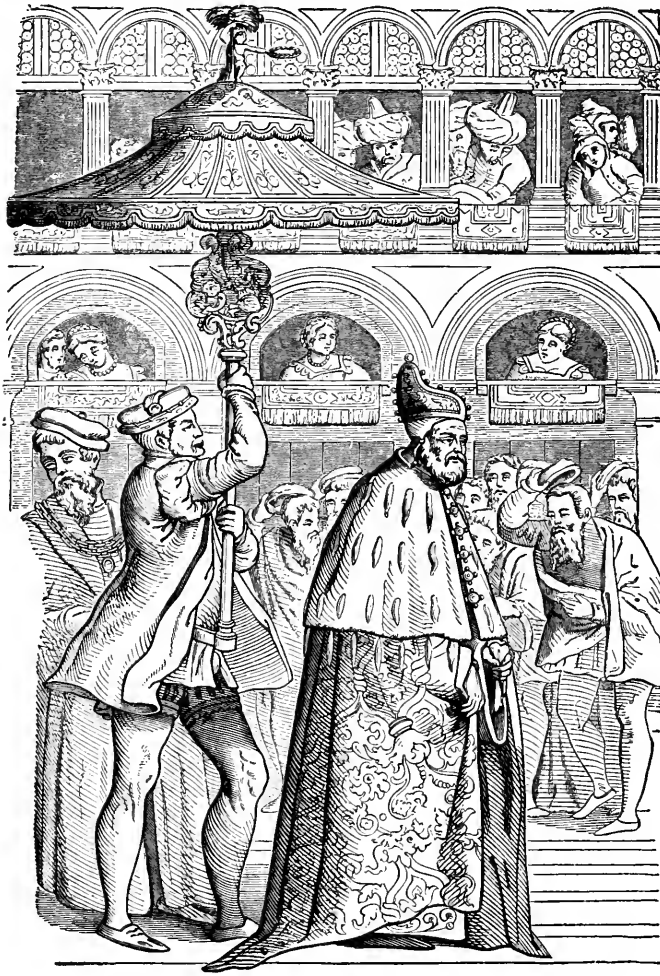
All these things were taken to Venice, but there was more than Venice could use. So from here the busy traders carried them to other places. Every year a fleet of Venetian ships, even larger and stronger than the Hanse ships, sailed west through the Strait of Gibraltar, rounded Spain, and went on to England and Flanders. Here, at fairs much like the one at Novgorod, they met Hanse merchants and other men from the north countries and traded goods with them. When the ships again reached Venice, after a year's absence, they brought to her English wool and tin, Russian furs and leather, German iron and amber, Swedish copper and tar and pitch.

So Venice became Queen of the Adriatic and of the eastern Mediterranean. She won islands in the Ægean Sea and strips of coast along the Adriatic and thus built up a little empire for herself. At home she had beautiful palaces and churches like those of Florence. She had two hundred ships of war.

Each year her governor, or Doge, was rowed out to sea in a vessel decked with hangings of silk and embroidery from the East. With him were great nobles and merchants of Venice in long glistening robes, dyed with the purples and reds and blues that their ships had brought from far lands. Behind the vessel came all the boats and gondolas of Venice crowded with her people. Priests sang, and one prayed, "Grant, O Lord, that this sea may be

Wedding of the Adriatic

to us, and to all who sail upon it, tranquil and quiet. Hear us, good Lord." Then the Doge threw into the



THE DOGE OF VENICE GOING IN PROCESSION THROUGH THE CITY

This picture was made in the sixteenth century. Fashions in clothes had changed since 1300. Men from the East looking from the windows show the great Eastern trade of Venice. The Doge's costly robes and the gorgeous parasol show the wealth of the city

sea a ring like a wedding ring, and cried, "We espouse thee, O sea, in token of our just and everlasting union." Thus did proud Venice proclaim that she was the favorite of the sea, and the ruler of it.

Most of this carrying and selling of rich goods, both in the North and the South, was done by men of common blood. To be sure, Frederick II had a fleet of merchant ships and sent them out to the East to buy, and to bring back goods to the West for sale.[1] But in general, princes and nobles still felt that any business, except the business of war, was unworthy of gentlemen. So they sat in their castles or rode on their war-horses, encased in their armor and their pride, while merchants about them grew rich from their travels and their buying and selling.

Rich Traders

But did this mean that all the common people were lifted up out of poverty into comfort? Did it mean that there were no longer any "poor in the cottage, charged with a crew of children and with a landlord's rent"?[2] Did it mean that every man in a free town belonged to a powerful gild and had the privilege of helping to make the city laws? By no means. It meant that half the common people, perhaps, had stepped up out of their slavery and poverty, some of them to a place only a little below princes.

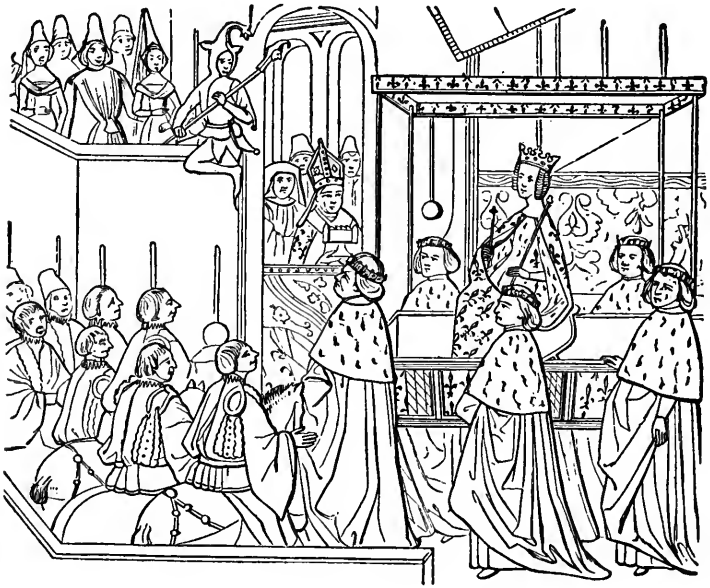
A new class had been formed. There were now not only the noble, proud of his blood, and the peasant, proud of nothing; but there was the rich man, proud of his riches. A certain German merchant "sat upon a silver seat, and had his rooms hung with costly [tapestry]. When he married, he, like a royal personage, caused the road from his house to the church to be overspread with a Flanders carpet, while musicians played, day and night, before his door." But these rich men, though they were

[1] See page 169.

[1] See page 257.

of common blood, were no more friends to the poor man than the nobles were.

It was the gilds who had been the best helpers of the poor man in his fight against his lord, but soon they



MERCHANTS WELCOMING A QUEEN

She is being carried to the Gate of Paris. There a bishop awaits her while ladies and a jester look down from the wall. Wealthy merchants on horseback line the streets to do her honor, and are themselves honored by being present

deserted him and set up a new master over him. For almost every gild, as it grew old and powerful, grew proud and narrow and hard and forgot its early belief in brotherhood. Its richest members began to change its rules in order to shut out the poor man. It refused to take any new members, perhaps, except the sons of its old members. Or it raised the dues until no poor man could pay them. In this way

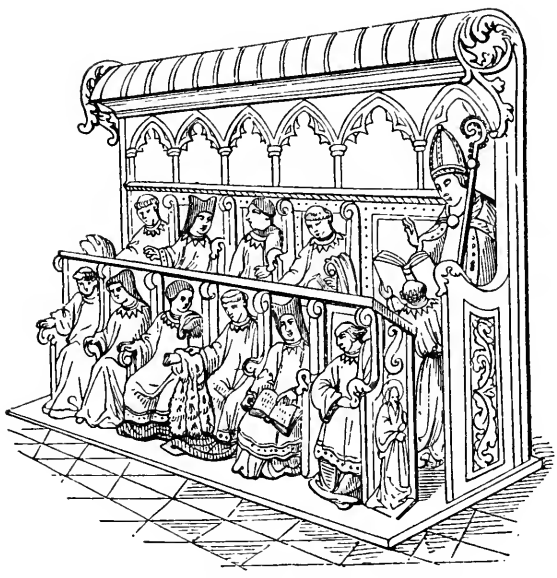
Change in the Gilds

the gilds came to be rich men's societies; and outside of them were the poor weavers, coopers, stonecutters, cobblers, eager to be hired by these richer brothers of their trades. And often they were hired at miserably low wages, so that they lived in poverty and discomfort. An old Florentine writer speaks of "the hatred with which the lower classes always regarded the rich citizens and the heads of the gilds, because the workmen were always dissatisfied with the wage they received." And many broils and much bloodshed this discontent caused in Florence, where the gilds were all-powerful, — the gilds which had once been poor men's brotherhoods but were now the poor men's hard masters.

The same thing became true of all the great manufacturing and trading cities of Italy, France, Germany, the Netherlands, England. That same struggle between the workers and the men who hire them is still going on to-day. It is one of the old, unsettled questions that we have inherited from the Middle Ages.

---

1. Your grandfathers "rested" their land in the same way that men did in the Middle Ages. Find out whether farmers do it now, and, if not, what they do, instead, to keep their land fertile. **2.** Collect pictures of modern farm implements. Mount them on cardboard and draw beside each one the old-fashioned way of doing the work that the implement does. **3.** Should you rather be an apprentice in a shop like the medieval harness-maker's shop described on page 265 or a worker in a large modern harness factory? Why? **4.** Tell somebody who belongs to a labor union about the old gilds and ask him whether they are at all like the unions and how they are different. **5.** What is the difference between the fairs of the Middle Ages and the county and state fairs that we have now?



MEMBERS OF THE CHOIR SITTING IN THEIR STALLS AT CHURCH

A bishop is reading from a missal which a boy holds. Notice the bishop's cap and his staff, or crosier. It is made like a shepherd's crook, because the bishop is the shepherd of his people

CHAPTER XII

RELIGION IN THE MIDDLE AGES

Christian Missionaries

BY Constantine's time Christianity had become the chief religion of the Roman empire.[1] But that did not satisfy Christians. They wanted it to be the religion of the whole world. With some it was a matter of pride: they longed to see their church the mistress of the world. With many it was a matter of love: they believed that any who were not Christians would suffer after death, and they could not bear that thought. So men kept going out

[1] See page 135.

among the heathen to preach, as Paul and the apostles had done in the beginning,[1] and as men are still doing to-day.

When the fierce Angles and Jutes and Saxons came into England,[2] they still worshiped Woden and Thor. But about six hundred years after Christ, Augustine, a saintly priest, with forty helpers, was sent from Rome to convert these English.[3] The king of Kent, learning that they were come, bade them remain on a certain little island until he should go to meet them.

Augustine in England, 597 A.D.

Bede, an English bishop, who lived a hundred years or more after this time, tells of that meeting in his book. "Some days after, the king came into the island, and sitting in the open air, ordered Augustine and his companions to be brought into his presence, for he had taken precaution that they should not come to him in any house, lest, according to an ancient superstition, if they practised any magical arts, they might impose upon him and so get the better of him. But they came furnished with divine, not with magic virtue, bearing a silver cross for their banner and the image of our Lord and Savior painted on a board; and singing the litany they offered up prayers to the Lord for the eternal salvation both of themselves and of those to whom they were come."

The king allowed them to enter the greatest of his cities and to dwell there. They lived sweetly, praying and preaching; many people were baptized, and presently the king himself. Churches were built, and old temples purified, — the idols destroyed, holy water sprinkled, and altars set up.

Even so, it was long before all England had become Christian. The new religion began in a southern corner and only slowly spread through the whole country. A

[1] See page 130. [2] See page 182. [3] See note on page 187.

hundred years or more after Augustine, however, Christian England herself began to send out missionaries to other lands about her who were yet heathen — to the Swedes and the Danes and the Germans.

One of the greatest of these Christian teachers was Boniface. Many missionaries before him had worked in Germany, and here and there were small churches with little bands of Christians. Yet these were so few and so weak that they were lost in the great heathen mass of the German nation; and Boniface was eager to convert the whole people. Indeed, inside of seventeen years after he began to work, one hundred thousand people were baptized.

Boniface among the Germans, 716 A.D.

He went about it in a way somewhat different from that in which earlier missionaries had worked. He built churches as the others had done, but instead of settling down with his first church he left it in charge of two or three helpers who had come with him from England, while he pushed on into new places to found new churches. Now, Boniface had seen other new Christians who, left alone in the heathen lands, had sunk back into their old heathen customs. So he planned to bind all his German churches together that they might become a part of a great Christian world, sisters among sisters and all obedient to the same father, the pope.

Church Organization

There was a wonderful family of churches in Europe at that time, all knit together from the lowest priest to the mighty pope. It was done in this way. At every church there were priests to preach, to give communion, to hear the confessions of their people. In some great churches there were many, as well as the priests' assistants with their dif-

Priests and Bishops

ferent duties of singing, of reading the scriptures, of carrying the sacred vessels. One priest was chosen to be head of this company, and a deacon to be in charge of the assistants.

Over all the churches of a certain region ruled a bishop. He received new members, created priests, planned the

A Bishop Ordaining a Priest

services for all his churches, advised all the priests and assistants, and punished them if it became necessary. He visited the churches of his district, or diocese, and he called meetings of his priests to consider church questions. There were about thirty bishops in England and three or four times as many in France and Germany. These

bishops must not stray too far apart, so an archbishop was in charge of ten or twenty of them. He held meetings for discussions and lawmaking.

Standing above all these priests and bishops and archbishops was the pope,[1] whom people regarded as Christ's special representative on earth, supreme ruler of all the church and father of all Christian people. To him bishops and archbishops reported the condition of their priests, their people, their finances. From him they sought advice and took laws. He was the mightiest ruler of the world, and ruled the greatest of all kingdoms — western Christendom. To help him with his work he had cardinals. They assisted when he said mass, they carried his messages to princes and kings, they were ready to advise if he asked them and to do anything that he willed. In order to keep the whole Christian world still more closely linked, the pope held great councils now and then to discuss large matters and to make church laws. To these councils came cardinals, archbishops, bishops, abbots, and even the most learned and wise of the lower priests. Thus the pope, besides being a priest of God, was a mighty lord among men, and in the same way bishops and cardinals were princes and the equals of kings.

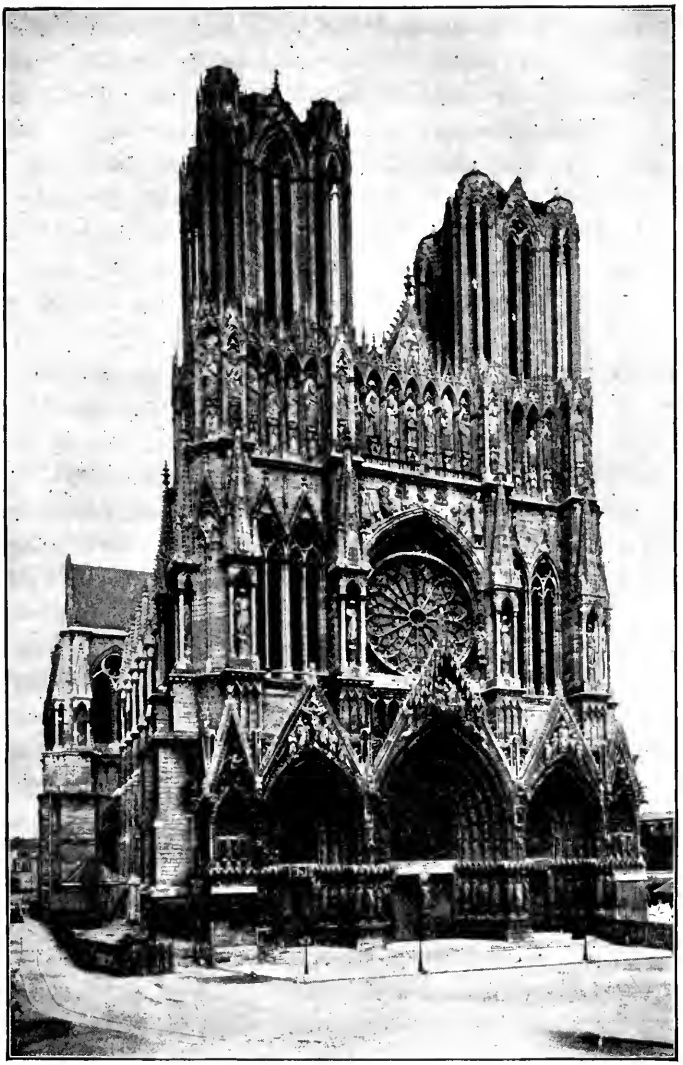
The Pope

It was into this great Christian family that Boniface led his churches, when the pope made him archbishop of all Germany. With the help and encouragement of this wonderful organization the German church prospered and spread.

Monasteries

Another thing that Boniface did for the Germans was to build monasteries among them. Monasteries were wonderful institutions, and this is how they came to be.

[1] See pages 164–165.



A Cathedral of the Middle Ages

Built in the thirteenth century at Rheims, France

Many people of those times felt that the world was wicked or that it was frivolous. A man found that when he lived with his family, his mind was most of the time busy with thoughts of them. If he worked in the world to make his living, his mind was full of business and money affairs. "I want to think only about God," he said to himself. "I must run away from all these things that hold my soul down to the earth. I must forget my business, my family, my body. I must remember only God."

In trying to cut their souls loose from all earthly interests men at first did what seem to some of us strange things. They fled into the deserts and lived alone in caves, thinking there to find time to muse upon God's goodness. They kept themselves awake for many days and nights together, that they might pray continually. They said: "It is our bodies that keep our souls from God. They make us think of food and drink and comfort and pleasure." So they punished their bodies by starving them, by lashing them with whips, by leaving them bare in the cold, and by dressing them in rough, harsh clothes. Some men almost made skeletons of themselves, thinking that in this way their souls would be free to dwell upon thoughts of God.

Benedict and His Rule for Monks, 526 (?) A.D.

Benedict, a young Italian nobleman, was one of these people who fled from men in order to be with God. When he was only fifteen years old he went alone into the bare, desert mountains near Rome. There he found a little gorge with sides so steep that it was almost like a pit. He lived here for three years, only one man knowing where he was. This man visited him sometimes and let down to him a little bread by a rope.

After a while people learned that Benedict was living

a hermit's life there in the mountains, and they came to see him. They found him with wild hair and beard, his thin, weather-beaten body dressed in skins. But they found him full of wisdom, too, and gentleness and holiness. Now that men had discovered him, he left his rocky pit and went back into the world to preach. But his longing soul drew him back again into the wilderness. Yet men kept coming to ask him to teach them and to pray for them; and they begged that they might stay with him. So at last he built there in the mountains twelve houses. And in these lived people who came fleeing from wickedness and seeking goodness.

But after a time there were troubles here, and Benedict with a few followers went away to a new place and built a new monastery where lovers of God might dwell together in the wilderness. Many people came there, poor men and rich, old men and boys, drawn by the great fame of Benedict. He, seeing his home full of brothers, knew that there must be rules to govern so great a family; moreover he had faith that the monastery would live for many years and that others would spring up from seeds sown by him; so he needed to think long and to pray earnestly in making his plans.

The rules which he finally wrote we can still read today. The monks, as they were called, were to live together as brothers. They ate in one great room. They slept in little alcoves or cells opening off one large dormitory. Together they sang and prayed in the chapel. They were to be courteous and kind one to the other. Older monks called the younger ones "brother," and the younger called the older "father." The younger always stood in the presence of the older brother and asked his blessing. The brothers were to live together simply and in loving equality. There were no rich

clothes in the monastery. Every monk wore a long, loose robe of coarse stuff, and a cape with a hood, clean and warm, but poor and homely, giving no temptation to vanity. Nor did the monks have costly food. There were but two meals a day, and these consisted of only bread and vegetables and perhaps fruit and fish or fowl.

A Monk with Gifts for His Monastery

There was no such thing as private wealth in the monastery. Every man when he became a monk put aside his money, giving it to some relative, to the poor, or to the monastery. The rule says: "[The monk] should have absolutely not anything: neither a book nor tables nor a pen, — nothing at all. For indeed it is not allowed to the monks to have their own bodies or wills in their own power. But all things necessary they must expect from the Father of the monastery."

This Father, or abbot, was to be chosen by the monks themselves. He was to rule the great family lovingly, but wisely and firmly. The brothers were to obey him absolutely. Any one who disobeyed him or who broke any of the rules was to be punished: he might not eat at the table with his brothers or go with them into the chapel to pray; he might not speak to them. He might, if the abbot thought best, be whipped; or, if he continued disobedient, he might be expelled from the monastery.

These men had come together for the sake of cleansing their souls and praising God. Seven times during the day they gathered in the church and sang psalms and prayers. The first of these services was at the dawning of the day,

the last after sunset. At midnight, too, the monks arose from their sleep and went to church for prayer. The rule says, "They shall sleep clothed and girt with belts or with ropes. . . . And let the monks be always on the alert." There was a library, too, stored with religious books. These the brothers borrowed and read alone in their little alcoves off the dormitory.

Worship in the Monastery

The monks were to behave always in such a way that their minds and the minds of their brothers would be free to think of great things, not of little. The rule bids them to "speak slowly and without laughter, humbly, with gravity, using few and reasonable words." At meal time all sat without speaking and listened to one who read to them out of some religious book. And after the evening services they sat together again silent, while one read.

An Abbot

But not all the day could be given over to prayer and reading; for, after all, men's bodies must live. Food had to be cooked, floors had to be scrubbed, clothes had to be washed, garments had to be made. At all these tasks the brothers took turns; no work was thought to be mean. A monk who had lived as the son of a duke, perhaps, knelt and scrubbed a floor beside a man who had been his father's villain, and was glad in such a way to serve his brothers.

Work in the Monastery

Nor were these housekeeping tasks all the work that was done. "Idleness is the enemy of the soul," says the rule. "And therefore at fixed times the brothers ought to be occupied in manual labor." So the monastery

THE CROWNING OF THE VIRGIN MARY

An old picture on the wall of a monastery in Florence, painted by a monk called Fra Angelico. Six saints are watching the coronation. The one at the right of the center is St. Francis, wearing the brown dress of the Franciscan order. Facing him is St. Dominic, wearing the black-and-white costume of the Dominicans. Behind him is St. Benedict.

planned work for its monks. There was always the kitchen garden where vegetables for the table were grown. There were sheep to be tended, cows to be fed and milked, and butter and cheese to be made. There

was fuel to be brought from the peat bogs or the forest. There were shoes to be cobbled, chairs to be mended, wooden platters and bowls for the tables to be made. Perhaps there was a vineyard with grapes to be gathered and made into wine. Each brother worked at some manual labor for seven hours each day.

Men found life in the monasteries so cheering to their souls that thousands were built throughout Europe, some with Benedict's rule for their law, others with new rules, but all with the same purpose. Many women, also, felt the call to live holy lives, and convents were built for them, with the same sort of rules and much the same kind of costumes as were found in the monasteries.

Some monasteries were like great workshops, others like great farms. This fact was one of the things that made them good civilizers. Imagine a large monastery built in the forests of Germany, where the people knew little about farming and manufacturing, but were content to live in a wild way in a wild forest. They would see the monks every day at work, cutting down trees, clearing land, draining swamps, plowing, planting, cultivating. They would see growing new crops that they had never seen before, the seed brought by some monk from his own more civilized country. They would see men using tools and making things of which they had never heard before. They would see new breeds of cattle and see them fed and treated in new ways. Moreover, the monks were eager to teach what they knew about farming and industry, and soon their neighbors would be copying their ways, borrowing their seed, buying their cattle, learning the habits of more civilized people.

The monks were not content to teach only these manual arts, nor were their neighbors content to learn only these. They saw the monks reading books, they heard them

sing, they listened to their talk of other lands and peoples and times. They wanted their sons to learn these things also. Therefore the monks opened schools in their monasteries. Here they taught boys to read and write and to speak in Latin. That was the language of learning and of the church. All her prayers and masses and psalms were written in it; for they had been made in the days when the Romans were masters of the world and when all men had spoken their language.

Monastery Schools

A Monk in a Library
Before him is a reading stand

Besides teaching boys how to read and farmers how to do their work better and all men how to live together in peace and love, the monastery did another thing for civilization. The monks liked to have books to read, but books in those days were very rare and precious things. Nowadays printing is a rapid process; 5000 copies of this book that you are reading were printed in 14 days. But in those early times men did not know how to print with type. Every book had to be written by hand.

Book-making in the Monastery

Nor was it written on sheets of paper; for paper is another modern invention. It was done on sheepskin and calfskin. The monks themselves prepared this. They first soaked the hide in limewater to loosen the hair. Then they spread it on boards and cleaned it of the hair and flesh, washed it thoroughly, and stretched it on a frame to dry. After that it had to be pared and thinned

A Picture painted by a Monk in an Old Book

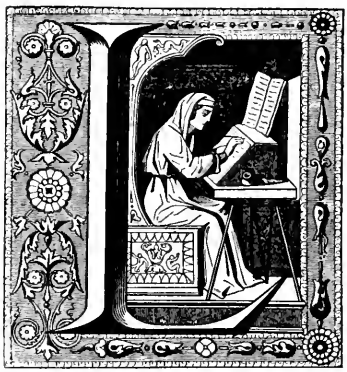
It shows a new baby in Paris about the year 1400. The baby is wrapped in swaddling clothes. Notice the gentlemen's fur-lined cloaks and the soft shoes. These are probably wealthy merchants

with sharp knives and rubbed smooth with pumice and chalk. At last it lay there a beautiful, clean, shining, creamy piece of vellum ready for the writing.

A monk cut it into pieces of the right size for the pages of his new book. Suppose he were going to make a missal

with the words of the mass, from which several brothers might read at once, as they stood shoulder to shoulder in the choir of the church. Perhaps he would cut his pages three feet long and two feet wide. He might need a hundred sheets or more, and it would take a goodly flock of sheep or calves to make such a book.

With these fair, creamy pages he sat down in the library, or the scriptorium, with ink pot and brushes and little sticks of color. Carefully he began to paint on the precious vellum the great, sturdy black letters of the Latin hymns. But he was not content with the gloomy black; the words seemed to him so beautiful that all the time pictures of joy were floating through his mind. And he thought, too, "I must remind my singing brothers of the beauty of God's earth and of His word." So he dipped his brushes into bright colors and made flowers bloom on his page, along the margins and between the lines. And sometimes a spreading letter "Y" took the form of an elm tree with a clambering grape vine laden with fruit. Or angels stepped from the top of the capital "T." When all the pages were done, they were bound between boards made beautiful with silver nails and carved silver corners and clasps. To make such a book needed many months. It was a labor of love; only a lover of the words would have spent the time, and only an artist would have had the power to draw such pages.



INITIAL LETTER FROM AN OLD MANUSCRIPT

In it a monk is shown at work on a book

While one brother was making this missal, perhaps in

the corner of the room another monk was reading slowly from some rare book while six or seven brothers sat near him at writing desks carefully printing the words again on vellum pages. Day after day they worked so, until they had made six or seven new copies of an old book. One of these was sent, perhaps, to the brothers of some friendly monastery who had longed to read the book, yet did not possess it. Perhaps one copy went to some great prince who cared for learning as Charlemagne or Alfred did.

It was such work as this that saved for us until to-day the writings of olden times. When types were invented and we began to make books on printing presses, it was most often to old monasteries that people went to get the matter to be printed. The libraries were full not only of the writings of the church fathers who had lived in the Middle Ages, but they were filled, also, with copies of old Roman and Greek works, for these monks had loved all learning.

Chronicles

And sometimes the brothers did more than merely copy old books; they made new ones. A monk lived perhaps fifty, sixty, or eighty years and died, but his monastery lived on. Some of them have lived through a thousand years of history, have seen kings come and go, wars rage, cities spring up and grow old, gilds flourish and die. In many of them the monks, though sitting apart from the world, yet heard of all these interesting things that happened and thought fit to write them down. At other times, a monk would keep a kind of diary of the happenings inside the monastery — what visitors came, what abbots were elected, what cures were performed, what holy deeds were done. After the death of the writer another continued the diary. Soon it came to seem a precious book, worth keeping and continuing.

It was given a place, perhaps, in the scriptorium, or writing room, and a monk was appointed to write in it all important happenings. Thus a chronicle or history of the time grew, month by month, and was preserved in the library.

Now when we want to learn of a certain time in the Middle Ages, we look in the old monastery chronicles for information and see the very people of the time as the people of the time saw them. In this book that you are reading, I have quoted from several of these old monkish chronicles — from the one by William of Malmesbury, the one by Matthew Paris, and the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.

Monasteries had another use in early days. Remember that roads were few and poor, but robbers were many and bold. There was little travel; yet some men did travel, and on important business, but they found few places where they might spend the night and get their meals. There were inns in towns, but they were crowded and noisy and too far apart for comfortable traveling. So the monasteries felt it their duty to open their gates to guests. They built houses for visitors, and stables for horses; and brothers were appointed to serve the strangers. The abbot himself invited them to his own table.

Guests at the Monasteries

Benedict's rule says: "All guests who come shall be received as though they were Christ; for He himself said, 'I was a stranger and ye took me in.' . . . When, therefore, a guest is announced, the prior or the brothers shall run to meet him with every office of love. And first they shall pray together; and thus they shall be joined together in peace. . . . The abbot shall give water into the hands of his guests; and the abbot as well as the whole congregation shall wash the feet of all guests. . . . Chiefly in the reception of the poor and of the pilgrims

shall care be most anxiously exhibited: for in them Christ is received the more."

Some monasteries became very rich; for many men made presents to them because they loved the monks and because they loved God, and sometimes because they were wicked and hoped in this way to win forgiveness for their sins.

Gifts to the Monasteries

In the reign of William the Conqueror, a certain Thorold made a good gift to the monastery of Croyland, namely his whole manor, with all the buildings and cattle and rents that serfs were paying. "He applied himself with all diligence," the old chronicle says, "to remove his household from the said estate, and then to put his chapel in better condition, and to change the hall into a refectory, the chamber into a dormitory, and the place for exercise into a cloister for the monks. Besides this, he gave to the monks all the beasts of burden in the manor that were suited for the purposes of agriculture, and all the other implements and utensils that were [needed] for cooking, brewing, and baking."

A Gift to the Monastery

We have, moreover, the names of twelve other people who made gifts to Croyland. One of them was a countess, some were knights, others were servants of the king,—his butler, his cook, his messenger. Some of them gave only a few acres of land, others gave hundreds of acres of meadow and marsh and plow land, with churches and mills and houses and poor cottages where villains lived.

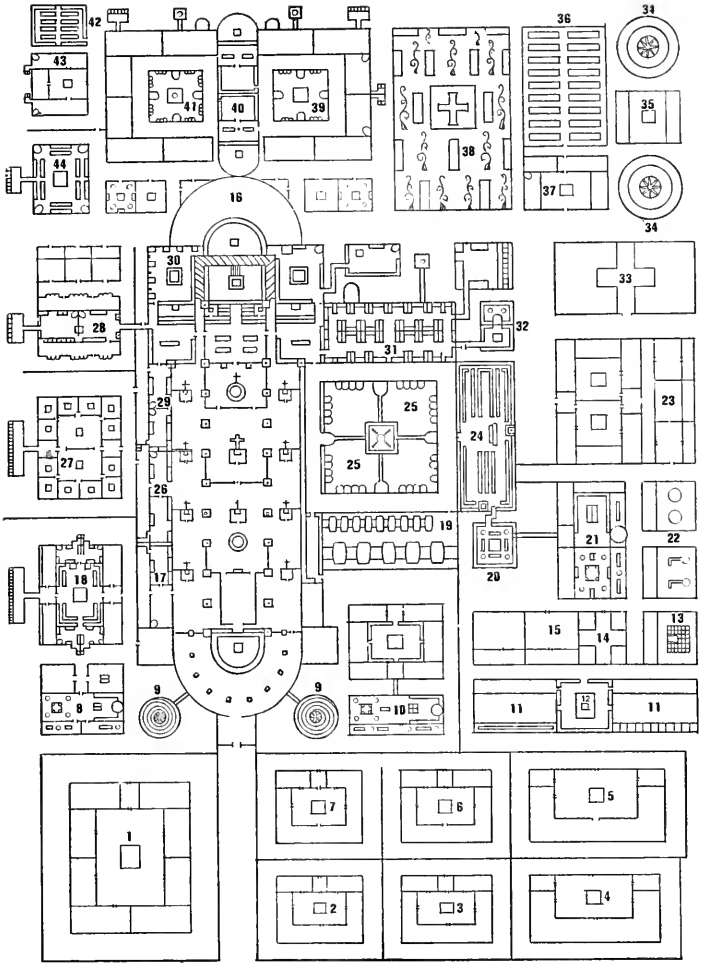
In such ways many monasteries came to own thousands of acres with farms and villages and castles upon them.

Wealth of the Monasteries

The people on these farms and in these villages paid dues to the monastery, as other men did to their lords, and worked the monks' lands, as other peasants worked the lands of their lords. The knights of castles that were built on the lands of the monastery paid homage to the abbot, as other knights did to great dukes, and fought for him if it became necessary. So money and crops came pouring in. Much of this went to help the poor, perhaps; for every monastery had officers appointed to care for the needy, to give them food and clothing, and to tend them if they were sick. Every day at a certain hour the poor came to the gates, and the monks gave out bread and wine. At a certain German monastery the monks gave help to thirty people every day.

But much of this money went to make the monastery beautiful. Perhaps the altar would be covered over with wrought gold. Wonderful golden cups and pitchers and bowls would be bought to be used in the mass. Beautiful windows of stained glass with pictures of Christ and the saints would be put into the chapel. A new church of stone, with carved doorways and a watching statue above, would be built.

A Monastery Cloister
In a California mission



NINTH-CENTURY PLAN OF A MONASTERY (ST. GALL, SWITZERLAND)

1. Large building unmarked on the original plan. 2. Servants' quarters. 3. Pigsty. 4. Stable. 5. Cattle shed. 6. Goat house. 7. Sheep shed. 8. Brew-house and bakehouse for guests. 9. Towers with spiral staircases. 10. Guest house for the poor, with brew-house and bakehouse attached. 11. Another stable. 12. Quarters for servants. 13. House for drying fruits. 14. Storehouse for grain for brewing. 15. Cooper shop and wood-turning shop. 16. Church. 17. Porter's lodge. 18. House for greater guests. 19. Cellar with storehouses above. 20. Kitchen for monks. 21. Brew-house and bakehouse for monks. 22. Buildings with mills. 23. Shops of shoemakers, saddlers, carvers, tanners, goldsmiths, blacksmiths, fullers, shield-makers, and sword-makers. 24. 1st floor, refectory; 2d floor, wardrobe. 25. Garth with cloisters. 26. School-master's lodging. 27. School. 28. Abbot's house. 29. Home of visiting monks. 30. 1st floor, scriptorium; 2d floor, library. 31. Dormitory, heating apparatus on 1st floor. 32. Baths. 33. Granary and threshing floor. 34. Hen-houses and duck houses. 35. Poultry-keeper's house. 36. Kitchen garden. 37. Gardener's house. 38. Cemetery and orchard. 39. House for novices. 40. Chapel for novices and invalids. 41. Infirmary. 42. Garden of medicinal plants. 43. Physician's house. 44. House for blood-letting

Artists would be paid to paint its walls with angels and saints. Strange plants would be bought to be put into the garth, or garden, beside the church. Around this new cloisters, with twisted marble columns, would be built. These were covered walks where the monks would stroll or sit reading or teach their classes of boys.

Imagine yourself wandering through the monastery of St. Gall in Switzerland. If it was really like the wonderful old map that is still preserved, you would have needed a day to visit it. It was almost a village, with more than thirty buildings. Such a great monastery was factory, farm, school, library, and church all combined. There were hundreds like it, greater or smaller, throughout Europe, and they did much during hundreds of years to civilize and educate the people.

St. Gall

Saints and Pilgrimages

Wonderful stories are told about the holiness of some of the Christians of the Middle Ages, especially of the monks. One of them used often to stay on his knees all night praying and weeping over the sufferings of Christ. According to old stories many holy men and women had visions of angels or of Christ or of the Virgin Mary. Some holy men, the old books say, were able by their holiness to perform miracles, to cure sickness by touching the ill person with their hands, to heal a wound by a kiss, to put out a fire by prayer, to tame wild beasts by speaking to them, and to raise the dead to life.

Holy Lives

A beautiful story is told of Francis, a saintly man of Italy. One day as he was going along a road, "he lifted up his eyes and beheld some trees hard by the road whereon sat a great company of birds

St. Francis

well-nigh without number; whereat Saint Francis marveled, and said to his companions: 'Ye shall wait for me here upon the way and I will go to preach unto my little sisters, the birds.' And he went unto the field and began to preach unto the birds that were on the ground: and immediately those that were on the trees flew down to him."

When Saint Francis preached to them, "those birds began all of them to open their beaks, and stretch their necks, and spread their wings, and reverently bend their heads down to the ground, and by their acts and by their songs to show that the holy father gave them joy exceeding great. . . . At the last, having ended the preaching, Saint Francis made over them the sign of the cross, and gave them leave to go away; and thereby all the birds with wondrous singing rose up in the air" and flew away in the shape of the cross that Saint Francis had made over them.

While a holy man of this sort was alive, people almost adored him. They came from great distances to see him. They begged one of his shoes, his girdle, a piece of his robe, as a precious keepsake. There was a power in these things, they thought, to work miracles. When a holy man with such power as this died, people did not cease to love him. They talked of his deeds. They sent to the pope the story of his holy life and of the miracles he had done. Then the pope, after he had examined into his life and found it miraculous, declared him a saint and commanded all Christians to honor him.

Hundreds of holy men and women were made saints and were revered in this way. Benedict was one; Boniface was another; and Francis, and King Louis; and many of the martyrs who had died for their religion in the Roman times; and all the apostles of Christ. Then the

people, thinking of these saints in heaven and believing that they looked down upon the world and loved it, prayed to them and asked them to intercede with God for their sakes.

Even the dead body of such a man was "more valuable than precious stones and finer than refined gold." An old writer says, "Even though the soul is not present, a virtue resides in the body of the saints because of the righteous soul which has for so many years tenanted and used it." So people made a rich tomb all carved and even encrusted with gold, and they took up the body and placed it in that tomb. They built a church around it, and perhaps put an altar over the body or before it, and kept candles always burning there. And those bodies which before death had been able to perform miracles were still able, people thought, to do so after death. By touching the tomb or the chest that contained the bones or even by merely seeing the holy relics, people were cured of sorrow, sickness, and madness.

Shrines

Therefore men were eager to visit these shrines, taking their sorrows, their sins, and their sickness to be cured. Besides, the pope counted it a virtue for a man to visit such holy places. He sometimes promised forgiveness of sins to those who with contrite hearts performed the journey, and priests often commanded some great sinner to make such a pilgrimage to this or that shrine, perhaps walking barefoot all the way, perhaps going on his knees for the last part of the journey.

Pilgrimages

Travel was difficult and slow, but special privileges were given to pilgrims. They were allowed to travel the roads without paying toll as other travelers had to do. They went under the special protection of the

MARCO ANTONII EQVITIS ROMANI
FILIO EX NOBILI ALBERTONVM FAMILIA
CORPORE ANIMO Q INSIGNI
QVI ANNVM AGENS XXX
PESTE INGVINARIA INTERIIT
AN SALVTIS CHRISTIANAE
M CCCC LXXXV DIE XVIII IVNII
HEREDES B M

A Tomb

The body is placed in the wall of the church behind the tombstone. There are scores of such tombs in many old churches. See cut on page 150

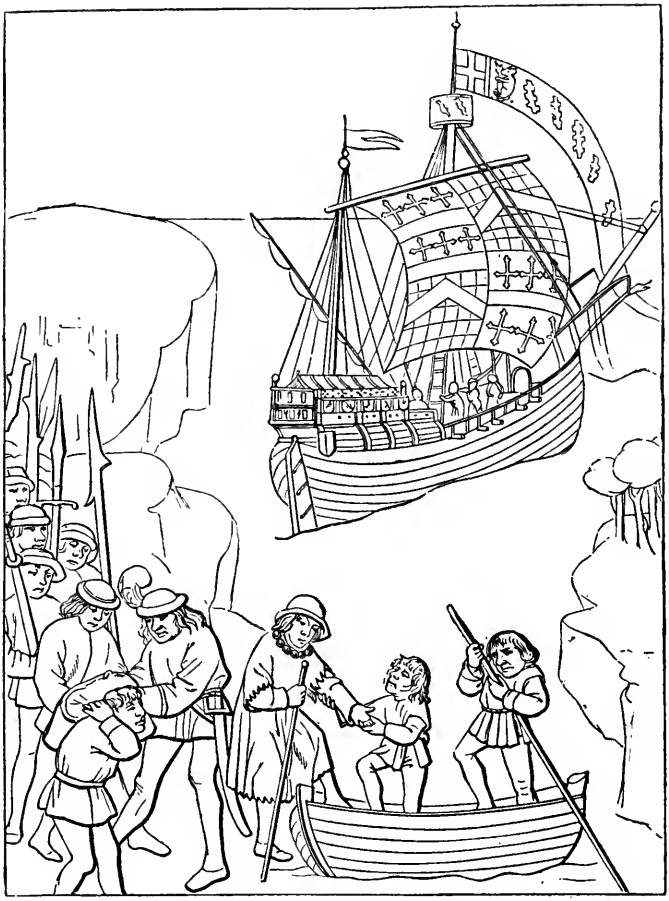
church. Along the roads where they journeyed were houses for their needs, built by religious men and women. Many gilds opened their houses to them, and all the monasteries, of course, were eager to receive them in

Christ's name. Moreover, most people were glad to entertain pilgrims in their homes, for the travelers brought news of strange lands; and, besides, doing a kindness to pilgrims seemed like doing it to Christ or to the saint whose shrine they were going to visit.

Pilgrims, therefore, made themselves known by wearing a certain costume — perhaps a long cape with a hood and a great hat looped up in front. They carried a staff in the hand and a little wallet at the belt for the money and food kind people gave them. So by the help of charity even poor people could make these pilgrimages, and the great shrines were visited by thousands from all corners of Europe.

A Pilgrim

In one year more than two thousand pilgrims from England alone visited Compostella in Spain. Many of these had traveled through France on foot, begging for bed and bread as they went. Some did this from need, but others because they thought by this poverty and humility to please God. So people of fame and wealth sometimes walked and begged in the pilgrim costume. Thus did Saint Louis, even though king of France. But others rode on horses or went by ship as far as they could and spent their money as they went, staying at inns when there were any, buying at the markets, and giving alms to the poor pilgrims. So where the great shrines were and the great crowds of pilgrims, there came to be great fairs and prosperous cities. Business hung to the skirts of religion.



A Great Noble Goes on a Pilgrimage

The ship is too large to come to shore. It anchors and sends its boat. Notice the two masts, crow's nest, roofed cabin, and embroidered or painted sails

But of all the holy places of the world, the most holy, of course, was Jerusalem, where Christ had lived and died. Men longed to see the Jordan river, where he had been baptized, the garden of Gethsemane where he had suffered, the mount where

Pilgrimages to Jerusalem

he had been crucified, the tomb where his body had been placed and from which he had risen to be their Savior. Even people who were not very religious were eager to go to Palestine. Priests thought it was a holy deed to make the long journey. So they promised forgiveness of sins to those who went.

For the men of western Europe it was a journey of two or three thousand miles, and many months were needed to make it. But even so, people went by hundreds. Merchants left their business, knights left their castles, and women their children, to seek Palestine. Some of them went by land through Hungary to Constantinople, across the straits and down to the holy city. Others went in one way or another to some seaport of Italy — Venice, Genoa, Brindisi, Pisa. There they took ship and were carried along the Mediterranean to Jaffa or to Acre.

Even in this easy way they had to spend a long time. Saewulf, a merchant of England, who made the pilgrimage in 1100, says that he was thirteen weeks voyaging from Italy to Jaffa. And then the journey was not at an end. "We went up from Jaffa," he says, "to the city of Jerusalem, a journey of two days, by a mountainous road, very rough and dangerous on account of the Saracens, who lie in wait in the caves of the mountains to surprise the Christians."

Mohammedanism, the New Religion in Asia

Who were these Saracens who robbed the Christian pilgrims? The answer to this is a long story. Christianity had begun in Palestine, a little land of Asia. Six hundred years after the birth of Christ another great religion was born, and this also in Asia. Arabia was a country of dry deserts and rich oases and fertile coast lands, a country

Mohammed and His Religion

of camels and perfumes and jewels and gold mines. It was in this land that the new religion began, and Mohammed, an Arab, was the father of it. He had visions, he said, in which an angel appeared to him carrying silken scrolls written over with messages from God. These messages Mohammed at the angel's command read aloud and remembered. Then he recited them to his family and his neighbors and preached on the meaning of them. At first few people would listen. Indeed, Mohammed and his handful of followers were driven out of his own city of Mecca. But another town, Medina, received them, and many of its people were converted. From that time the new religion spread rapidly, so that before its prophet died, most of Arabia was Mohammedan. 622 A.D.

One reason for its rapid growth was that Mohammed had noble things to say. He saw men worshiping idols and believing in many gods. Against such beliefs he cried, "Your God is one God. There is no God but Him the most merciful." Moreover, this God whom Mohammed preached was a God of love. "By the brightness of the morning; and by the night, when it groweth dark: thy Lord hath not forsaken thee, neither doth He hate thee. Verily the life to come shall be better for thee than this present life: and thy Lord shall give thee a reward wherewith thou shalt be well pleased. Did He not find thee an orphan, and hath He not taken care of thee? And did He not find thee wandering in error and hath He not guided thee into the truth? And did He not find thee needy, and hath He not enriched thee? Wherefore oppress not the orphan, neither repulse the beggar: but declare the goodness of the Lord."

People who accepted the new religion were to live good lives. "Whatsoever good ye do, God knoweth it," says

the Koran, the holy book of the Mohammedans, made up of the messages that the angel delivered to Mohammed. In another place it says, "A fair speech and to forgive is better than alms followed by mischief." "Deal not unjustly with others, and ye shall not be dealt with unjustly."

But Mohammed did not preach peace as Christ had done, but rather he preached war against the infidels, for so he called all people not Mohammedans. He wanted to convert all the world to his religion, just as the Christians wanted to do. But his way was to send out, not peaceful missionaries to teach and to preach, but armies to slay and conquer and frighten men into becoming Mohammedans. He said: "The sword is the key of heaven and of hell; a drop of blood shed in the cause of God, a night spent in arms, is of more avail than two months of fasting or prayer. Whosoever falls in battle, his sins are forgiven; at the day of judgment his wounds shall be resplendent as vermilion, and odoriferous as musk; and the loss of his limbs shall be supplied by the wings of angels and cherubim."

The heaven to which the faithful will go, is thus described in the Koran: "They shall dwell in gardens of delight, . . . reposing on couches adorned with gold and precious stones, sitting opposite to one another thereon. Youths which shall continue in their bloom forever, shall go round about to attend them, with goblets and beakers and a cup of flowing wine. . . . And there shall accompany them fair damsels having large black eyes. . . . And [they] shall have their abode among lote trees free from thorns . . . under an extended shade, near a flowing water and amidst fruits in abundance, which shall not fail nor shall be forbidden to be gathered, and they shall repose themselves on lofty beds."

With such a promise as that, is it any wonder that Mohammed's followers were eager to fight and that they fought against any odds as though their lives were worthless? The Arabs were a warlike race and loved fighting for its own sake. So now they set out to conquer and convert the world.

The Mohammedans Conquer a Great Empire

Their neighbors to the north belonged to what was left of the Roman empire. In the West the empire was gone, and the Germans were growing up on its old land. But in the East the throne of Constantine yet stood. He had moved the capital of the empire from Rome and had built a splendid city at the old Greek town of Byzantium, calling it, after himself, Constantinople.[1] In Mohammedan times this Constantinople was still rich and beautiful — her harbor full of ships, her streets busy with traders, her court gay with fine lords and ladies, her libraries filled with learned books and learned men, her generals in command of great armies. She still owned Greece and the country north of it, almost to the Danube, and, besides that, Asia Minor and Palestine and Egypt and some of the northern shore of Africa. In fact the eastern Mediterranean and its lands were hers.[2] So when the Arabs began to press outward, they soon met the armies of this eastern Christian empire.

But those Mohammedans were a new kind of fighters. They were burning with enthusiasm. They were lean and wiry and quick as lizards. They were afraid of nothing and never dreamed of giving up. They fought on horseback and could wheel their flying steeds as quickly as a man could turn. They rode into battle on the run, shouting shrilly their war-cry, "God is God, and Mohammed is his prophet."

[1] See page 145.

[2] See map on page 149.

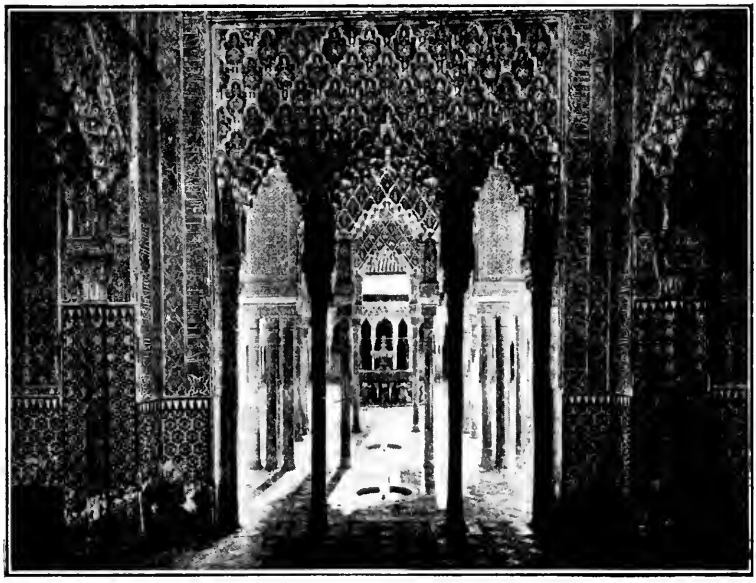
Before this rush of enthusiasm and courage the Eastern empire was not able to hold its outlying provinces. Twelve years after Mohammed's death his followers possessed not only their own Arabia, but Persia, Syria, Palestine, and Egypt. Inside of seventy years they had all northern Africa and were looking across the Strait of Gibraltar at Spain. So far their conquests had been in Asia and Africa. It would be more serious if an Asiatic people and an Asiatic religion should step into Europe. Yet so it happened. In 711 the Saracens, as Europeans called them, crossed over.

The Spaniards whom they met were descendants of those Goths who had followed Adolf over into Spain after Alaric's death.[1] They had become enthusiastic Christians. The nobles were rich, owning thousands of acres of land and hundreds of slaves. They were disloyal to their king and disunited among themselves. They had lost the strength and courage of their ancestors. Twelve thousand Saracens from Africa, under a brave leader, Tarik, met a Spanish army four or five times as large and conquered it. The Gothic hosts — killed, captured, and fleeing — melted away. One city after another opened its gates to the Saracen leaders, so that within two or three years after Tarik's landing, almost all of Spain belonged to the strangers.

So here were the Saracens with an empire more than five thousand miles long, stretching from India to the most western tip of Europe. And no man could tell where Mohammedan rule would stop. Its warriors were brave and active, its cities were growing richer, its people prouder. Now, all this had happened before any great nations had grown up in Europe. The European people were so busy with their own affairs, they traveled so

[1] See page 148.

little and were so ignorant of anything beyond their own eyesight, that they hardly knew of this great Mohammedan empire in the East and South that had grown so magically and that threatened to keep on growing.



A Vista in a Saracen Palace
The Alhambra in Spain

Meanwhile the Saracen people had prospered in body and soul. The upper class, men and women alike, dressed in gorgeous silk robes that hung from neck to toe, and they wore bracelets and necklaces of gold, set with bright gems. The palaces of the wealthy were great rambling buildings with flat roofs and tall, slender towers. The open courts were planted with palms and orange trees and brilliant flowers and were cooled with spraying fountains or with still pools of water. Upon those airy courts opened rich

Mohammedan Life

rooms with delicate columns and arches covered with colored plaster all traced over with finely woven lines in lovely patterns. There were soft, glowing carpets on the floors of mosaic marble, there were deep cushions for lounging, and fountains of perfume playing to scent the air.

Mohammedan Learning

With all these riches went learning also. Arabia and Moorish Spain were much more civilized and learned than were the England of King John or the France of Saint Louis or the Germany of Frederick II, five hundred years later. Indeed, it was from the Moors of Spain and of Sicily that Frederick II got much of that great learning which made him the wonder of the world.[1] The large Saracen cities had libraries, observatories, hospitals. The Spanish Moors had universities long before the rest of Europe, and men who were eager to become really trained in medicine or astronomy or mathematics or chemistry went, not to some Christian city to study, but down into Spain, to Mohammedan Toledo, Cordova, Seville, or Granada.

Even to-day we use Arabic words for ideas, inventions, and products which our ancestors learned from the Arabs — algebra, alcohol, almanac, damask, muslin, sugar, cotton. The first of these words shows the Arabs as great mathematicians; the second proves them chemists; the third, astronomers; the fourth and fifth, fine weavers; the last two, good farmers. It was the Moors who brought into Spain, and so into all Europe, certain products of their warmer climates that seem now like our own — rice, sugar cane, cotton, apricots, peaches, yellow roses, tulips.

These Saracens were traders and merchants, too. They traded "by vessels or caravans with China, from which

[1] See page 169.

they obtained silk, tea, lac, and china; with Calcutta and Sumatra, whence they brought spices, drugs, pearls, and precious stones; with [the remoter parts of] Africa, which supplied them with slaves, ivory, and gold dust; with the country at the north of the Black Sea, which furnished furs and amber."

The Crusades

It was such people as these who had won holy Jerusalem from the Christians and had taken several provinces away from the Eastern empire. Religious men of western Europe regretted most the fact that "infidels" should hold the city of Christ and collect a tax from pilgrims at its gates. Merchants regretted, also, that the Saracens had possession of the great ports where the Christian ships went to trade for the wonderful goods of the East. Christian knights heard tales of the bravery and courtesy and skill of the gentlemen warriors of Arabia and longed to measure swords with them.

The emperor at Constantinople and the other rulers of Europe began to fear lest the Mohammedans should cross the narrow straits between Asia and Europe or pass over the mountains that cut off Spain from France and conquer all Europe and crush out Christianity. Soon the emperor at Constantinople saw the Turks, a new Mohammedan tribe, more fierce and less cultured than the Arabs, capturing his lands and facing him across the straits. Then in 1095 he called to the pope at Rome to help him in keeping the "infidels" out of Europe. The pope's answer was to preach a fiery sermon at a council of churchmen and nobles, urging them to rescue the holy sepulcher from the "infidels."

After this burning sermon the people shouted, "It is the will of God!" and begged for the privilege to go.

Crosses were quickly cut from red cloth, men sewed them to their cloaks as a sign that they had entered upon a holy war — a war of the cross. The pope gave his blessing and a promise of sins forgiven, and a few months later a great army started out across eastern Europe toward Jerusalem.

The First Crusade

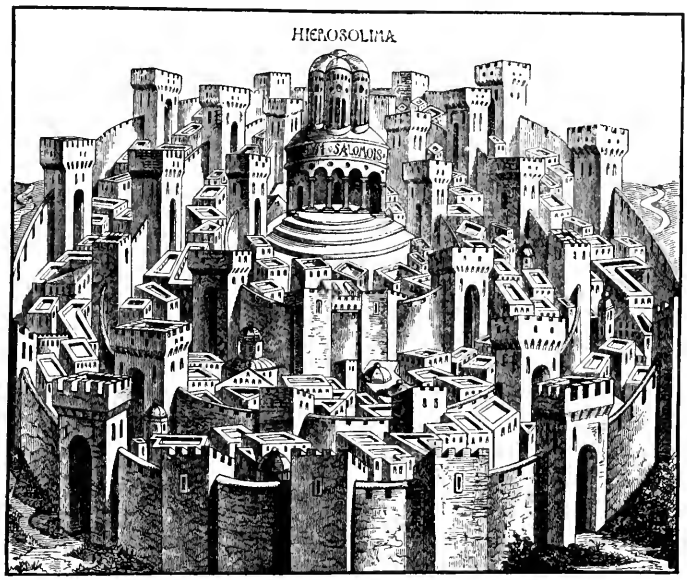
Terrible sufferings and danger beset it. Many died or were captured and sold into slavery or became ill from hunger and weariness and had to drop behind. Yet at last many of the knights and foot-soldiers — perhaps a hundred thousand of them — did arrive in Asia. There were fierce battles with the Mohammedans and long sieges of Mohammedan cities, deaths from honorable wounds received in fights and less glorious deaths from starvation and sickness brought on by the strange climate.

After many trials, however, at last the Christian army, in 1099, did rescue Jerusalem from the Mohammedans. Moreover, it conquered a narrow strip for 500 miles along the coast of Palestine and Syria and divided it into four states, with one or another of the crusaders for ruler, and the Christian knights for garrisons. For about eighty years there were Christian "kings of Jerusalem" ruling the land that King David had once ruled. Here, on the edge of a strange world, these knights of western Europe lived their lives much as they had lived them at home — building castles, holding tournaments, quarreling among themselves, fighting their enemies, ruling their vassals, training their squires to become knights, listening to troubadour songs. Many pilgrims came and went, — common people and princes.

Capture of Jerusalem

Yet, in spite of courage and strength, a little garrison of foreigners could not hold this strip of Holy Land from the warlike hosts that were seething about it. The kingdom was lost and won and lost again. There

was almost constant war. During two hundred years six European kings and scores of great dukes led crusading armies to the East to try to hold the land or regain it for the Christians: yet the crusades were unsuccessful. They did not permanently rescue the sepulcher of



JERUSALEM

Much like any European city except that the temple is at the heart of it

Christ; they did not push the Mohammedans back and keep them out of Europe. Before the two hundred years were quite passed the little Christian kingdoms in Palestine and Syria had vanished, and the Mohammedans had won back every foot of land. Then came the turn of eastern Europe. The Turks crossed over from Asia Minor and at last, in 1453, captured Constantinople and thus put an end to the Roman empire of the East. Old Christian

The Mohammedan Victory

Constantinople is to-day the capital of Mohammedan Turkey.

In another way, however, the crusades accomplished much. The knights of Europe found Mohammedan cavaliers quite as religious and as courteous and as brave as themselves. And they found cities cleaner and pleasanter than their own, with paved streets and flowing water. They saw houses filled with beautiful rugs and cushions, and sweet with perfume and sparkling fountains and furnished with baths. They saw strange plants and animals and new kinds of agriculture; they saw richness of clothing and jewelry that they had only dreamed of.

Results of the Crusades

Hundreds of thousands of common men took the cross, followed the princes and nobles upon these holy wars, and saw the wonderful life of the East. Some of them went back home again, carrying curios with them, and telling marvelous tales about their travels. Every minstrel in Europe tuned his lyre and sang the glorious tale of this or that crusader. In these ways men became acquainted with a different world, with different ways of building, of eating, of dressing, of talking, of worshiping, of thinking, and their minds had to grow to fit this new knowledge.

Moreover, merchants and crusaders went hand in hand, and though the crusaders returned home, the merchants remained and shipped new goods from the East back to Europe. Beside the religious pilgrimages grew up a habit of travel, a curiosity to see the world, a desire to know new peoples. All that great traveling across land and sea and that exchanging of goods between Asia and Europe, all that commerce of the Hanse towns and the cities of Italy which is told of in the chapter before this, was growing up during the time of the crusades. While

King Richard of England was fighting the "infidels" before Jerusalem, the Venetian merchants were living at Acre, near by, and were trading in friendly way with Mohammedan caravans. And that commerce, that love of travel, that exploring spirit, lived on after the crusades had died out.

---

1. Read "Friar Jerome's Beautiful Book," a poem by T. B. Aldrich, the story of the making of an old manuscript book. Draw some of the designs and letters that you think Friar Jerome made. **2.** Choose some beautiful poem or inspiring sentence and print it, using a brush and India ink on parchment paper. Make the initial letters bright and lovely. It will be a good Christmas card. **3.** For a few days keep a chronicle of interesting things that happen in classes or on the playground. What could people of 2400 A.D. learn about the life of our day from reading your chronicle? **4.** What monks came to America in the early days as missionaries? Did they do anything besides preach? **5.** Find out about the Trappist monks in America to-day. **6.** What are the California missions, and who built them? **7.** Mohammedans date events from the year when Mohammed fled from Mecca, and they call the flight the Hejira. That was in 622 A.D. They would say that Charlemagne was crowned 178 years after the Hejira. What number do they give the present year? **8.** What peoples to-day are Mohammedans?

PART III

BEGINNINGS OF OUR OWN TIMES

CHAPTER XIII

GREAT CHANGES

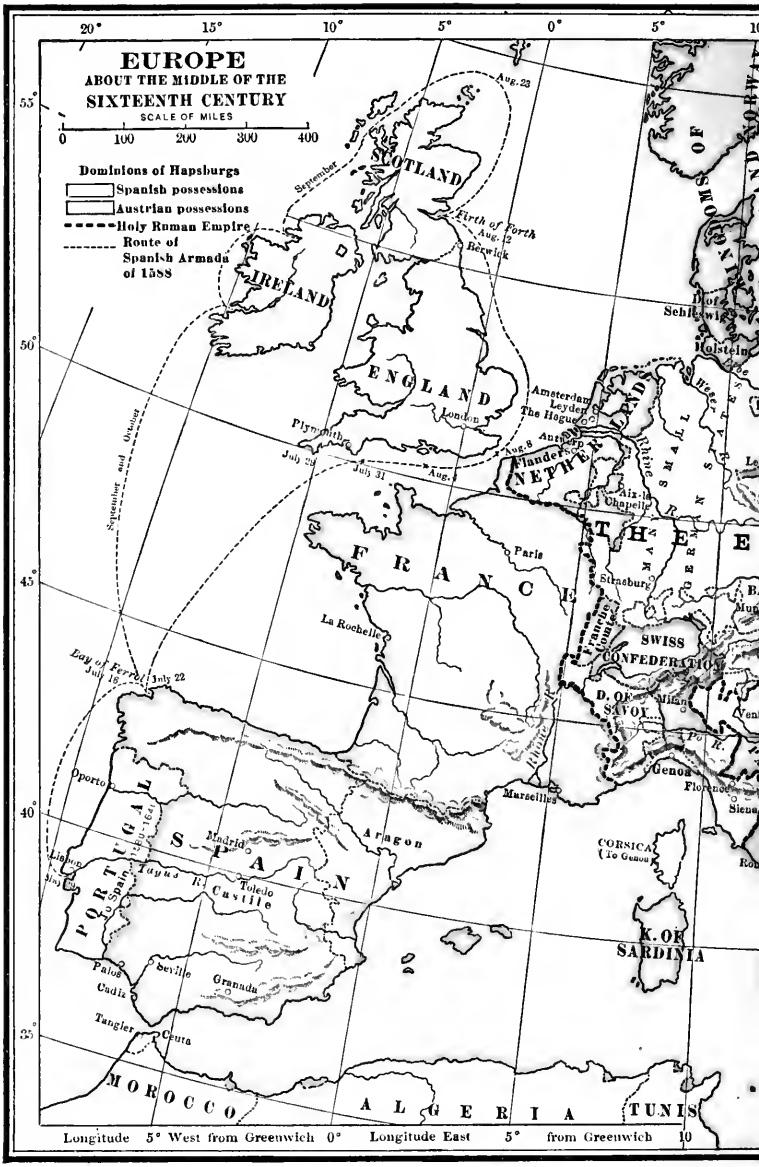
Our modern world is very different from the medieval world. In those earlier times the great lived in stone castles, and the poor were bound to the soil. Only a few men owned land, and most men served some other with plow or sword in payment for the use of a piece of ground. Then books were rare, and the few who could read them were churchmen. Practically all the people of western Europe were members of one church and were obedient to priest and pope.

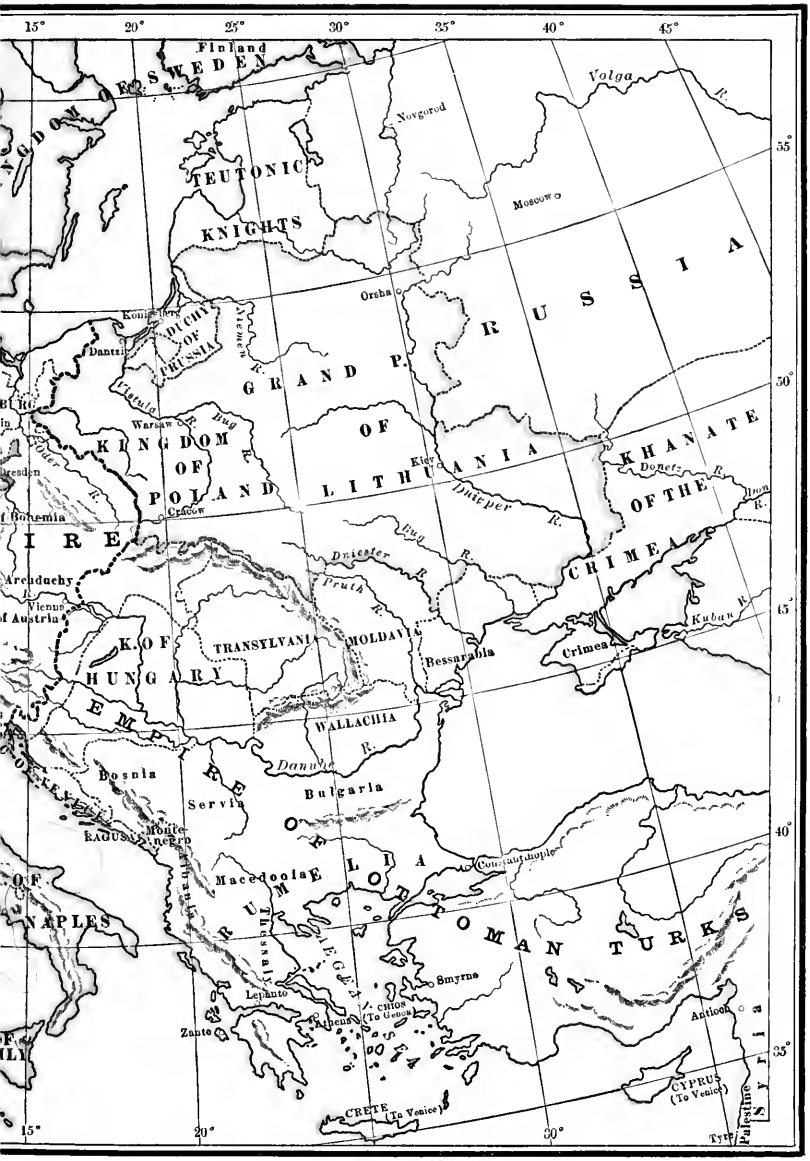
Yet things never stand still, and before the year 1600 many great changes had come about. The invention of gunpowder had changed the style of buildings for the great: smiling palaces were taking the place of grim castles.[1] Professional soldiers with strange firearms had taken the place of steel-clad knights. Most of the serfs were free: they had bought their freedom or had snatched it by running away from their lords.[2] The manors had begun to change: many free workers had come to rent or own little farms.

National States

In many of the countries of western Europe the kings had humbled their great nobles, as Saint Louis had done.[3]

[1] See pages 247–248. [2] See pages 258 and 263. [3] See pages 176–178.


EUROPE
ABOUT THE MIDDLE OF THE
SIXTEENTH CENTURY
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400
Dominions of Hapsburgs
Spanish possessions
Austrian possessions
Holy Roman Empire
Route of Spanish Armada of 1588
SCOTLAND
IRELAND
ENGLAND
FRANCE
SPAIN
PORTUGAL
NETHERLANDS
SWISS CONFEDERATION
D. OF SAVOY
K. OF SARDINIA
CORSICA (To Genoa)
MOROCCO
ALGERIA
TUNIS
Aug. 23
September
Firth of Forth
Aug. 12
Berwick
Plymouth
July 29
July 31
Aug. 4
Aug. 8
Amsterdam
Leyden
The Hague
Antwerp
Flanders
Aix-la-Chapelle
Paris
La Rochelle
Strasburg
Franche Comté
Milan
Genoa
Florence
Marseilles
Rhine R.
Po R.
Bay of Ferrol
July 16
July 22
Oporto
Lisbon
Madrid
Toledo
Castile
Aragon
Tagus R.
Palos
Cadiz
Seville
Granada
Tangier
Ceuta
Sebastian and Ottoboni
Longitude 5° West from Greenwich 0° Longitude East 5° from Greenwich 10


15°
20°
25°
30°
35°
40°
45°
55°
50°
45°
40°
35°
Finland
SWEDEN
Volga R.
Novgorod
TEUTONIC
KNIGHTS
Moscow
RUSSIA
Orsha
Konigsberg
DUCHY OF PRUSSIA
Dantzic
Vistula R.
GRAND D. OF LITHUANIA
Warsaw
Bug R.
KINGDOM OF POLAND
Cracow
Kiev
Dnieper R.
KHANATE OF THE CRIMEA
Donetz R.
Don R.
Dniester R.
Pruth R.
Bohemia
Archduchy of Austria
Vienna
TRANSYLVANIA
MOLDAVIA
Bessarabia
Crimea
Kuban R.
HUNGARY
WALLACHIA
Danube R.
Bosnia
Servia
Bulgaria
RAGUSA
Monte negro
Constantinople
Macedonia
OTTOMAN TURKS
NAPLES
Smyrna
Lepanto
Chios (To Genoa)
Zante
Antioch
CYPRUS (To Venice)
CRETE (To Venice)
Tyre
Palestine
Syria

In the early Middle Ages men had thought of themselves not so much as Englishmen or Frenchmen, but as vassals of this count or that duke. As the king's power increased, however, men came to think less about whose vassals they were, and more and more of the monarch who was strong enough to protect life and property. The kings gained authority over the towns, often by helping them against the greed of their lords. As the king grew stronger the great nobles were less and less able to defy him. Often, too, the king's need of money or of support against the lords led him to ask the aid of the richer common men. Then parliaments began at last to grow, — great assemblies where the king presided and where men from all corners of his realm met to discuss affairs and to make laws.[1] Then all men's eyes and hearts began to turn toward a common center, and in France, England, Spain, and Portugal men began to say: "We are Frenchmen," "We are Englishmen," "We are Spaniards," "We are Portuguese."

The Growth of Kingly Power

SOLDIER WITH AN EARLY FORM OF FIREARM

Notice that he wears no steel armor

The king of such a country, when he was a wise king, felt that the interest of his subjects was his interest. If

[1] See pages 186–187.

his merchants were prosperous, he was prosperous. Therefore he exerted himself to help them, and being much stronger than an old feudal king, he could aid them better. If Englishmen needed permission to trade in a French port or a Russian port, the English king would send an ambassador to the king of France or to the czar of Russia to obtain such a permission. Kings came, moreover, to consider it their business to make laws regulating manufacture and agriculture and the hiring of laborers. They found the old gilds selfish and narrow.[1] Trade and industry, moreover, had grown too broad for gilds and towns to manage. Therefore the kings altered the old rules and made new national laws. Under Queen Elizabeth, England, for example, set the laborer's day at twelve hours in summer, gave justices of the peace the power to fix the legal wages, and regulated contracts between employers and laborers. Gilds were now no longer needed in the old way, and they broke up or served merely to carry out national laws. The national government had an eye to the welfare of the laborer, of the farmer, of the merchant.

The Nation Regulates Trade and Industry

How the World Began to Read

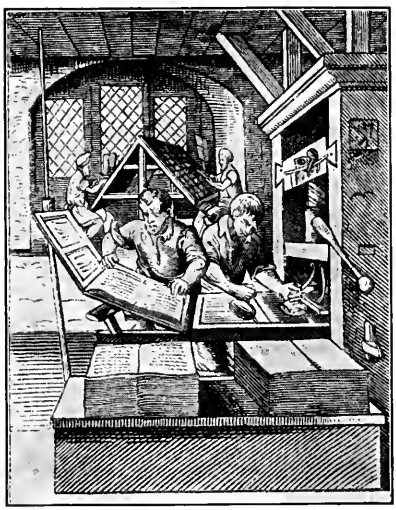
Another great change was in education. Common men in great numbers began to read. This happened as the result of what must at first have seemed like an unimportant invention. Between the years 1445 and 1454 men in Holland and Germany were casting individual letters in metal. By putting these letters together into words and spreading ink over them and pressing paper upon them they could print a page. And the great point was that when a man had the type set up he could in a few minutes make many copies of the matter.

Printing

[1] See page 294.

Therefore a hundred books could be printed almost as quickly as one and almost as cheaply.

You remember how slow a task it had been before this time for a monk to copy a manuscript,[1] and how costly, therefore, books had been. With the movable types and the printing press, however, it was made possible for even poor men to buy books. By 1490 printing presses were busy in almost two hundred cities in western Europe, from Sweden to Sicily and from Constantinople to Portugal. Common people began to learn what the great minds of the past had thought and what the scholars of their own time were talking about. Sailors could buy books of travel, students could get writings on astronomy and medicine and law, and many people had copies of the Bible. The world began to read.



A Printing Office of the Sixteenth Century

In the background men are setting type by hand. Those in front are working at the press

A Change in Religion

A great change occurred, too, in religion. Many people began to question whether the church was perfect. "The priests and the monks," they said, "do not live holy lives. Many of them are wicked men, greedy and pleasure-loving."

The Protestant Revolt

[1] See pages 310–311.

People had been carefully reading their newly printed Bibles, and they began to criticise the beliefs and ceremonies of the church. "The church does many things not taught in the Bible," they said. "It is too rich, too pompous. The ceremonies of the mass are wrong. Pilgrimages, too are mistaken. The priests encourage men to buy pardons to save their dead friends from suffering for their sins. This, too, is wrong. The church needs reforming." Martin Luther in Germany and John Calvin in France and Switzerland were the leaders of this revolt, which soon went to the length of rejecting altogether the authority of the pope. If the revolt succeeded, the universal sway of the old medieval church would be broken.

Martin Luther as a Monk

But most people remained loyal to the church, and they declared that some of the charges were exaggerated or wholly untrue, and that the reformers did not understand the true meaning of the Bible. "And even if there are things wrong with the church," said the loyal Catholics, "it would be wicked and sinful to try to destroy its

ancient unity and authority instead of gradually working to make things better."

There were debates between scholars on church questions. The pope and the emperor held meetings to discuss church matters. Books, both earnest and scornful, were written on both sides. Men grew more and more bitter, and wars arose out of the trouble. Most of the people of southern Europe remained faithful to the church: Italy, Spain, Portugal, France, southern Germany, continued Catholic and are so to-day. Most of the people of northern Europe left the old church and established new ones with slightly changed ceremonies and creeds. There were the Lutheran and Calvinist churches in northern Germany, Holland, Sweden, Norway, and Denmark; the Episcopalian, in England; the Presbyterian, in Scotland. These are still Protestant countries.

But the struggle went on. Every church, new or old, was so certain of being in the right that it had no patience or sympathy with those of another faith. Catholic and Protestant alike condemned liberty of thought and belief and cruelly persecuted each other when they could. It was an age of intolerance.

To the Catholic church the new creeds seemed utterly wrong, and she called them heresies. She fought them with two strong weapons. One was the Society of Jesus, an order of priests somewhat like the old monkish orders. By learning, by eloquent preaching and writing, these devoted Catholics sought to keep the world Catholic. The other great weapon was the Inquisition. This was a body of churchmen whose business it was to root out heresy. They had the right to arrest men, women, and children who were accused of being heretics. They tried these prisoners, and if a man was found guilty, he was punished. Per-

Jesuits and the Inquisition

haps he was only scourged. Perhaps he was sent to the galleys, where he sat chained to the bench and helped to row the great ship. Perhaps he was imprisoned for life. Perhaps, even, he was burned at the stake. During the eighteen years of one Spanish judge's work, more than two thousand people of Spain were burned as heretics.

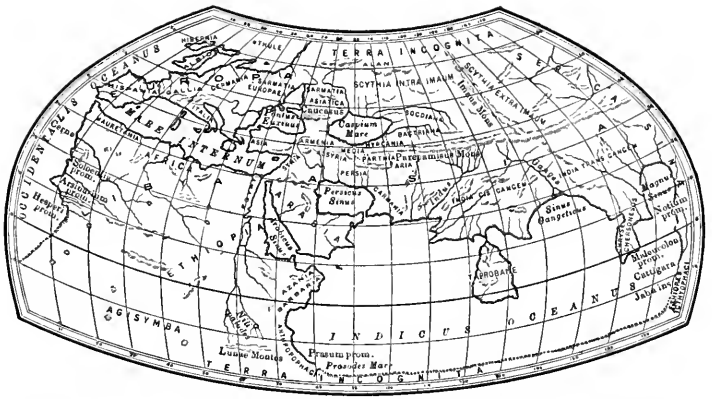
The Catholic Reformation

But not only did Catholics try to root out heresy, they saw the need of correcting things that were wrong and of stating clearly the teachings of the church. Several councils of bishops and great churchmen were held to clear up disputed points, to write out fully the Catholic creed, to make rules for the actions of bishops and priests and monks. Seminaries were established for the teaching of priests. The Jesuits encouraged learning and good habits among churchmen. The Catholic church of to-day has grown from that reformation on the inside, and the various Protestant churches are the result of the reformation on the outside.

Thus by inventions and education, by the changing of manors and gilds, by the curbing of nobles and towns and the uniting of people under strong governments, by the breaking up of the powerful church and the formation of new creeds, Europe was becoming different from the Europe of the Middle Ages; it was becoming modern Europe.

---

1. Suppose all the printing presses were destroyed to-night; what difference would it make in our world? 2. Visit a newspaper printing office. How is the type set? Find out how the early type was set. How is the press run? Find out how the early presses were run. 3. From an almanac find out how many religious sects there are in the United States. 4. French Jesuits went as missionaries to Canada. Find out the names of some of them and learn about their work. One book that will help you is James Baldwin's *Discovery of the Old Northwest.*



A Map of the World Made in Alexandria[1] about 150 A.D.

CHAPTER XIV

SHIPS IN STRANGE SEAS

Changes in religion and education and government were all very important in creating our modern world, but a change more full of story and adventure and quite as important had to do with men's knowledge of geography. To the people of Europe in 1422 the known world was not much larger than it had been to the Greeks. To the Mediterranean countries they had added only northern Europe and a vague knowledge of India and China and Japan. In 1522, a hundred years later, a ship had sailed all the way around the world and so had demonstrated that the earth is a sphere; a sailing route around Africa had been discovered; and men had found the hitherto unknown Americas.

Early Sailors and Their Ways

Sailing the sea is a fairly simple matter if one keeps close to shore and sails over well-known routes. The pilot watches the color of the water and the breaking of

[1] See page 69.

waves for hidden reefs. He sights some object on land and guides his course by it. He judges his speed by noting how long it takes him to go from this well-known cape to that familiar town. When a storm threatens, he makes for a harbor that he knows. Such was the sailing in the Mediterranean in the time of the Greeks and Romans, and such the sailing of the early merchants of Florence and Venice and Genoa.

During the hundreds of years of voyaging over this inland sea, however, sailors invented some very useful aids. Some man — some Arab or Chinaman perhaps: we do not know who he was, or where he lived, or when — found that if he rubbed a needle with a magnet and floated it on a straw in a dish of water, it would faithfully point north. If a pilot was out of sight of land on a cloudy night, without sun or moon or stars to show him direction, this little needle helped him to keep a straight course. So it rapidly grew in importance. Improvements were made in it, Italian traders in Asia carried the invention to the West, and by 1300 every Mediterranean ship had a compass, a neat little box with its bottom marked off with the directions, and with a magnetized needle swinging inside it.

Improvements: 1. Compass

But though a compass might help a pilot to steer a straight course, it could not tell him in what direction to go in order to find a port which he had never seen. Captains, therefore, were glad to have in their crews men who had sailed in different parts of the Mediterranean, that they might serve as pilots. Yet such men were not always to be found. So there grew up the custom of writing out sailing directions and selling them to ships' captains.

They might read somewhat like this, perhaps: "From Naples sail south, past the burning island of Stromboli.

Sixty-three leagues[1] will bring you to the strait between Sicily and Italy. Here the ship is in much danger from the swift tide, which piles up the water in the narrow strait. After rounding the point of Italy lay your course eastward for one hundred leagues, until you sight the Greek island of Zante, where many grapes are grown. From here sail southward, keeping the shore in sight and passing to the left of the island of Strivali, where the monastery is. After turning east around Cape Gallo, hug the shore in order to avoid the winds blowing from the north. But as you approach Cape Malia make a wide sweep to the southward; for this is a most dangerous point, on account of wind and hidden rocks."

2. Sailing Directions

A Sailor's Map of Europe and Africa, Made in 1351

Compare the shape of Africa with that in the map on page 341. Yet this is probably only a guess. Notice how much better the Mediterranean is drawn: this part the sailors knew well

Gradually, instead of writing such directions, men of much travel came to make drawings of the coasts they

[1] The league as here used is the modern English league of three miles.

knew. At last captains could buy charts showing the shores of the whole Mediterranean as experienced sailors had seen them. Think what it means for a man to be able to make such a map. No one person, of course, had sailed along all the thousands of miles of the Mediterranean coast and explored all the harbors. One had gone up and down the west shore of Italy until he knew it well, had measured its distances and noted its directions. Another had done the like on the east coast, another among the Greek islands, yet another had often run the course from Sicily to Egypt. Every one of them, perhaps, could map his own little piece of coast; but in order to put all these together, to know how far apart to draw the two shores of Italy, to know whether Athens was directly east of Rome or somewhat to the south of it — how could any seaman know these things?

3. Maps

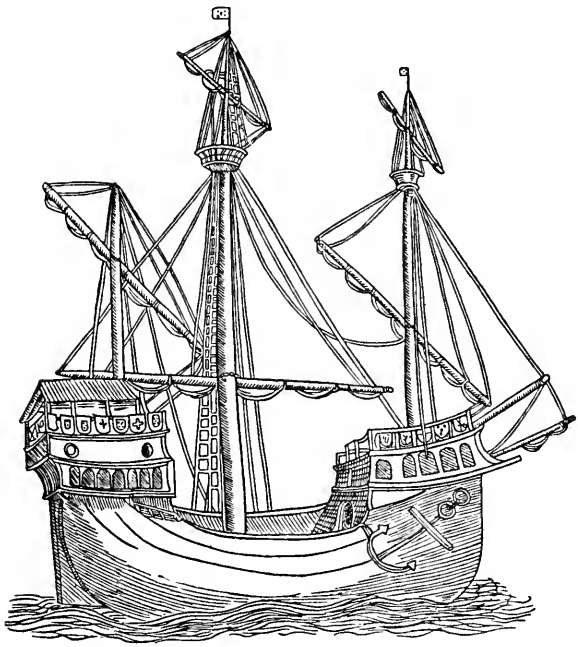
The maker of a map that showed a great stretch of coast, with correct directions and distances, had to be able to find out, when he stood in a certain spot, where he was in relation to some other place, whether north, south, east, or west, and how far in that direction. To help them in doing this the scientists of the Middle Ages had invented an instrument called the astrolabe. They could point it at the north star and at the horizon, and thereby find out how far above the horizon the star was. This told them how far north of the equator they stood.

In drawing their maps they used the plan of lines and cross lines that the geographers of Alexandria had invented.[1] They imagined lines on the earth running from the north pole to the south pole, and other lines running around the earth from east to west and cutting it into spaces much as the lines of longitude and latitude do on our maps to-day.

[1] See pages 48 and 69.

Besides having the compass to direct them, maps to guide them, and the astrolabe to show them their location, Mediterranean sailors had improved their ships. These were larger than those of Greek days and carried three masts instead of one. Each sail was divided, so that parts of it could be reefed in a heavy

4. Ships



A Portuguese Ship

wind and yet other parts remain spread. There were jibs flying over the bow to catch the wind. With all this spread of sail, a ship went very fast.

A German monk who made a pilgrimage to the Holy Land in 1480 wrote a book about his travels. In it he says: "In storms, when the wind is fair and strong, a ship runs violently and with uneasy tossing on its course

with exceeding great swiftness, so fast that an arrow from a catapult or a bow cannot equal the pace of the ship. . . . The wind draws the ship along by its sails with such force that the sea water seems to run to meet the prow, and the beak of the prow seems to be plowing furiously up against the stream of a river so that sometimes the water rises above the horns of the prow."

Wanted: A New Route to India

Yet, in spite of better ships and aids to navigation, Mediterranean sailors had not ventured out into the Atlantic. A few of them, to be sure, skirted the coast on a yearly trip to England and Flanders,[1] but most of them were content to sail up and down the familiar sea. There had been little need to go elsewhere. Ships sailed in order to carry goods, and the things that people wanted had been waiting for them in the ports of Egypt and Asia Minor and Syria.

But something had happened to change all this, so that the European traders of the fifteenth century began to find little in their old markets at Constantinople, Smyrna, and the other cities of Asia Minor. Western Asia had long been disturbed. About 1200, Mongol tribes under great rulers and fighters, after conquering China, had moved westward, had seized practically all of Asia, and had pushed into Europe, conquering and holding much of Russia. A little later the Ottoman Turks began to move out southward and eastward from the northwest corner of Asia Minor. It was through this country, so often raided and conquered by people who were in race, religion, and habits unlike the Europeans, that the caravans went from the East to the

Changes in the East

[1] See page 291.

West. Merchants became afraid to risk their goods in this fierce war zone. Fewer and fewer caravans came from India and China. Trading ships lay idle, and trade dwindled.[1]

Yet men knew that far off, beyond that hostile Turkish land, lay rich China and India and the Spice Islands. People began to read with more eagerness than ever before the old book of the travels of Marco Polo.

This fortunate boy and his two uncles had traveled, sometimes on ship, sometimes on camel back, and by horse, and afoot, from their own city of Venice, through the well-known Mediterranean, through the old lands of Asia that Alexander had conquered, past ruins of ancient cities, across deserts, among fierce tribes, over mountain passes, down great river valleys, to the farthest coast of China, a journey of more than a thousand days.

Marco Polo's Travels, 1271–1295

MARCO POLO
From the first edition of his book

Here they had lived for seventeen years, in the court of the emperor Kublai Khan, acting as his messengers and advisers. They went with the emperor from his summer palace to his winter palace. They traveled into far corners of the country on the emperor's business. They saw the great land of China from end to end and Chinese life from top to bottom. And always Marco's eyes were open to everything interesting and important.

[1] Though some trade still flowed through Syria and Egypt, Damascus and Jaffa and Alexandria, still it was plain that these, too, must come under the yoke of the Turk, as indeed they did early in the sixteenth century.

When at last he returned to Italy and told his story, a friend, hearing it, wrote it down in a book. That book was so full of marvels that when it was finally published, all who could, put hands upon a copy and read and went

THE POLOS BEGIN THEIR JOURNEY

away with excited eyes, telling it again to whoever would listen. Men told over and over of the Grand Khan's palace and its gilt columns entwined with carved dragons; of the sacred herd of ten thousand milk-white horses; of the level roads with their flying horsemen and fleet runners that could make a ten days' journey in one; of the

great Kiang River, ten miles wide in some places; of the river town where fifteen thousand boats were tied up; of that marvelous Celestial City, a hundred miles around, with twelve thousand bridges across its rivers and canals, with its stone-paved streets, by means of which "passengers can travel to every part without soiling their feet"; of the island of Java, where grew "pepper, nutmegs, spikenard, galangal, cubebs, cloves, and all the other valuable spices and drugs."

KUBLAI KHAN
A Chinese picture

The Polos had gone home by ship through the China Sea, past the Spice Islands, past Ceylon and the Indian coast, through the Indian Ocean and the Persian Gulf, without being troubled by the Turks. "If only we might get our ships into those waters!" thought the traders who read Polo's book. "Now that the Turks have shut the gates of land travel to Asia, it would be good to find some sea route from our Mediterranean into those eastern seas. If we could only sail around Africa, we might come into the Indian Ocean." One man in the fifteenth century accomplished a wonderful work that made such a voyage possible. He was a prince of the little country of Portugal.

Portugal's Great Explorers

This country was on the western edge of the world, looking out over the terrible, the unguessed Atlantic. Men standing on her cliffs and gazing westward must have felt a thrill of terror. They could see nothing

beyond but endless waters. What lay out there under the sunset? Ignorant men thought: "Of course the ocean stretches as far as eye can see, but it must have an end. It is probably cut off suddenly, and a ship would slip over its edge into — what? Besides, do you see how a ship keeps dropping down as it sails out in that direction? First the hull disappears, then the sail, then the flag on the mast. It is going downhill toward that awful jumping-off place."

Fear of the Ocean

And toward the south, what was there? These same ignorant men thought that a few hundred miles south of the Mediterranean the earth became so hot that the air was aflame and the sea steaming. For as one journeyed into Africa, did not the climate grow hotter and hotter, and was not the ground parched so that no plants could grow, and were not the people scorched brown? Men believed, too, that a magnet mountain lay somewhere in that far-off sea. Acting upon the iron of the ships it would draw them toward it, would pull out the nails that held them together and strew the timbers of the wrecks over the waves. Monsters, moreover, lived on the land, men thought, death-dealing creatures and man-eaters.

Yet there were educated men who knew that these were foolish superstitions, who had learned from the writings of the old Greek philosophers that the earth is a sphere and that the ocean laps it round like a blanket. Prince Henry of Portugal was one of these learned men. He knew much about the shape of the earth and wished to learn more. He was a scientist and mathematician, liking to figure out problems in astronomy and surveying. He was a great reader, too, and had read Herodotus and Marco Polo's book and Ptolemy's "Geography," written ages before in learned Alexandria. He had, besides, a

great deal of money, so that he could buy maps and make experiments quite impossible for poorer men.

So he chose a home for himself on the very southwestern point of Portugal where the Atlantic tides and the sea winds swept in. Here he built a palace where he could live, an observatory where he could study the stars, a dock where he could have ships built. He encouraged all men of learning and all sailors who had had interesting voyages to visit him and to tell him their stories.

1419, Prince Henry's Plans

For centuries ships had gone along the desert coast of northwestern Africa for seven hundred miles or more, stopping here and there to trade with the Moorish inhabitants for gold and ivory and curious things. But at a certain cape that stretched outward into the strange west, beaten by great waves, the ships had always turned back. Men had named the point Cape Non or Cape Not, because for the ship that sailed past it there was not any return.

To pass this impassable cape, to push exploration as far as possible down the African coast became the dream and the purpose of Prince Henry's life. He sat in his observatory and studied the stars, in his library and pored over his maps, all telling different things about the unknown parts of the world. He had ships built, he hired sailors, he offered prizes to captains who should find new lands. He sketched maps for them, wrote sailing directions. He commanded his captains at any risk to sail beyond Cape Non. He laughed at the foolish belief in the sea of darkness and the magnet mountain and the flaming air. At last he enticed one ship past the cape. And since, as the old Portuguese chronicler says, "the beginning is two parts of the whole matter," soon others followed and

The African Coast

HENRY THE NAVIGATOR

On the shelves notice his books, astrolabe, compass, sundial, drawing instruments, and globe — the tools of the explorer. But he was also knight and crusader: note his armor and the garter about his knee. That is the badge of an English order of knighthood. In the upper right-hand corner is the seal of that order with its French motto, "Evil to him who evil thinks." At the bottom of the picture are the armies with which Prince Henry helped to capture the Mohammedan city of Ceuta in Africa

learned that the sea beyond Cape Non was no different from that nearer home.

Before long, however, a new cape barred the way. It thrust a long finger a hundred miles westward, and the waves ran fiercely at its point. So for many years ships ran bravely the thousand miles to Cape Bojador and then went back home, having seen no new lands, having got no nearer to Asia. But at last a daring captain doubled this cape, too, and found the sea on the other side "as easy to sail in as the waters at home." 1435 He carried back to the prince not only his story, but some roses that he had gathered in a land hitherto untouched, perhaps, by white men.

Every new cape conquered made the captains bolder. The very summer, indeed, that Gil Eannes passed Bojador, two young knights of his company, landing with their horses, rode twenty miles and had a glimpse of the wild natives. After that Antonio Gonçalves, a daring young nobleman in charge of a ship, being eager for adventure and for honor, 1442 and wishing to please his beloved prince, sailed into these strange waters. He and his good friend, together with twenty men, surprised a little village, crying out, "Saint James for Portugal," as they fell upon the people and captured ten men, women, and children.

Slaves and Wealth,

This capturing of people who had done no harm does not seem to-day like a very noble adventure, but the men of Gonçalves's company thought so highly of it that they considered the young man worthy of knighthood, and there on the savage African shore he knelt and received the accolade[1] from the hands of his friend, already a knight. It seemed important to these men to be able to carry back to their prince real living natives of that

[1] See page 238.

far-off fairyland. Prince Henry, also, thought this a great and useful deed, for he hoped to make Christians of these captives and to get from them, too, more definite knowledge concerning their country. So, indeed, it proved, and a little later Gonçalves got in partial exchange for one of his captives a little bag of gold dust together with a few black men, the slaves of the Moorish tribe to which the captives belonged.

Gold and slaves to be had for the capturing! White men needed no further encouragement to make the African voyage. Little trading settlements grew up on this gold coast. Then began the slave traffic, that continued for almost four hundred years. Ships came and went, laden with gold and with black men, the sea roads grew busy, and Portugal grew rich.

But though many men set out for Africa only in the hope of gain, caring nothing for finding new lands or for getting new knowledge, yet the prince kept his scientific interest, his love of discovery. He had read the old story told by Herodotus, the Greek historian, who says: "Neco, king of Egypt, . . . sent certain Phœnicians in ships [from the Red Sea] with orders to sail back through the Pillars of Hercules into the northern sea [that is, the Mediterranean] and so to return to Egypt. The Phœnicians, accordingly, setting out from the Red Sea, navigated the southern sea. When autumn came, they went ashore and sowed the land by whatever part of Libya [that is, Africa] they happened to be sailing, and waited for the harvest. Then, having reaped the grain, they put to sea again. When two years had thus passed, in the third, having doubled the Pillars of Hercules, they arrived in Egypt." [1]

As the prince's discoveries and studies continued, he

[1] See page 8.

probably came to think: "That voyage is a proof that Africa has an end toward the south. The Indian Ocean over east of it and the Atlantic west of it must flow together at that southern end. If we could round that point, we should come into the Indian Ocean and might sail on to China and the Spice Islands." But Prince Henry died before his ships had gone half the way down the African coast as we know it now.

Yet he had not spent his forty years of work in vain. Men had sailed westward for eight hundred miles and had found, not a sea of darkness, not the edge of the world, but the fair islands of the Azores. They had sailed southward to the equator, and their ships had not been sucked down into a boiling whirlpool, nor had the men been burned black by a scorching sun. Indeed, they had found a land rich with more flourishing plants than grew in Portugal. Moreover, Prince Henry had trained up a class of captains and sailors who knew better how to handle a ship and to take reckonings than seamen before them. And hundreds of people became interested in sailing around Africa.

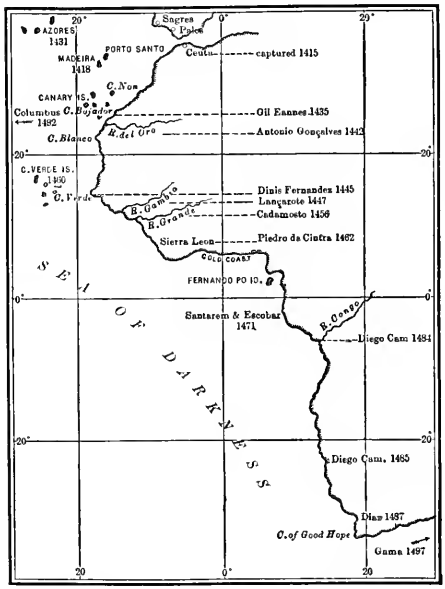
Results of Prince Henry's Work

So the voyages continued after Prince Henry's death. In 1486 his nephew, King John, sent out four expeditions at once.

One man went through Egypt to the hidden lands of Africa, exploring the shore. Here he found, stretching along the eastern coast, a line of Mohammedan towns of busy traders, where came ships from India and Arabia. He sent letters home, saying: "Keep southward. If you persist, Africa must come to an end. And when ships come to the Eastern Ocean let them ask for Sofala and the island of the Moon [Madagascar], and they will find pilots to take them to Malabar [in India]."

The Corner Turned

That was an encouraging message, indeed, and a helpful discovery. But another of King John's expeditions made a still more important one. Bartholomew Diaz
1487 with two ships sailed southward along Africa for sixteen months. In winter cold and on tossing seas he rounded the end of Africa at last, and knew that the next Portuguese ship might sail on into the warm, busy waters of the East. But his own men did not realize what a great thing they had done, and, worn out with cold and long sailing, demanded to go home. The king of Portugal, when he heard Diaz's story, knew that Prince Henry's dream was realized, that the sea road to India was open. Therefore he refused to call the new point "Cape of Storms," as the wind-tossed sailor Diaz had named it, but rather "Cape of Good Hope," because it opened to Portugal so good hopes of trade and wealth.

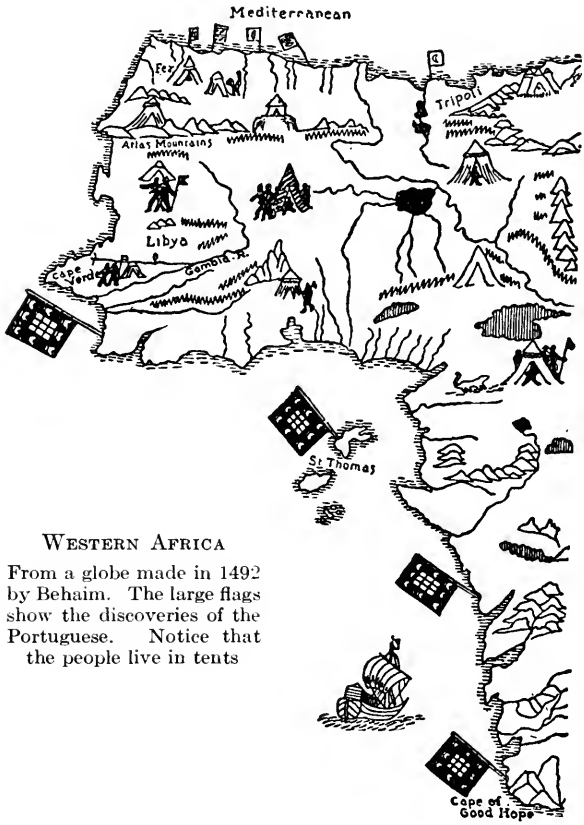


EXPLORATION MOVES DOWN THE AFRICAN COAST

Yet it was ten years before any one again doubled the cape and made the much-hoped-for voyage into the Indian Ocean. Four ships were built on purpose, and the king put in command of them a Portuguese gentleman, Vasco da Gama. The king and the queen and the nobles of the court gathered to see the beginning of this

yet untried voyage. They and the adventurers crowded into a chapel to ask God's blessing on this great attempt. After that, two long years passed, and no news came to the king concerning the fate of the expedition. But in another two months the ships sailed into harbor with the rich smell of spices

Around the Cape to India, 1497



WESTERN AFRICA

From a globe made in 1492 by Behaim. The large flags show the discoveries of the Portuguese. Notice that the people live in tents

clinging about them, and Da Gama put into the hands of the king a letter from an Indian ruler. "Vasco da Gama, a nobleman of your household," it said, "has visited my

kingdom and has given me great pleasure. In my kingdom there is abundance of cinnamon, cloves, ginger, pepper, and precious stones. What I seek from thy country is gold, silver, coral, and scarlet."

Da Gama had a marvelous story to tell. In his voyage southward he had not clung to the coast of Africa, as others had done, but had laid a circling course through the broad Atlantic, thinking to shorten the distance. For ninety-three days he had sailed without sight of land. Then he had touched Africa, and from that time on he had stopped here and there to explore or to get fresh water or fish or game.

Vasco da Gama

Da Gama's Experience

Farther north along the coast they had found the Mohammedan country that King John's traveler had written of. Here were well-built cities, with beautiful palaces and gardens, somewhat like those of Moorish Spain and northern Africa. The people were civilized Arabs, dressing in silks and sitting upon rich cushions. In the harbors were trading ships from India. The king of one of these towns had given Da Gama pilots, who had guided him to the kingdom of Calicut, in India, the land of silks and gems and spices.

The Portuguese sailors had actually set foot upon this fabulous land, had talked with the people, had bowed before its king, and had received a letter from his hand.

But Moorish merchants who lived in this country, being jealous of the strangers, had made them much trouble, so that the Portuguese had scarcely escaped with their lives.

On the way home, moreover, they had met hard winds in crossing the Indian Ocean and had been three months and three days without sighting land, so that food had become scarce and water low. Thirty men had died of scurvy, and only seven or eight in each ship had been able to work the ropes and attend to the sailing. When they had at last landed on the African coast they had burned one ship, because they had had too few men to sail them all. Hard and long had been the first voyage to India.

A Portuguese Empire in Asia

That expedition was the joy of geographers, because it laid open a half of the world hitherto unknown. That letter from an Indian ruler was a trumpet call to Portuguese merchants, because it promised trade and wealth. Before twenty years were gone, a Portuguese army had fought in Persia and India and Siam, had captured the five most useful seaports, had built up a Portuguese empire in the East over which a Portuguese viceroy ruled. Storehouses, markets, and dwellings were built in the cities of Asia like those in the factories of the Hanse towns in northern Europe [1] and of the Italian towns in the eastern Mediterranean. Portuguese officers were left in charge of these factories, with workmen to repair and build ships and handle goods and with soldiers and warships to guard the settlements.

Fleets of Portuguese vessels passed to and fro around the Cape of Good Hope to trade in Arabia, India, and the eastern islands. From Europe they carried copper, quicksilver, vermilion dye, brass basins from Flanders, scarlet cloth, colored silks, perhaps made in Florence.

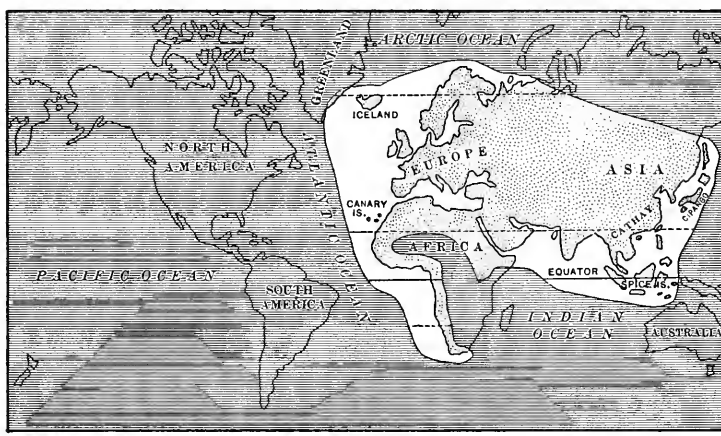
[1] See page 285.

They found in the storehouses at the Indian factories rice, sugar, honey, oil, cocoanuts. Portuguese ships went even further, out into the island-sown ocean south of Siam, and one little fleet of vessels turned northward and visited that marvelous China that Marco Polo had written of. Travelers explored lands unknown before and wrote books about them. Europeans were beginning to be at home in Africa and Asia.

Spanish Ships in a New World

A New Plan

While Portugal was uncovering hidden Africa and before she had found the southeastern path to India through strange seas and dreaded dangers, another sailor and scientist was forming a different plan — to sail westward from Portugal across the Atlantic and so to come to China. For



THE WORLD AS EUROPEANS KNEW IT BEFORE 1492

he, like Prince Henry, had read the Greek books about geography and believed that the earth is round. He had read, too, the books of the great travelers in China,

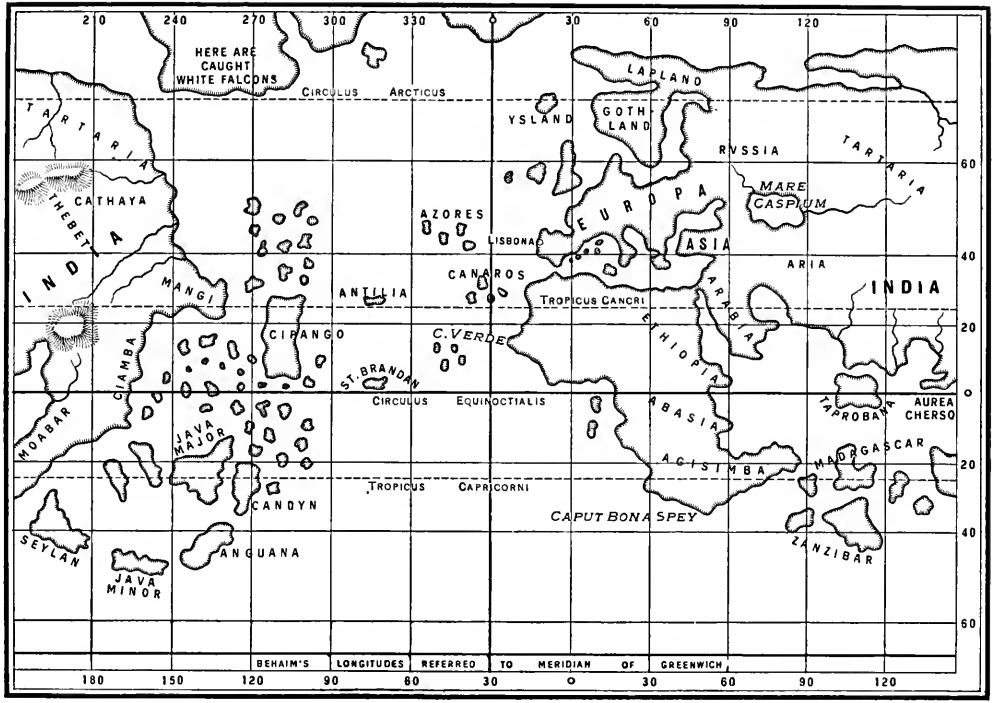
and he noted that they said the ocean was east of Asia as it was west of Europe. He thought, therefore, that the sea lapped over the globe from Europe to Asia, that the ocean lying at his feet as he stood on the Portuguese shore washed the rich coasts of China on the other side of the world.

This dreamer was Christopher Columbus. He had grown up in Genoa, the great Italian trading town. There he had seen ships sail out for strange-sounding places at the far end of the sea, and he had beheld them come back and unload jewels and silks and spices that smelled of China and the yet more distant Cipango or Japan. Being an imaginative boy, he had formed a "magnificent and great desire to find a way to where the spices grew." He had gone to the university to learn mathematics and astronomy so that he should be able to find his way through unknown waters. He had learned Latin so that he might read the books that Eastern travelers had written.

Early Life of Columbus

Then he had gone to Portugal, the sailors' paradise. He had become acquainted with some of her great captains and had married the daughter of one of them. He himself says in his journal: "I have traversed the sea for twenty-three years without leaving it for any time worth counting, and I saw all in the east and the west, going on the route of the north, which is England, and I have been to Guinea [that is, Africa]." He had talked with some of the wise men in Prince Henry's old school and had seen the precious maps in his museum. And all the time his dream kept growing stronger and more real before his eyes.

At last he was received by the king of Portugal and told him of his plan. But it seemed like a wild scheme



PART OF A GLOBE MADE IN 1492, JUST BEFORE COLUMBUS SAILED

Behaim, the man who made it, believed that the Atlantic stretched from Europe to Asia

to the king and his councilors, and they refused him ships. Columbus left Portugal in anger, but he did not give up his plan. He was determined to cross that uncrossed sea. Yet he was a poor man, and only a king's purse was large enough to supply the ships and hire the men necessary for the great voyage.

Discouragements

During eight years he sought one government, then another, perhaps Genoa and Venice and England. He interviewed great nobles of Spain, and they sent him to King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella. But they were busy with their wars against the Moors; for they had determined to free Spain utterly from her old-time Mohammedan conquerors.[1] So Columbus was kept waiting four years at the court.

The stories of that weary time, with the learned scoffing at him and the ignorant laughing, with the delays on account of wars and princely marriages and royal business, with the examination by men who thought themselves wiser than this unknown sailor; the story of his bitter disappointment, of his leaving the court, of his poverty, of his wanderings, of the friends he found, and of his second visit to the court — all these stories show him as a sad and suffering man, but a man of burning enthusiasm and of iron will. He believed in his dream. And because he believed, because he would not give up, and because he had real knowledge and science on his side, he won at last.

Columbus' Voyage

On August 3, 1492, seven months after the Moorish war was finished and Spain was at last free from the Mohammedans and proud of her victory, three little ships set sail from the Spanish harbor of Palos — the *Santa Maria*, the *Pinta*, and the *Niña*. There were one hundred twenty

[1] See page 326.

men on board, and Columbus commanded them as admiral. The wharves were crowded with their friends, weeping; for they thought never again to see ships or sailors who were facing the horrors of an unsailed ocean.

COLUMBUS, DEPARTING ON HIS FIRST VOYAGE, TAKES LEAVE OF THE KING AND QUEEN

Notice that the ships anchor and send rowboats ashore

It proved, however, to be a very mild, safe voyage. "The sea was like a river, the air pleasant and very mild," says Columbus in his journal, where every night he wrote down with care all the happenings of the day. Again he says, "It is a pleasure to be here, so balmy are the breezes." The sailors even bathed alongside, bathed in bottomless waters, in seas thousands of miles broad, in an ocean never before touched by ships!

But even in fair weather it is a hard thing to face the unknown, day after day, to see every evening at sunset and every morning at dawn the same empty ocean.

Moreover, the constant east wind that pleased Columbus because it was driving him on towards Asia frightened the sailors because it was driving them away from home. "My people were much excited," Columbus says, "at the thought that in these seas no wind ever blew in the direction of Spain." After a month the men could endure no longer. They had been grumbling among themselves. At last they complained aloud to the admiral and demanded that he should turn the ship about and sail home.

"But," says Columbus, "the admiral cheered them up in the best way he could." Doubtless he painted glowing pictures of the riches they would find in China. He perhaps reminded them of the letter, written on parchment and bearing the great seals of the king and the queen. This he was carrying to that magnificent monarch of China, the Grand Khan. When encouragement failed to calm his sailors, this man of iron will told them that "However much they might complain, he had to go to the Indies, and that he would go on until he found them, with the help of our Lord." Two nights later they saw land, and on the morning of Friday, October twelfth, they set foot upon solid earth.

New Islands

For the next three months they explored these coasts. Columbus must have been disappointed. He had expected to find the gorgeous China of which he had read in Marco Polo's book, with its thousands of ships, its marble bridges, its palaces, its exquisite gardens, its princes in embroidered silk, its gold and jewels and perfumes and precious spices. Instead he saw naked people, living in rude huts, with hardly a glint of gold. Yet he seems to have enjoyed those months of exploration. He had an eye for beautiful scenery, and he found here a landscape that delighted him. "I walked among the

trees," he says, "which was the most beautiful thing I had ever seen. . . . I can never tire my eyes in looking at such lovely vegetation. . . . I found the smell of the trees and flowers so delicious that it seemed the pleasantest thing in the world. . . . I wanted to go and anchor there," he says of a certain coast, "so as to go on shore and see so much beauty."

THE *SANTA MARIA*
Perhaps Columbus himself drew the picture

He was gentle and friendly with the natives, never allowing his men to hurt them or to take their goods. For he knew that many ships of Spain would follow him, that the king and queen would build towns in this new land, and he hoped to have the natives receive Spaniards as friends. Moreover, the great admiral was a man of religious heart. "This was the beginning and end of the undertaking," he says, "namely, the increase and glory of the Christian religion," and he begged the king and queen to send missionaries to convert the natives.

When the explorers set sail for home, instead of costly cinnamon and pepper they carried a few rolls of a strange thing that the natives burned in their mouths and which they called "tobacco." Instead of silks they had samples of cotton. Instead of embroidered robes they had curious things woven of string in which the people slept and which they called "hammocks." No wealthy Chinese mer-

chants accompanied them, but a few naked and painted "Indians," as Columbus called them. The admiral still carried the royal letter for the Grand Khan, undelivered.

There had been tears and smiles of scorn and gloomy prophecies when Columbus had sailed from Spain. When he returned, there were processions and shoutings of joy and crowded roadsides and housetops wherever he passed. Noblemen rode out of the city to welcome him. The whole court assembled to meet him, and the king and queen rose up from their thrones to do him honor. People gazed with wonder and surprise at the Indians, the stuffed animals, and the dried branches of fruits and flowers that he had brought. They listened with delight to his descriptions of the countries he had seen and to his hopes of finding the Grand Khan on his next voyage. Every one felt that he had well earned his title of Spanish Admiral of the High Seas for himself and his heirs forever, of viceroy and governor over all continents and islands that he should discover, and the noble name of *Don*.

Columbus' Return

What had he really done? He himself thought that he had found a new way to China and India. The Spanish king and queen evidently thought that he had discovered some new islands, probably near neighbors to Asia. He had in reality done a great deal more. The shores which he had found were the island fringe of a new world, the West Indies of our America. He had, moreover, broken the magic of the unknown sea. Men had for centuries lived on its edge and wondered how far it stretched and what manner of end it had, but no man had dared to explore it. Now, however, a man had laughed at fears and foolish stories, had risked all the horrors, had proved that this sea was

What He Had Done

as much a sailor's home as any other. He had laid out a road across that untraveled ocean; for where one ship had gone others might go. Spain rang with the glory of the voyage, and the sailors in every seaport of Europe must have longed to try their skill and their luck in a like adventure.

Rival Explorers

In England, indeed, men were unwilling to see Spain monopolize the new lands. In 1497, only five years after Columbus' voyage, John Cabot, a Venetian sailor, put out from Bristol, England, with a letter in his sea chest, giving him the right to explore in the west and claim new lands for the English king. An Italian, visiting in England, wrote to an Italian duke: "In this kingdom there is a certain Venetian named Zoanne Caboto, of gentle disposition, very expert in navigation, who seeing that the most serene kings of Portugal and Spain had occupied unknown islands, meditates the achievement of a similar expedition for the said Majesty. Having obtained royal privileges securing to himself the use of the dominions he might discover, the sovereignty being reserved to the Crown, he intrusted his fortune to a small vessel with a crew of eighteen persons and set out from Bristol, a port in the western part of this kingdom. . . . At length he hit upon land, where he hoisted the royal standard and took possession for his highness, and having obtained various proofs of his discovery, he returned." In two voyages he touched upon the shores of modern Canada and of the United States.

English Exploration: Cabot, 1497

What country could find more lands and richer ones? That was the question. The Portuguese kept pushing farther and farther east, even as far as the Molucca

Islands, where the spices grew. One of their captains on his way southward to round Africa was carried by wind and current far to the west, so that he touched the coast that we now call Brazil. He claimed it for his country, and hers it remained for almost four hundred years.

Portuguese in Brazil, 1500

But Spain was yet busier. Columbus himself made four voyages, exploring many islands of the West Indies and the north coast of South America. Other captains coasted around the shore of the Gulf of Mexico and touched upon Florida. They explored the coasts opposite Cuba and sailed southward almost to the tip of South America. Americus Vespucius, an Italian, whose name men later gave to the new continents, went with many of these exploring captains and wrote accounts of the voyages.[1]

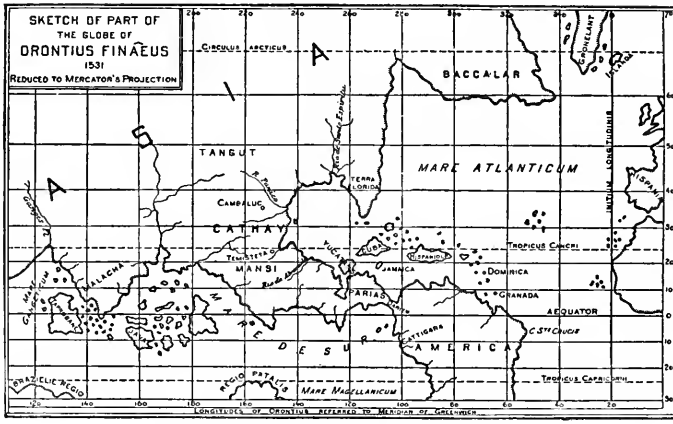
Columbus' Voyages, 1492–1502

Still Searching for China

For a long time these trips up and down the shores were not put together in men's minds. People did not realize that the land which Vespucius saw north of the Gulf of Mexico was connected with that which he found hundreds of miles farther south. That northern part was, to them, Asia. But what was the southern part? Marco Polo and the old maps had said nothing of a continent south of Asia. Some people began to call this the New World. They wondered what shape it had. Where was its southern end, or did it have any end? What lay east of it? Other men, however, held a different opinion about that southern land. They considered it to be a long cape attached to Asia. It stretched out into the ocean and cut off the way to the Spice Islands.

Magellan, a Portuguese navigator, determined to find

[1] A German professor of geography, reading these rather boastful accounts and thinking that Vespucius had found the southern mainland before Columbus had touched it on his third voyage, suggested that the new continent be called *America* after that discoverer, and so marked it on the map that he published.



PART OF A GLOBE MADE IN 1531

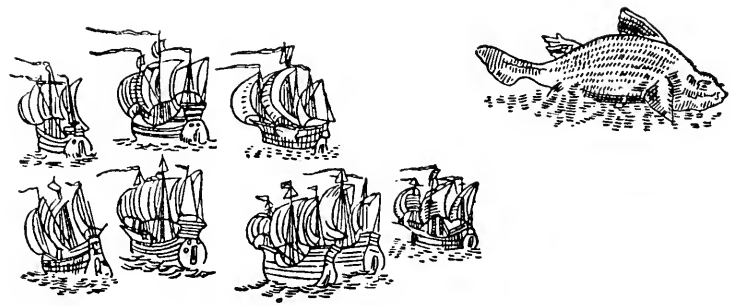
It shows South America connected with Asia

his way around this troublesome land to the rich Indies hiding behind it. He was already an experienced sailor. He had rounded the Cape of Good Hope and had done brave fighting for Portugal on the shores of Asia. He had sailed farther east than most white men of his time. But for one reason or another the king of Portugal thought ill of his plan, and Magellan, like Columbus, turned from Portugal to Spain. Again Spain accepted the great man whom her neighbor had rejected.

Magellan's Plan

With five ships and two hundred eighty men Magellan started out to meet — he knew not what — and to prove beyond all doubt that the earth is round. It was all plain sailing to the Canaries, then across the newly opened Atlantic to Brazil which Portugal already owned, and along the coast of the new world in Vespucius' track. Here they sailed into many a harbor and river mouth, looking for a cut through the land from ocean to ocean. But far down on the coast of

1519, The Search



A Fleet of Magellan's Time

South America, in St. Julian's Bay, the stormy winter caught the party, and they anchored in the sheltered harbor to wait for good sailing weather. Here they "set up at the top of the highest mountain which was there a very large cross, as a sign that this country belonged to the king of Spain." So says Pigafetta, an Italian gentleman who went on the expedition and who wrote a journal about it.

The five months of waiting in severe cold, with little to eat and little to do, were hard to bear. The men talked among themselves: "This captain-general of ours is a Portuguese, while we are Spaniards, and do not the Portuguese and Spaniards hate each other? He is trying to destroy us by keeping us in this miserable frozen land. Besides, we have gone farther south than any man ever went before. Why do more? Let us kill this captain-general and go home."

So they made their plan, but Magellan learned of it, and he had the leaders of the mutiny killed, and some of the others he put into chains and imprisoned them in the hulls of his ships to work the pumps. The Spaniards came to feel fear and respect for this man of prompt action and heavy hand and stout

Trouble

heart. When he was ready to sail out in the spring he set his prisoners at liberty and gave them work to do, though three of the worst trouble makers he abandoned on that wild shore to shift for themselves. Before he left the harbor one of his ships ran upon rocks and was wrecked, though the men were saved. So only four ships sailed southward.

They went on for two months and then did, indeed, find a strait leading through the land. This they entered, exploring as they went, and when the ships were scattered and out from under Magellan's eye, one of them, filled with jealous and discontented men, sailed away for Spain. The three others, however, kept on feeling their way along the winding channel, between lands that were "rocky and also stark with eternal cold," so that Magellan thought them not worth exploring. Every man's eyes were always ahead seeking a glimpse of the ocean that held the Moluccas and the well-known world of Asia. At last the strait did indeed open out. The shore of the new world bent northward. The open Pacific lay before the voyagers.

But where were the rich Spice Islands? Magellan pointed his ships' heads northwest and sailed out into the unmapped sea. "Wednesday, the 28th of November, 1520, we came forth out of the said strait," says Pigafetta, "and entered into the Pacific Sea, where we remained three months and twenty days, without taking in provision or other refreshment." Soon the drinking water was yellow and foul. Before much longer the food was gone, and men had only the sawdust that they could scrape up in the hull and the dirty, wormy crumbs and dust left from the biscuits. They even caught the ship's rats and ate them and cut off strips of the leather that was bound around the yardarm and ate that.

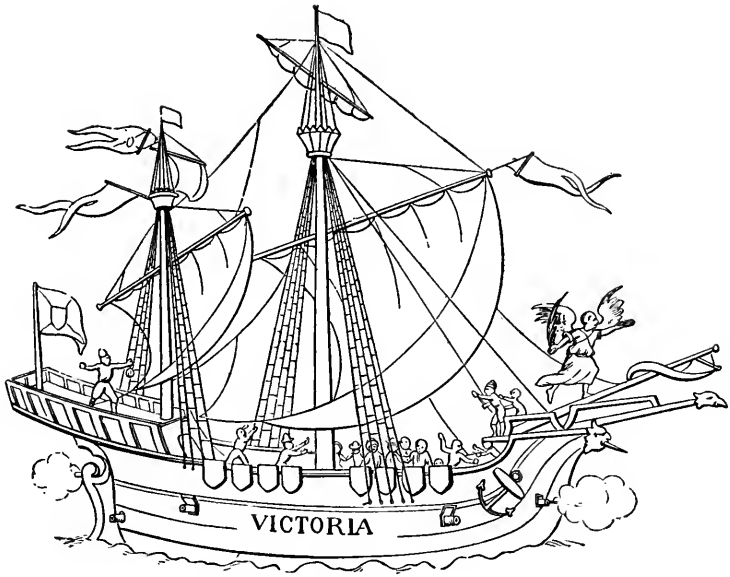
Across the Pacific

Three months and twenty days without proper food and proper drink and proper rest! The men suffered many diseases, and nineteen of them died and were buried in that strange sea. Nobody knew how far away the Spice Islands were. Every day for all that time men must have gazed ahead expecting to see the end of their horrible voyage. And at last it came. The thing that Columbus had hoped to do was done. A European ship by sailing west had reached the East.

The seaworn sailors of Spain and Portugal after a voyage of a year and a half set foot first upon the Ladrones, or Thieves' Islands, and then upon the Philippines. In this latter place they found the people friendly and gentle and eager to imitate the ways of the wonderful strangers. Magellan straightway set about making them Christians, for he was as much a missionary as a discoverer. He had with him a slave who had been born in one of the Spice Islands and could speak the language of the Philippines. So Magellan preached through this interpreter, and the people listened with delight and asked to become Christians. They tore down their idols and burned them, and Magellan set up a cross. "In eight days," says Pigafetta, "all the inhabitants of this island were baptized and some belonging to the neighboring islands."

In Asian Waters

Magellan, loving these new friends and converts of his, determined to help them in war and peace. With sixty of his men he went to a near-by island to fight the king's battles for him. And there on the edge of the world fifteen hundred natives with arrows and javelins and spears and stones defeated the white men and killed the brave Magellan, "our mirror, light, comfort, and true guide," as Pigafetta calls him. And then these new-made Christians showed how much their new religion



MAGELLAN'S VICTORIOUS SHIP

Note the "very good iron cannon," as they were called by a writer of the time. The flying Victory is a wooden figurehead such as many old ships had

and new friendship meant to them, for they turned against the defeated white men, tore down the cross and broke it to pieces, and killed any Spaniards upon whom they could put their hands.

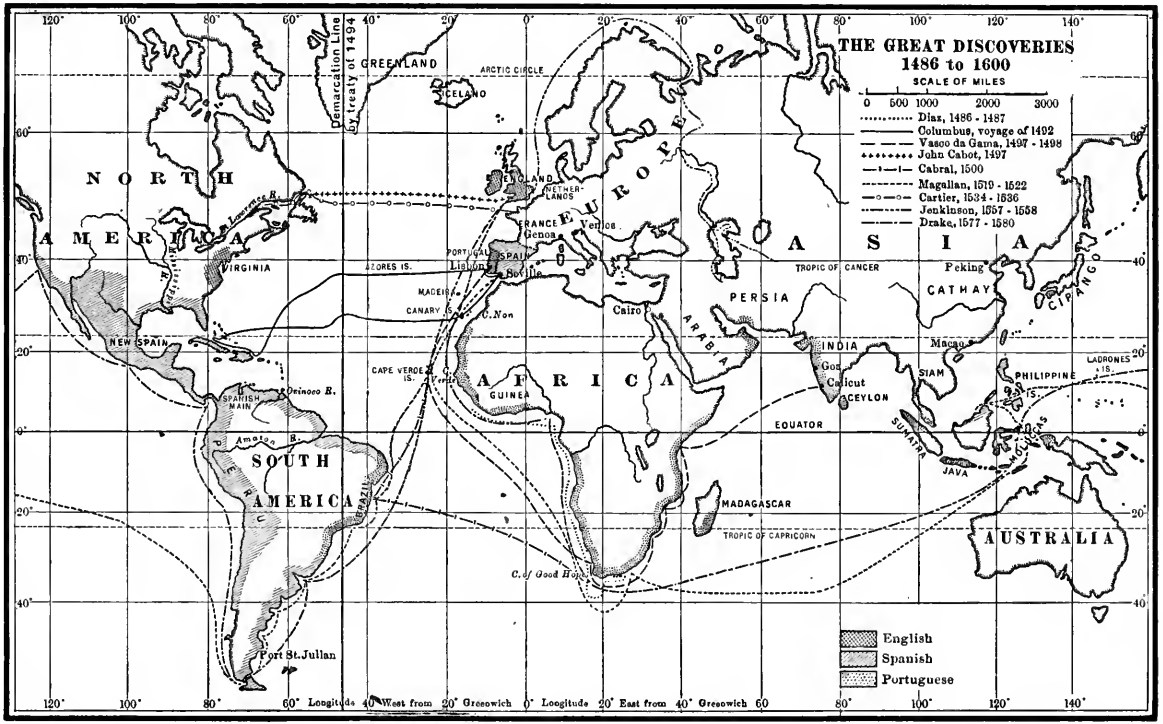
The rest sailed sadly away, mourning for their captain and their slain comrades. They had not enough men to sail three ships, and so they burned one. The other two went on to the Moluccas, where the men traded for several months, that they might not go home empty-handed. But of those two ships one was lost somewhere in the eastern seas. The men of the other suffered almost as much on the way around Africa as they had suffered on the open Pacific. Pigafetta speaks of the Cape of Good Hope as

Around the World and Home Again

"that terrible cape," and again calls it "the largest and most dangerous cape in the world." "We remained off that cape for nine weeks," he says, "with the sails struck on account of the western and northwestern gales which beat against our bows with fierce squalls." They suffered from the cold, and they had nothing but rice and water to eat. "But the greater number of us, prizing honor more than life itself, decided on attempting at any risk to return to Spain. . . . We then sailed towards the northwest for two whole months without ever taking rest; and in this short time we lost twenty-one men."

So, after three years and two weeks, all that was left of Magellan's fleet limped into the home harbor — one broken ship and eighteen gaunt men. They were the first of men to sail around the world. 1522 They had done a marvelous thing, and their story stirred people's hearts then as it has done ever since. "Worthier, indeed, are our sailors of eternal fame," says an old Spanish writer of the time, "than the Argonauts who sailed with Jason to Colchis and much more worthy was their ship of being placed among the stars than that old Argo."

Spain had found the southwest passage to the Indies. Portugal held that to the southeast. Two other routes seemed possible — to the northeast around Europe and to the northwest around North America. France began to search for the northwest passage. The king of France sent word to the king of Spain "asking him by what right he and the king of Portugal undertook to monopolize the earth. Had our first father, Adam, made them his sole heirs? If so, it would be no more than proper for them to produce a copy of the will; and meanwhile he should feel at liberty to seize upon all he could get."



Note Spanish empire in the new West, Portuguese in the old East

Thereupon this ambitious King Francis sent Verrazano, an Italian, who explored the shores of what is now the United States in an effort to find a strait cutting through it. Of course he failed, because there is no such strait. Ten years later Cartier, a Frenchman, found the mouth of the great St. Lawrence River and claimed the land for France.

The French Begin to Explore, 1524

Spain, Portugal, England, and France were now snatching at the new land and its promises of trade.

The Results of a Century's Work

Many wonderful things had happened in the hundred years since Prince Henry the Navigator had begun his work. Men had learned that the torrid zone is not a place where crews and ships are burned to ashes. The end of Africa had been found, and vessels had rounded it, making a familiar path to Asia. It had been proved that the Atlantic is not a sea of darkness and does not end in a horrible abyss. Two new continents had been discovered in the West. A way had been found through that new land to the old world of the East beyond it. Men's ships had sailed all around the ball of the earth.

New Knowledge

---

1. By looking in all the books you can find, get pictures of boats of different times down to the present. What various kinds of power have been used to move them? Where has the power been applied? **2.** Find out the speed of modern steamships. The journal of Columbus records the runs for days of 24 hours as all the way from 63 leagues on a day with a fresh, favoring breeze, to 9 leagues in a storm when they "took in much sea over the bows," and 7 or 8 leagues when the ship's "head was all round the compass owing to the calm that prevailed." The average run was about 31 leagues. **3.** Make a compass like the one described on page 342. On a paper a little larger than

the dish, mark the directions (North, South, East, and West) and lay it correctly under the compass. Of what use is it? Compare your compass with a pocket compass or a ship's compass. **4.** Make a careful map of some creek or some crooked street or some field or village that you know well. What are the difficulties of a map maker? **5.** Lay a modern map beside each of the old maps in this chapter. Note the old map maker's mistakes. Note quite as carefully what he has right. **6.** Look on a modern map of the world and see what regions are still unexplored. What is the latest geographical discovery? **7.** What aids does a modern sea captain have that the early navigators did not have? **8.** The customs and buildings of India have not greatly changed since the times of Marco Polo and Vasco da Gama. From the Perry Pictures Company you can get interesting scenes in this country. Use them to make an illustrated book.

CHAPTER XV

SPAIN AND HER RIVALS

Spaniards in America

A NEW world had been found. What use was to be made of it? Spain's answer was, "I will get gold and silver from it." Spain was a proud country at the beginning of the sixteenth century. Her nobles had proved their courage and strength by overcoming the once conquering Moors and driving them back into Africa.[1] Except for Portugal her rulers now held all the great peninsula, a country as broad as any in Europe, and they held, besides, across the sea, possessions of unknown size, perhaps as wide as the empire of Portugal in the East. But Spain herself was poor. She had great castles and beautiful churches, populous cities and haughty nobles, but farms were few and poorly worked, and the cities were more crowded than busy. Most Spaniards loved glory and scorned work; they were eager to handle swords rather than tools.

Search for Gold

To the new country now opened to them the most adventurous of the Spaniards began to go. They explored its coasts, its rivers, its lakes, its forests, and its mountains in search of riches. Balboa in 1513 struggled across the Isthmus of Darien and found, not wealth, but the Pacific Ocean. Cortez with a little Spanish army won Mexico, and Pizarro cruelly conquered Peru, and each won vast treasure. Expeditions made their way through

Land Exploration

1519–1521
1531–1533

[1] See pages 326, 363.

SPANISH CONQUEST OF MEXICO

The Aztec Indians of Mexico made this wall painting. Men who can paint like this are not uncivilized. Note the feather head-dress and the wicker shields of the Aztecs. Before the time of the Spaniards there were no horses in America. The Aztec artist has here hinted at the terrible Spanish cruelty.

Florida and pushed northward from Mexico into what are now our southwestern states. De Soto explored the shores of the Gulf of Mexico and found the Mississippi River.

1541

In the islands of the West Indies the conquerors found great numbers of Indians living a peaceful, rather idle life in the mild, fruitful country. According to the Spanish idea the land belonged to the king, and he gave great tracts of it to the Spanish explorers and conquerors and settlers. One man often received thousands of acres with three or four Indian towns upon them. The inhabitants became his serfs.

Men from Spain could not work in this new climate, warmer and more moist than their own. Sunstroke and fever killed many in the early years. So they turned to their serfs and put them to work on their farms and in their mines. But these simple people, used to outdoor life and little work, could not endure this new kind of labor. The white men, too, by ill fortune, brought disease among them, and the Indians died like summer flowers under a frost. The first discoverers found perhaps 300,000 inhabitants on the island of Haiti: twenty-four years later there were but 14,000.[1]

Indian Serfs

Since the Indians could not be used, what was to be done? The earth held gold; Spaniards must have it; somebody must get it for them. They were soon making sugar, too, in the islands, and each sugar-mill needed from thirty to eighty workers. You will remember that the Portuguese, as they crept down the coast of Africa in the time of Prince Henry, had found a black people,[2] whom they thought fitted for slavery; that they began slave raids, and carried away slaves to Portugal and to Spain. When the Spanish, therefore, found the natives of the West Indies unable to endure the hard labor put upon them, they thought of their black slaves at home, and ten years after Columbus' discovery, a few were brought over as an experiment. The experiment succeeded, the negro slaves proved good workers, and a few years later another shipload came over. But Spain could not spare her own slaves, born in Spain of Christianized parents, trained to work in the white man's fashion. So the king of Spain,

Negro Slavery

[1] The Spanish government and the Catholic church felt a sincere interest in the Indians and a strong desire to civilize and convert them. The terrible story of the islands was not repeated on the mainland.

[2] See page 354.

owner of the new world, granted to Portugal, owner of the African coast, the right to sell four thousand African black men every year in the West Indies.

All this negro labor brought from the earth great wealth in gold and silver, for the chief business was mining.

Great Wealth

Down from the mountains in all parts of New Spain wound trains of donkeys or of the strange American llamas, packed with sticks of silver and gold. In storehouses the precious bars were piled up to wait for ships to take them to Spain. In companies of sixty or seventy the ships set sail, "laden," as a writer of the times says, "with cochineal, hides, gold, silver, pearls, and other rich wares." Again he tells of a ship unloading "five millions of silver . . . so that the whole quay lay covered with plates and chests of silver . . . most wonderful to behold . . . besides pearls, gold, and other stones." He speaks again of a West Indian fleet of one hundred ships and says that during one year two hundred twenty vessels sailed from America for Spain and Portugal.

To a country where gold seemed to grow on bushes many colonists flocked, and New Spain was changed from an Indian land to a white man's country.

Spanish America

If a baby born in the year when Columbus discovered the new land had lived to be seventy-five or eighty years old, he would have seen another Spain transplanted into that new world. He would have seen over two hundred cities and towns, Spanish towns, with streets like those in Spain, with pretty houses of stone and plaster, with open squares for pleasure and trade, with churches of carved stone. Outside the towns were great plantations, growing cattle, spices, and rice, all worked by hundreds of slaves.

A hundred and sixty thousand Spaniards lived on these plantations and in these towns, and they had a rich,

SAN DOMINGO IN 1586

A town on the island of Haiti built by Columbus' brother. The city wall and the cannon on the water front protect it. Notice the beautiful church in the center of the town

beautiful life. There were balls where the gentlemen danced in long tight hose and silken trunks and velvet doublets slashed and puffed and set off with bright linings. The ladies were lovely in rich brocades and gold cord and falling lace. There were church festivals with processions and gay sports in the streets and the square, like the festivals at home in Spain. There were monasteries with schools where the children were taught. There were a few high schools, too, for boys and girls, and the young men went to universities where learned professors were writing books. There were hospitals and skilled physicians.

In fact, Spain did in America what Rome had long ago done in Spain: she transplanted her own civilization into it. Yet there was this difference: the native Spaniards

had adopted Roman ways and Roman learning, had intermarried with the Romans, and had built up a new people; the Spaniards in America, on the other hand, were little changed by their transplanting, and most of the Indians remained a distinct and ignorant people.

A thing that would seem curious to American eyes in this New Spain was the fact that it was almost entirely a land of one nationality. There were the negroes, to be sure, but they were slaves, and there were Indians, but they were almost slaves. There was hardly a Frenchman or a German or an Englishman or an Italian to be seen, only Spaniards. In the city of Seville sat the Council of the Indies, to help the Spanish king in ruling this new country. The king and this council made all laws, sent governors and generals, gave land and collected taxes. These rulers planned to save America for Spaniards of true blood and Catholic religion. One of the laws was to the effect that "no descendants of Jews, Moors, or of heretics . . . down to the fourth generation, be allowed to come to the island [that is, Cuba]." It was as though there were a wall around Spanish America, with a single gate, and only those who could speak the Spanish password might go through.

Indeed it was so, in a way. Colonists could come to America only in ships, and ships could unload only in harbors. Every harbor town was in charge of a Spanish officer with troops and guns for defense. His order was to receive only ships carrying papers from the Council at Seville stating that they had sailed from that city and had a right to put in at Spanish American ports. The officer had orders, besides, to permit only Catholic Spaniards to land on his shores. There were officers of the Inquisition[1] to make sure that those landing were

[1] See page 339.

Catholics. If they were found to be heretics, they were sometimes burned. The plan was largely successful, and to-day almost all of America below the United States is Catholic, and nearly all but Brazil is Spanish in speech and custom.

Spain and Her Enemies: 1. France

When Columbus discovered America, Spain was ruled by King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella, and had little to do with the rest of Europe. Their daughter, however, married a prince of the powerful German family of Hapsburg, and so it happened that a few years later a young man inherited the crown who was not only king of Spain, but archduke of Austria and duke and count of many places, besides being king of several others. In addition to all this he soon became emperor of the Holy Roman empire. His titles would have filled a page.

The Great Charles V

Francis I, king of France, looked with dread and jealousy upon the overgrown possessions of this Charles, encircling France and threatening to strangle her. It was he who had haughtily questioned Spain's right to monopolize the world.[1] He sent Verrazano and Cartier to snatch a part of the new world from Charles.[2] In Europe, too, he tried to humble him. Ever since two years after Columbus discovered America France and Spain had been at war over Italy. This war Francis I gladly continued in order to lower the Hapsburg pride and lessen the Hapsburg dominions. At last, however, it was he who was humbled and had to make peace. After that defeat Frenchmen continued to hate Spain, and wherever French and Spanish met there was

War over Italy

[1] See page 375.

[2] See page 377.

EMPEROR CHARLES V

likely to be blood spilled. An event that happened in America illustrates the hard feeling between the two nations.

Revolt from the Catholic Church, you remember, had spread into France.[1] Thousands of people had left the

[1] See pages 337–338.

old church and become Protestants, or Huguenots, after Calvin's teaching. But the majority of Frenchmen remained Catholic and, as happened at first in every country, looked with suspicion and anger upon the new religious rebels. They thought to root out heresy by persecution. Occasionally French Protestants were arrested and burned, and Protestant churches torn down. Yet the Huguenots increased in numbers, especially among the nobles. One of these Huguenot nobles, Coligny, had the high position of Admiral of France and was a friend and adviser of his king. He looked across the ocean and saw, he thought, a refuge for his persecuted fellow-Protestants and at the same time a chance to get new land for France and to break Spain's monopoly.

French Huguenots

Three times Coligny got his king's consent for groups of Huguenots to found settlements in America. The first was in Portuguese Brazil, but the Portuguese drove the colonists out. The second was on the shore of what is now South Carolina, but hunger, mutiny, Indian troubles, and disappointment made this a failure also. The third attempt was on the shore of Florida. This was Spanish territory. Back in 1513 Ponce de Leon had landed there, had explored the shore and claimed it for Spain, and had given it the Spanish name of Florida. Frenchmen would have been glad to cut off this possession of the Spanish king. So in 1564 Coligny's colony built Fort Caroline on the St. John's River and began to explore for gold. Some mutineers left the settlement, sailed out to sea, and raided a Spanish ship.

Huguenots in America

Spain took terrible revenge. The Spanish king sent Menendez, a wolf of a man, with ships and men to wipe the Frenchmen out. He did it thoroughly, killing in cold

blood over five hundred French captives. Some he hanged to trees with a sign that read, "Not as to Frenchmen, but as to Lutherans." Two years later a Frenchman, seeking revenge, landed on the Florida coast with two hundred men, surprised the Spanish fort at St. Augustine, killed the garrison, and hanged several to trees with a sign that read, "Not as to Spaniards, but as to liars and murderers." Frenchmen had taken vengeance, but they never again tried to colonize Florida. A few years later they returned to America again, but not to the Spanish south. They sought once more the great St. Lawrence, which Cartier had found more than seventy years earlier.[1]

Spain and Her Enemies: 2. The Netherlands

Philip II, the son of Charles V, inherited all of his father's possessions except those connected with Austria. United Spain was his, so was southern Italy and Sicily, so was the Netherlands, or what is now Holland and Belgium; America, besides, was his, and during his reign he conquered Portugal. But in spite of all his great kingdom and all his great titles he was not a great man. He was an enemy to liberty: men must think as he directed. He was suspicious and jealous: a general who served him badly was hated and punished for failure; and one who served him well was hated and punished for success. Philip was cruel; it was he who sent Menendez to wipe out the French colony, and he was angry that any man, woman, or child had escaped the butcher. He was a strong Catholic, and he meant to free the world of heretics. He gloried in the bloody work of the Inquisition and, it is said, laughed when he heard of a great massacre of the Huguenots in Paris. He was ambitious to be the most important ruler

Philip of Spain

[1] See page 377.

of Europe, and he had spies in every court, that he might know all secrets and turn them to his advantage.

If the other peoples of Europe hated Spain under the great Charles, they hated it still more under Philip, and of them all the Netherlands hated most, having suffered most.

PHILIP II

The Netherlands was a country of great cities. For hundreds of years it had been filled with rich weavers and merchant princes. The gilds, in their day, had nowhere been stronger, and every city of the Netherlands had its beautiful old gild halls. These rich merchants and gildsmen had bought the freedom of their towns. That was in the days when the cities had belonged some to the duke of this, others to the count of that. Even in Philip's day, though he possessed all the titles of these old dukes and counts, yet the Netherlands was not a united country, but, like Germany and Italy, a group of separate states, each with its own laws and customs and privileges. Every state was fond of its privileges and proud of its history and its wealth. Trouble began to brew, therefore, when haughty Philip inherited the country

and planned to rule like a tyrant. He snapped his fingers at old laws. He insulted Dutch and Flemings and put Spanish officers over them. Being hungry for money, he laid so heavy a tax on the country that "merchants declined to deal, shops were shut, trade was at a standstill, debtors were not able to meet their creditors, and many banks broke."

Persecution

The Netherlands, moreover, was full of heretics. From Germany at the east the people had learned Lutheranism, and from France at the south they had learned Presbyterianism, and Philip, His Most Catholic Majesty, hated all heretics. He set up the Inquisition[1] here in the Netherlands, as he did throughout all his great empire, to punish heretics, and he sent an army and a butcher of a governor to punish rebels. That governor, the Duke of Alva, boasted that during the six years of his rule, he killed eighteen thousand heretics. Sixty thousand more fled to England, and even more than that to Germany, but the people of the Netherlands were sturdy, stubborn folk, and they would not be subdued. For more than fifty years they fought for their freedom. Sometimes they had England's help, because England also was Protestant. Sometimes they had the aid of France, because France also feared and hated Spain. But both were fickle friends, and it was the strength of the Dutch themselves and the wisdom of the men of one of their own noble families that at last won independence.

William of Orange

Of these patriotic nobles the first and most stubborn fighter was William, Prince of Orange, he whom the Hollanders to-day call the father of their freedom. Though he had begun life as a wealthy, honored, ambitious prince, a Catholic and a

[1] See page 339.

favorite of the Spanish king, yet for twenty years he labored for the freedom of his country, spending his money in her cause, risking his life for her, and finally dying a martyr in her behalf. He was determined to sweep the Netherlands clean of Spaniards, to restore the old laws and liberty of the land, to win freedom of worship for Protestants and Catholics alike. To gain these purposes he fought battle after battle and withstood siege after siege.

Some of those sieges were among the bravest and saddest in all the sad history of war. Men, women, and children, shut up for ten months in Leyden, surrounded by Spanish armies so that no food and no messengers except carrier pigeons could pass, saw their dearest and best drop from famine or disease, saw their strongest starve to skeletons, themselves reduced to eat refuse; and yet they held out. Holland is a low, salt marsh, lying below the level of the sea. The people through centuries had built dikes through the shallow shore waters, cutting the ocean off from the land, had pumped the sea out of this fenced country, and at last sat safe and serene behind their sea walls. Now in their great need the people of Leyden cut the dikes and flooded the land in order to float their own navy in to their rescue.

Siege of Leyden, 1574

Nor was this the only time the Dutch made the sea their ally. "Better ruin the land than lose the land," they said. The Spanish Duke of Alva, who was fighting against the people, wrote to his king: "Never was seen on this earth such a war as this, never was a fortress so well defended of men. They have an excellent engineer [that is, William], who has devices that were never yet heard, or seen."

Through it all William was not only fighting battles, but he was writing protests to the king of Spain and

pleas to the queen of England and the rulers of France to help the suffering Netherlands with troops and money. He was sending eloquent appeals to the little states of the Netherlands to hold together in the cause of freedom. "A fagot bound together cannot be broken as easily as single sticks," he said.

But he could gain only a part of his purpose. The ten states of the southern Netherlands combined and declared their loyalty to Spain and to the Catholic religion. But the seven northern states joined together as the United Provinces of the Netherlands. In their declaration of independence they said: "All mankind know that a prince is appointed by God to cherish his subjects, even as a shepherd to guard his sheep. When, therefore, the prince does not fulfill his duty as protector; when he oppresses his subjects, destroys their ancient liberties, and treats them as slaves, he is to be considered, not a prince but a tyrant. As such the estates of the land [that is, the assembly of delegates, like our Congress] may lawfully and reasonably depose him, and elect another in his room." And so the Dutch deputies, gathered at The Hague, proceeded to depose Philip and to elect in his place the patriot William and another prince. Inside of two years, however, the noble Prince of Orange was assassinated, crying out as he fell, "God pity my poor country!"

Dutch Declaration of Independence

1581

The struggle with Spain continued, and William's son took his place in the government and in the army. There were more brave sieges, more battles on land and fighting on sea. Not for twenty-five years was the war quite over, and Holland[1] able to stand forth as a united

[1] The United Netherlands was frequently called Holland, as it still is, from the name of its largest and most important state.

and free country, a new member of the family of modern national states.

After that Holland prospered. The number of her ships increased and the boldness of her seamen. They harried Spaniards wherever they found them. They sailed into all the ports of the world and traded. They rounded Africa in the track of the Portuguese, who were then under the rule of Spain,[1] and took their Eastern empire from them. In 1609 Henry Hudson, an English seaman employed by Holland, seeking a new route to the Indies, discovered on the American shores the great river now called the Hudson, and claimed for Holland all the land that it drained. "The Dutch had made themselves the common carriers of the world," says a writer of the time. The inhabitants of Holland "sucked honey, like the bee, from all parts," says another. And all these prosperous Dutch merchants were haters of Spain.

Prosperity

Hudson, 1609

Spain and Her Enemies: 3. England

Spain had another bitter enemy — England. One reason for English hatred was commercial jealousy. England had become a trading nation. During the Middle Ages trade had been in other hands. Hanse ships had carried to her shores the products of the North, and Venetian ships the products of the East. But the Hanseatic League had grown weak as the new nations of Europe grew strong, had lost its great factories and many of its members. The Italian trade in the East had been spoiled by the Turks[2] and the new route around Africa,[3] and the Venetian galleys visited England less and less often. As trade dropped

English Trade Begins

[1] See page 419. [2] See page 346. [3] See pages 358–359.

out of the hands of these earlier merchants, Englishmen picked it up. They began to build better ships and to sail into distant waters after the goods that foreigners had once brought to them. Instead of sending their raw wool to Flemish towns, they had begun to weave it themselves and to send out the cloth.

These ambitious merchants saw a great new world opened up in America, a world full of riches, yet in this new world they were not permitted to set foot. Much of its gold found its way into England, for the Spanish colonies needed the grain and the cloth which England produced and Spain neglected, but Englishmen might not take their goods direct to America. They had to carry them to Spanish ports and there sell them to be loaded upon the Spanish ships of the colonial fleets. English traders felt that in this way many drops were spilled between the cup and the lip. They wanted to go, themselves, into this new land that was at once rich and hungry, and there trade foods and cloth for gold.

Another cause of England's hatred of Spain was the difference in religion. About 1534 England broke away from the Roman church, and became Protestant. Spain, on the other hand, boasted that there was not a heretic in her country. The Inquisition guarded the ports, lest foreign heretics should come in. Its officers boarded every incoming ship and examined the crew. Many an Englishman was arrested and thrown into prison for the crime of having an English Bible in his sea chest.

Religious Differences

Thus jealousy and religious difference made Englishmen and Spaniards enemies. If English sailors could slip into some unguarded harbor in Spanish America, unload a cargo and trade it to the people for gold, without being caught by the officials, they not only filled their pockets,

ENGLISH AND SPANISH

Sir Walter Raleigh, in the foreground, has captured a Spanish governor in America. Notice the Indians in the background and the Spanish city in flames.

but rejoiced that they had struck a little blow at the enemy of their land and their religion. Were not the rich ships of the Spanish fleet filled, not only with gold, but with men who imprisoned good English patriots? Therefore, if a ship in a storm should be driven away from its company, to drift alone on the broad sea, would it not be a just act for patriotic Englishmen to capture her? Many an English crew shouted a hearty "yes" to such a question.

Privateers and Pirates

English smacks that had once gone fishing to Iceland, now turned their prows southward, for there were better fish in the sea than cod, namely, Spanish galleons; and catching them was an act of patriotism. Trading goods for gold in Spanish towns was slow business for merchant ships, but trading cannon balls for gold on the high seas was a rich and exciting adventure and was done in the service of God and country. England had few warships, and dared not go to war with mighty Spain, but the English queen, Elizabeth, was glad to see her bold seamen prick the Spanish king with their private swords, so she only smiled and kept silent when he complained of her lawless citizens. When such sailors could get special letters from the queen, they were "privateers," that is, men who were privately doing their queen's work. But without these letters, they had to run the risk of being hanged as pirates if the Spaniards captured them. That risk they were willing to take in order to gather riches and to punish the Spanish king for abusing English seamen and to break down the Spanish fence around America.

Drake

Francis Drake was one of the boldest and most successful of these seamen. He was a very religious and patriotic man. He hated Catholics, and he hated Spaniards. He loved England, he loved his

"FRANCIS DRAKE

most noble knight of England, in the forty-third year of his age." So says the Latin above the picture. In the time of this knight armor was rare. If it was worn at all, it was much ornamented, like the helmet under Drake's hand. In the upper right-hand corner is Sir Francis' coat of arms, like those painted on earlier knightly shields.

queen, Elizabeth, he loved adventure, and he had no dislike for treasure. He never feared man or storm. He lived all his life on the sea and could fight as well as he could sail. For years he was the daredevil of the sea. The Spaniards called him "the dragon," "the demon." With two little ships and seventy-three men he sailed into the Spanish sea in the elbow of Central America, found the hiding place of Spanish treasure, made friends with Spain's enemies there, nursed forty of his men through the fever, slipped out of the fingers of a Spanish fleet, captured a mule train of treasure and a storehouse where lay "a pile of silver bars ten feet in breadth, ten feet in height, and seventy feet in length," took a town from a full Spanish garrison, scuttled one of his ships, filled the other with treasure, and sailed home under the very nose of the Spanish fleet.

On that trip, from a tree top on the Isthmus of Darien, Drake had caught sight of the Pacific Ocean, where an English ship had never floated, and he longed to sail it. So within a few months he manned five ships with a hundred sixty-four men and was off again. He swung across the south Atlantic to the very harbor on the far southern coast of America where Magellan had wintered fifty-eight years earlier.[1] Like Magellan he had to quell a mutiny. Two ships he had to break up and leave, because he had not men enough to work them in heavy weather. A terrible storm blew him southward and kept him for a month on the open sea, past Cape Horn, without chance of harbor. "The seas . . . were rolled up from the depths, even from the roots of the rocks . . . ; and being aloft were carried in most strange manner and abundance, as feathers or drifts of snow, by the violence of the winds, to water the exceeding tops of high and lofty

[1] See page 371.

mountains." Thus writes one who was on the expedition. Drake lost one ship in the great storm and was deserted by another.

Only one was left at last to work its way in better weather up the west coast of South America. Here his experience was very different from Magellan's. The Portuguese had cut westward across the empty ocean.[1] The Englishman hugged the coast northward, for he was after treasure and Spanish trouble. He found the wild coast planted with Spanish towns and met Spanish ships carrying treasure from one to another.

"In two barks here," says the journal, "we found some forty and odd bars of silver." In another they found "some fruits, conserves, sugars, meal, and other victuals, and . . . a certain quantity of jewels and precious stones, thirteen chests of royals of plate, eighty pound weight in gold, twenty-six ton of uncoined silver, two very fair gilt silver drinking bowls, and the like trifles." Once when they landed they "met a Spaniard with an Indian boy driving eight lambs or Peruvian sheep; each sheep bore two leathern bags, and in each bag was fifty pound weight of refined silver, in the whole eight hundred weight."

After filling their ship with all this Spanish treasure the Englishmen, because the love of exploring was on them, sailed far north along the shore, past our California and even up to our state of Washington. Somewhere on our coast they camped for many days and had much converse with the Indians, who were, the journal says, "a people of a tractable, free, and loving nature, without guile or treachery."

The English visited their houses, put ointment on their wounds and sores, preached to them, fed them.

[1] See page 372.

"Before we went from thence," the journal goes on, "our general caused to be set up a monument of our being there, as also of her Majesty's and successors' right and title to that kingdom, namely, a plate of brass, fast nailed to a great and firm post, whereon is engraven her Grace's name and the day and year of our arrival there."

The navigators hoped to find a sea passage through the land toward the east and home, but finding none and meeting cold weather, they at last turned across the sea toward Asia. It was a long and perilous voyage, threading a way through the Spice Islands amid storms and reefs and peoples friendly and unfriendly. But at last the "master thief of the unknown world" reached home. His worn-out ship, the *Golden Hinde*, was hauled up on the English shore, a banquet was given on board with all the great men of England doing honor to the bold adventurer. Queen Elizabeth herself was there, and afterward, on the deck, knighted the daredevil sailor and made him *Sir* Francis Drake.

But this trip around the world was only the beginning of his adventures. Once with a fleet of twenty-three ships he started south to "singe the king of Spain's beard." He ran into the great harbor of Cadiz, where lay a forest of merchant ships with ten great war galleys. With his little swift vessels he dipped under the very noses of the tall galleys, darted past them, poured shots into their sides, sunk more than twenty vessels, captured four loaded with provisions, slipped out of the narrow harbor mouth, and spent the night at anchor under the very eyes of the town. For a month more he swept the seas and the coasts of Spain, capturing forts, sinking or taking forty large ships and a hundred small ones.

Spain, of course, could not permit these insults to her

power. She wanted, moreover, to punish England for having helped the Dutch. During all Holland's brave fight the little country had looked to England for aid, partly because she, too, was Protestant and partly because she, too, hated and feared Spain. In answer English merchants sent two million dollars or more to William, and little parties of Englishmen "stole across the channel" to enter his army. But Queen Elizabeth dreaded to do anything that should push King Philip into war with her, so she hesitated long whether to send troops to aid the Dutch, but at last she did it. A year after the great William died one of her favorite earls sailed from England with six thousand soldiers, and for two years he was in Holland acting for some of the time as governor general.

England Helps Holland

King Philip had a dream of adding England to his realm and of forcing its people to become Catholic. He pretended to have some shadowy claim to its crown. So in 1588 a great Spanish fleet set sail for England, "the Invincible Armada," the Spaniards called it, for it was the greatest fleet ever yet assembled. There were one hundred thirty ships, the largest ships of the world, with great sails to catch the wind and sweeping oars to aid them. Hakluyt, an English writer of the time, describes the fleet. He says that the galleons "were of an huge bigness and very stately built . . . so high that they resembled great castles. . . . The upper works of the said galleons was of thickness and strength to bear off musket shot. The lower works and the timbers thereof were out of measure strong, being framed of planks or ribs four or five foot in thickness, in so much that no bullets could pierce them. . . . The galleasses [the largest ships of all] were of such bigness that they contained within them chambers, chapels, turrets, pulpits

"The Invincible Armada"

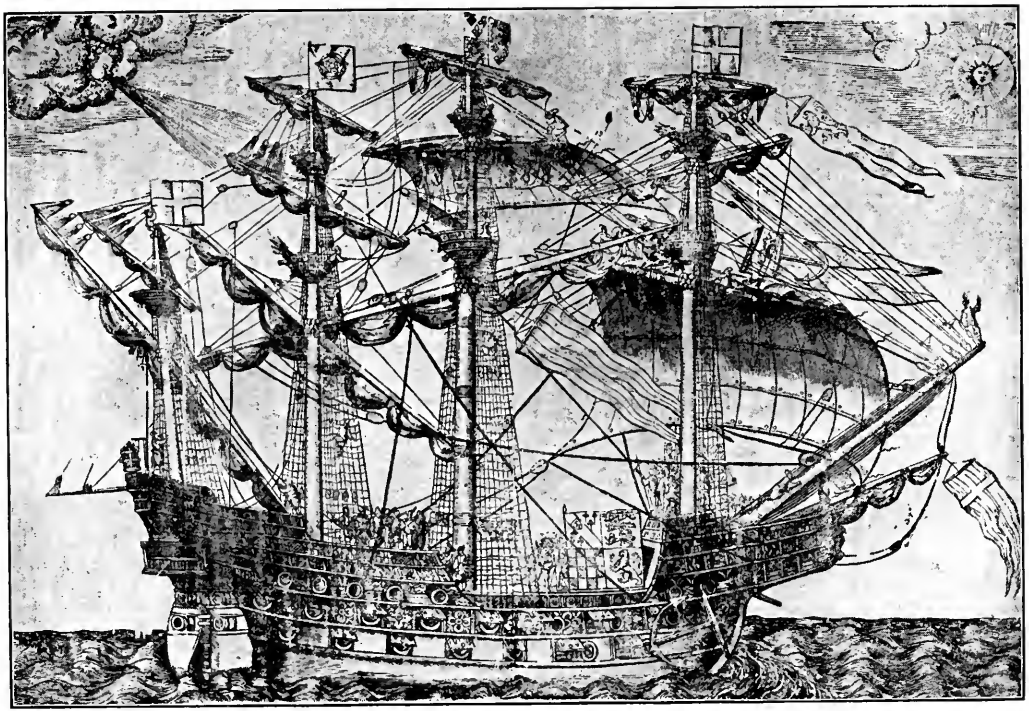
and other commodities of great houses. The galleasses were rowed with great oars, there being in each one of them three hundred slaves for the same purpose. . . . All these [ships] . . . were furnished and beautified with trumpets, streamers, banners, warlike ensigns and other such like ornaments."

On board the fleet were thirty thousand fighting men, and every man was filled with love of Holy Church and hatred of heretic England and of insulting English sailors. It was another crusade. At the masthead of the admiral's ship floated a banner with pictures of Christ and Mary, His mother, and the motto on it read, "Rise, O God, and vindicate your cause." Before the battle began, mass was said on every Spanish ship, and every Spanish sailor prayed for victory against the enemies of his country and his church. But the Englishmen, too, were fighting a religious war. "God give us grace to depend upon Him," wrote Drake in a letter just before the fight, "so we shall not doubt victory, for our cause is good."

The great fleet sailed northward to land her army on the shores of England, but the English sea dogs flew out at her.

The Fight

Their ships were of a build quite different from the Spanish. They were small, low, and light, without oars, but with better placed sails. The great Spanish galleons were like wallowing whales, the English vessels like skimming swallows. Two of them, indeed, were named by their proud owners *Swallow* and *Antelope*. These swift little ships could repeat the savage play of Drake in the harbor of Cadiz. As Hakluyt says, "Albeit there were many excellent and warlike ships in the English fleet, yet scarce were there twenty-two or twenty-three among them all which matched ninety of the Spanish ships in bigness or could conveniently assault them. Wherefore the English ships, using their



THE *ARK ROYAL*

The British flagship in the Armada fight

. . . nimble steerage, whereby they could turn and wield themselves with the wind which way they listed, came oftentimes very near upon the Spaniards and charged them so sore that now and then they were but a pike's length asunder."

The men who sailed those seaworthy ships were sons of the sea. Only fifty-three of the hundred ninety-seven ships belonged to the government; the others were owned by the merchants and fishermen who for years had been learning their lessons of seamanship and daring in plundering Spain. It was old privateers who fought and won the nine-day fight, with its retreats and advances, its roar of cannon, its sinking ships, its fire ships drifting by night into the Spanish fleet.

To end all came a great storm that wrecked the retreating Spanish vessels, so that, says Hakluyt, "of one hundred thirty ships which set sail out of Portugal, there returned home fifty-three only, small and great." After the victory, there were solemn festivals in England and prayers in the churches. Queen Elizabeth rode through London, down streets hung with blue cloth and decked with captured Spanish banners.

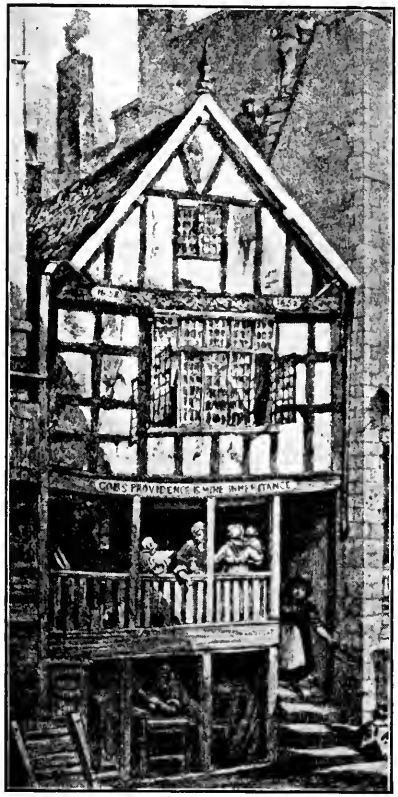
The defeat of the Invincible Armada was an inspiration to England. "The sea is ours," Englishmen thought; "why not the shores of it?" The world was open to them, trade prospered. In order to feed that trade, manufactures flourished at home, money poured into England, and life became more gorgeous for the nobles and more comfortable for the commoners. Noblemen "wore a manor on their backs," and rich merchants dressed like nobles, in gay velvets and silks, with slashes and puffs. New houses were built with windows of glass, so that the sunshine flooded in where in the old days had been unhealthful gloom. Even poor

Prosperity

THE ARMADA FIGHT

The large ship in the foreground is the Spanish flagship. Note the paintings. Dover in England and Calais in France show where the fight is taking place

men's houses began to have chimneys and clean air and pleasant fireplaces. Well-made chairs and bedsteads began to take the place of the rude benches and straw pallets of earlier days. There were comfortable pillows on many a common man's bed, and even carpets on his floor. On his table were dishes of pewter or silver instead of the old wooden bowls, and good fresh meat oftener took the place of the cheap salt fish.



GOD'S PROVIDENCE HOUSE

Built in 1652, it still copies the style of Queen Elizabeth's time. It was given its name because its inhabitants escaped the plague. Before the days of numbering houses, names for them were convenient

Men's minds, too, became more active. Young nobles and commoners, alike, flocked to the universities, and grammar schools were numerous. Englishmen went everywhere, especially to the great cities of France and Italy, and brought back books and learning and new ideas. The science of astronomy was being remade. For hundreds of years men had thought of the earth as the center of the universe, with sun, moon, and stars swinging about it. Now, however, in 1543, a Polish scientist, Copernicus,

Learning

ROYAL PROCESSION OF QUEEN ELIZABETH TO VISIT A LORD

declared the sun to be the center. Some years later the Italian Galileo perfected the telescope, and after that hardly a month passed without a new discovery in the heavens. Medical discoveries also were being made, and in 1628 Harvey, an English surgeon, found out how the blood circulates through the body.

With so much happening in war, industry, science, and exploration men were driven to writing to express the ideas teeming in their minds. Printing presses became common in England, and the land was flooded with histories, books of travel, sermons, stories, essays, plays, poetry. Some one says that "England became a nest of singing birds." Learning now counted as much as noble blood. Queen Elizabeth's wise ministers were not great nobles but learned commoners. The poets to whom all England listened were many of them sons of cobblers or tradesmen. Shakespeare, the greatest of them all, was a tanner's son. Noblemen now had more to think of than in the old days when war had been their only occupation. Courtiers talked of poetry and philosophy and geography. Many of them could write a poem as well as dance a minuet or swing a sword or sail a ship.

Literature

England in America

One of the great men of the time was Richard Hakluyt. He did much to make Englishmen love the sea, to make England proud of her sailors, to encourage his countrymen to colonize America. He was a professor of geography and map-making in Oxford University. Of himself he says: "I read over whatsoever printed or written discoveries and voyages I found extant, either in the Greek, Latin, Italian, Spanish, Portugal, French or English languages. I grew familiarly acquainted with the chiefest captains at sea, the greatest

Hakluyt

merchants, and the best mariners of our nation." He determined to make the noble story of English seamanship known to the world. He printed all the stories he could find of English exploration. He called attention to Cabot's early discovery[1] and urged England to take North America for her own. He wrote a description of Virginia and an appeal to his countrymen to colonize it.[2] It seemed to him that God had reserved the new lands north of Florida for the English to occupy, while the Spanish might hold those to the south.

Sir Humphrey Gilbert

A few years before the Armada fight a noble English gentleman, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, determined "to discover, possess, and to reduce unto the service of God and Christian piety," as Hakluyt says, "those remote and heathen countries of America not actually possessed by Christians and most rightly [belonging] unto the crown of England," because of Cabot's discovery. With the help of interested friends he fitted out two expeditions. On the second he sailed to Newfoundland and set up on its shores the arms of England. But he was a man "of no good hap by sea," and on the return voyage in a great storm he went down with one of his ships, saying, "We are as near to heaven by sea as by land."

Raleigh's Colony

Gilbert's half brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, was unwilling to let Gilbert's work be quite swallowed by the sea. He was a many-sided man. He had been on voyages with Drake. He had gained Queen Elizabeth's favor by gay and courtly behavior. He had played his part in war. He had written poems,

[1] See page 368.

[2] It is in his greatest book, "The Principal Navigations, Voyages, Traffics, and Discoveries of the English Nation," that we read of the work of Drake, Cabot, Gilbert, Raleigh, and many others, and learn much of what we know about their voyages.

and had gained great wealth. After Gilbert's death Raleigh sent three parties in different years to make settlements in America. All the attempts were sad failures. On the little island of Roanoke in Pamlico Sound the first party of about two hundred settlers landed in the summer of 1585 and spent a winter harassed with Indian troubles and fear of starvation. Sir Francis Drake passed that way in the next summer, after one of his raids on Spanish America, and the distressed party gladly left the wilderness and returned with him to England.

An Indian of Virginia

From the water-color drawing by John White of Raleigh's expedition of 1585

They had scarcely gone before relief ships came from Raleigh and left provisions and a party of fifteen men. The next year another party of settlers came to the island but found no trace of the fifteen men — a sad hint. This new party landed, and their ships sailed away to get more provisions. They planned to return in a few months, but meantime the Armada fight was threatening, England needed every ship, men had no time to think of America. For four years the little company of Englishmen were alone in the wilderness, cut off from the world and at the mercy of the Indians. When

at last a relief party did come, they found only ruins of houses, a deserted fort, broken chests, discarded tools, all overgrown with grass. The settlers had disappeared, and the Indians would tell no tales. Thus in sorrow and disaster began the English settlements in America. But Englishmen were not to be discouraged. Other expeditions came, and in 1607 Jamestown was successfully founded, the first permanent settlement of England in the new world.

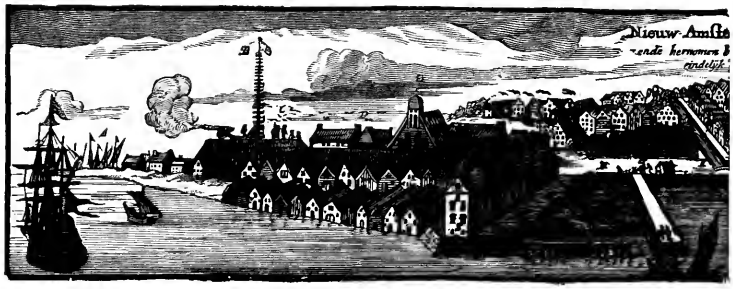
In those early years men came for commerce, and they got from the king permission to trade, just as merchants did who wished to buy and sell in the cities of Europe.[1] But in order to get the riches of this new country, Englishmen had to build houses, work the ground, cut the timber, trap the fur-bearing animals. They needed to own land and build towns. The land belonged to the English king. Therefore traders going there and colonists settling there must get his consent.

So there grew up the custom of chartering companies for trading and colonizing. A number of men would make plans to form a company for settling and trading in America; each member would furnish a certain amount of money and would expect in return a certain amount of the profits. After their plan was made they would present themselves to the king. If he favored the idea, he would give them a signed permission, called a patent. In this patent he gave tracts of land to the company. He also laid down rules for its governing; for these settlers across the ocean were still his subjects, and he considered it his duty to protect them.

Chartered Companies

Queen Elizabeth had given such patents to many companies desiring to trade and settle in different parts of the old world. There was the Russia Company, the Cathay or China Company, the Baltic Company, the

[1] See page 336.



THE TOWN OF NEW AMSTERDAM, OR NEW YORK

Notice the cannon, the stockade, the Dutch windmill

Turkey Company, the Morocco Company, the Africa Company, the East India Company. The kings who followed Elizabeth granted charters to trade in America to the Newfoundland Company, the Bermuda Company, the Plymouth Company, the New England Company, the Massachusetts Bay Company, the Hudson Bay Company.

England's Rivals in the New World

The French in Canada

In the meantime Holland and France were doing the same thing — all picking plums from Spain's tree in America, all claiming that Spain's share lay to the south, all exploring the northern coast and claiming what was found, all chartering companies, all trying to make settlements and to hold their new-found lands. The French began slowly to work their way up the St. Lawrence River, exploring its banks and the forests that led back from them, making friends with the natives, trading for furs, using the Indians as guides to the great inland seas of which they told. By the year 1615 they had gone on foot or canoe as far as Lake Ontario and had tramped across the country to the eastern shore of Lake Huron. For the next seventy years the wonderful waterway of the

As It Appeared in 1673

Compare this Dutch town with the Spanish San Domingo nearly a century earlier pictured on page 383

Great Lakes and their connecting rivers was the road that led Frenchmen on and on into the western wilderness, planting forts and missions and trading posts all the way from the mouth of the St. Lawrence to the heart of the Mississippi Valley. By 1615, however, they had made only two settlements, one in Nova Scotia and one at Quebec.

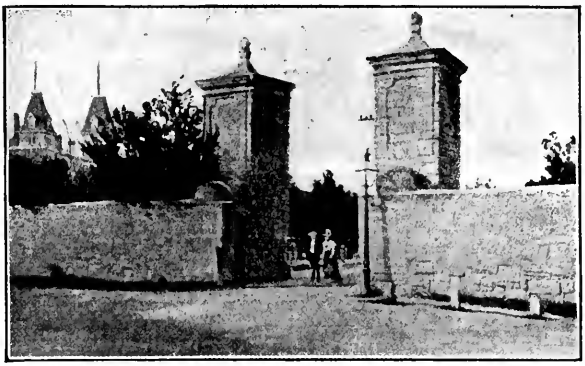
South of the French country the Dutch founded a colony at the mouth of the Hudson, and England was beginning settlements further south. Thirteen years after her colony at Jamestown she planted another at Plymouth. These were coast towns, looking back to England across the sea. It was long before Englishmen reached the mountains far behind them and began to thread their way across into the unknown wilderness beyond.

Dutch and English Settlements

South of Virginia, where Jamestown was, all the western world, except for Brazil, was Spain's. She was little interested, however, in the country north of Mexico, and except for Santa Fé in the distant southwest, she had planted only one colony there, St. Augustine in Florida.

Spanish Towns

By 1623, then, there were in the country which was some time to be English-speaking America, seven towns — two French, two English, one Dutch, and two Spanish.



OLD SPANISH GATE AT ST. AUGUSTINE

It is still standing. St. Augustine is the only walled town in the United States

They were all mere villages with a few log houses, a little log fort to protect the settlers' bodies, and a log church to guard their souls. They were surrounded by Indians whom they did not trust. They lacked most of the things that they had been used to have in the old countries of Europe. Most of them were homesick much of the time, I have no doubt, eagerly waiting for a visiting ship to bring them a few letters from home, a few delicacies to eat and drink, a pretty bonnet or a bright ribbon, — something to make them forget for a little that they were dropped down in the wilderness all but cut off from civilization. Upon the few ships they were dependent, too, for the many necessities of life — for flour and ham, for sugar and cloth, for iron and paper and tools and furniture.

Six of these towns were on the eastern edge of a continent whose great size nobody had guessed. The Spaniards

had plunged a finger, one might say, into its southern edge by making their adventurous trip through our southwestern states.[1] Drake had touched the coast of California. France had pushed westward a thousand miles and was hoping that every step would bring her out to the Pacific, to a waterway through America to Asia. The Dutch and the English knew only a narrow fringe on the east coast. The great mass of the continent white men had never seen.

Yet the path to America had been made, and the door had been opened. Men found its soil as rich as that of Europe, its harbors as safe, its forests as beautiful, its climate as pleasant. To men in Europe who wanted to make money it offered its timber, its furs, its mines. To farmers who found land hard to get in Europe it opened broad, empty acres. To the Huguenots of France who found their Catholic rulers unfriendly and harsh, to Quakers and Puritans and Presbyterians and Catholics of England who found themselves annoyed and oppressed by the Episcopalian Church, the far-distant and unpeopled America offered an opportunity to worship according to their own consciences.

With the settling of America there had opened a new chapter in man's history. We might call it "New Homes in a New World." Into these new homes men carried as precious heirlooms the great books, the religion, the science, the art, the laws, the ideals of freedom and of honor, that all the ages had been toiling over. Out of these things Americans and their cousins across the Atlantic have gone on making new history. The tale is not finished. We are still making it to-day. After us our descendants will continue it. It is, perhaps, a never ending tale, and chapter rises out of chapter, age rests upon age, as do the stories of a lofty building.

[1] See page 380.

1. What connection do you see between trade and exploration? Between trade and the spread of civilization? **2.** How do you think civilized people, entering a new country, ought to treat the uncivilized natives? **3.** Find out when the different states of South America became independent of Spain. **4.** Did Spain succeed in keeping her American colonies Spanish and Catholic? From encyclopedias or Shepherd's *Latin America* find what the speech and the religion of Mexico, the larger islands of the West Indies, and the South American states are to-day. **5.** What was the difference between the aims of Magellan and those of Drake? Which man do you admire more? **6.** Read "The Revenge," by Tennyson, a poem about a brave fight between a little English ship and fifty-three Spanish galleons. The *Revenge* had once been Drake's ship. **7.** Before 1600 what countries claimed land in North America? On what did they found their claims?

---

1. The story told by this book covers 2000 years and more. During that time what very great changes occurred in the world? What did the men of 1600 know that the Greeks did not know? What could they do that the Greeks could not do? What have we learned since 1600? **2.** Who are the great men of this book? Why are they great? **3.** What countries of Europe had not developed very far in unity and strength in 1600? Why do you think the northern countries were slower in developing than the southern? **4.** Imagine Greece, Rome, France, Germany, England, Spain, Portugal, Florence, Venice, each telling what she had done for the world up to 1600. Write their speeches. Costume members of the class to represent the various countries and let them walk on and make these speeches. Study the pictures of this book for the costume.

IMPORTANT DATES

GREECE

(The Greeks themselves counted time in Olympiads. Modern men have figured out that the first Olympic game-festival was held in 776 B.C. There were four years in this first Olympiad, until the second festival began the second Olympiad. According to the Greek reckoning, the battle of Marathon took place in the third year of the 72nd Olympiad. But many things happened before the first Olympiad. These the Greeks could not date accurately. The events from which grew the legends of the Trojan war, the voyages of Odysseus and the Argonauts, and the founding of all the great cities on the islands of the Ægean and the mainland of Greece, are some of these early happenings.)

B.C. 785	First Greek settlement on the Black Sea.
776	Beginning of first Olympiad.
736	First settlement in Sicily.
600	Founding of Massilia.
490	Battle of Marathon.
480	Battles of Thermopylæ and Salamis.
479	Battle of Platæa.
438	Completion of Parthenon.
404	Humbling of Athens by Sparta.
371	Humbling of Sparta by Thebes.
338	Philip's conquest of Greece.
336	Alexander becomes king.
334	Alexander's first battle in Asia.
332	Founding of Alexandria.
323	Death of Alexander.

ROME

(The Romans counted time from the founding of Rome. That happened so far back that they did not know accurately when it was. But the date that they set is, according to our way of counting time, 753 B.C. Cæsar became sole ruler of Rome the 709th year after the founding of the city. That is the way the Romans expressed it. This means that 708 years had passed between the founding of Rome and the victory of Cæsar. By subtracting 708 from 753 we find that according to our method of marking dates, Cæsar became ruler in 45 B.C.)

B.C. 753	Supposed founding of Rome.
509 (?)	Kings expelled.
266	Rome mistress of Italy.
264–241	First Punic war.
218–201	Second Punic war.
167	Macedon (Greece) conquered.
149–146	Third Punic war.
146	Carthage and Corinth destroyed.
66–63	Pompey conquers Asia Minor and Syria.
58–50	Cæsar conquers Gaul.
49–45	Cæsar fights civil war and becomes sole ruler.
A.D. 85	Britain is conquered.
211	All freemen in the empire are given citizenship.
313	Constantine gives Christians privilege of worship.

GERMAN CONQUESTS

A.D.	376	West Goths cross the Danube into the Roman empire.
	378	West Goths defeat the emperor at Adrianople.
	395	Alaric king of the Goths. They plunder Greece.
	410	Alaric sacks Rome.
	415	Adolf and the West Goths settle in Gaul and Spain.
	429	Vandals conquer Roman Africa and set up kingdom.
	486	Clovis and the Franks begin conquest of Gaul.
	493	East Goths rule Italy.
	496	Franks under Clovis become Christian.

GERMANY AND FRANCE

A.D.	732	Franks defeat Moors and prevent invasion of Frankland.
	771	Charlemagne king of the Franks.
	800	Charlemagne emperor of Holy Roman Empire.
	803	Saxony conquered.
	814	Charlemagne dies. Empire begins to crumble.

Germany

911	Feudal dukes choose one of themselves king. King is usually emperor also.
936	Emperors become strong.
1100–1250	Growth of free cities.
1212–1250	Frederick II king.
1254–1273	Empire falls into confusion.
1273	Austria becomes strong under Hapsburgs.
1370	Greatest strength of Hanseatic League.
1519	Charles V is chosen emperor.
1525	Peasants' war against nobles and churchmen.
1520–1648	Religious troubles and wars.

France

911	Northmen settle in Normandy.
987	Feudal lords choose Hugh Capet king.
1100–1250	Growth of free cities.
1226–1270	St. Louis (Louis IX) rules.
1337–1453	Hundred Years' War with England.
1358	Peasant uprising.
1494	Italian wars begin.
1572	Massacre of Huguenots (St. Bartholomew's Day).
1589	Henry IV, a Protestant, becomes king; later turns Catholic, but grants freedom of worship to Protestants.

ENGLAND

A.D. 411	Roman legions recalled from Britain.
449	Angles and Saxons begin to conquer Britain.
829	Egbert becomes overlord of all England.
871–901	Alfred king.
793(?)–1016	Danes often invade England.
1016–1042	Danish kings rule England.
1066	Norman William conquers England.
1100–1250	Growth of free cities.
1100–1350	Rise and growth of merchant and craft gilds.
1154–1189	Henry II makes good laws.
1215	John compelled to grant Magna Charta.
1337–1453	Hundred Years' War with France.
1362 (?)	Piers Plowman written.
1381	Great Revolt of peasants.
1485	Tudor kings begin to build up strong national power.
1558–1603	Elizabeth queen (the last Tudor).
1564–1616	Shakespeare lives.
1588	England defeats the Spanish Armada.

SPAIN, PORTUGAL, AND THE NETHERLANDS

A.D. 711	Mohammedans begin to conquer Spain. Christian kingdoms slowly grow in northern mountains.
1140	Portugal becomes independent.
1248–1354	Alhambra built. High state of Moorish civilization.
1469	Christian Spain united by marriage of Ferdinand and Isabella.
1492	Ferdinand and Isabella conquer the Moors.
1502	First negro slaves sent to America.
1516	Hapsburg Charles (later Emperor Charles V) becomes king of Spain.
1556–1598	Philip II king of Spain.
1564	Spanish war with Netherlands begins.
1574	Siege of Leyden.
1580–1640	Kings of Spain rule Portugal.
1581	Dutch declaration of independence.
1584	William of Orange assassinated.

THE EAST

A.D.	622	Mohammed flees from Mecca.
	630	Mohammed conquers Arabia.
	634–644	Arabian Mohammedans conquer Syria, Persia, Egypt.
	708	Arabian Mohammedans conquer northern Africa.
	786	Arabian empire at height. Haroun-al-Raschid caliph.
	1040	Seljuk Turks (Mohammedans) begin to conquer western Asia.
	1096	Crusades begin.
	1099–1187	Kingdom of Jerusalem maintained by crusaders.
	1237	Mongols begin conquest of Russia.
	1259–1294	Kublai Khan emperor of China.
	1300–1450	Ottoman Turks found an empire in Asia Minor and southeastern Europe. (Modern Turks are Ottomans.)
	1453	Ottoman Turks conquer Constantinople, last remnant of Roman empire.
	1500–1517	Ottoman Turks conquer Syria and Egypt.

THE CHURCH

A.D.	440	Leo I the first great pope.
	526(?)	St. Benedict founds Benedictine order of monks.
	597	St. Augustine begins conversion of England.
	716	Boniface begins work among Germans.
	1075	Struggle between popes and emperors begins.
	1096–1270	Crusades.
	1200–1300	Many universities founded.
	1210	St. Francis founds Franciscan order of preaching friars.
	1215	St. Dominic founds Dominican order.
	1466	First German Bible printed.
	1480	Spanish Inquisition established.
	1517	Luther in Germany begins Protestant Revolt.
	1532	Calvin preaches Protestantism in France.
	1534	English church under Henry VIII breaks away from pope.
	1539	First English Bible printed.
	1540	St. Ignatius Loyola founds order of Jesuits to counteract Protestantism.
	1545–1563	Catholic Church holds Council of Trent, restates creed, reforms practices.

INVENTIONS, EXPLORATIONS, AND SETTLEMENTS

A.D. 860 (?)	Norsemen discover Iceland.
985	Norsemen discover Greenland.
1000	Norsemen land on shore of North America.
1271–1295	Marco Polo's travels in Asia and life in China.
1320–1340	Europe begins use of gunpowder.
1350–1450	Paper becomes common.
1419	Prince Henry begins his explorations.
1435	Cape Bojador is passed.
1445–1454	Printing with movable type.
1472	First sailors' almanac is published, showing height of sun and stars at different times in various places.
1480	Astrolabe used at sea for finding latitudes.
1487	Diaz rounds the Cape of Good Hope.
1492	Columbus discovers America.
1497	Da Gama sails to India.
	Cabot discovers North America.
1513	Balboa discovers the Pacific Ocean.
1519–1521	Cortez conquers Mexico.
1519–1522	Magellan's ship sails around the world.
1531–1533	Pizarro conquers Peru.
1534	Cartier discovers the St. Lawrence River.
1541	De Soto discovers the Mississippi River.
1543	Copernicus publishes a book giving a new theory of astronomy.
1564	Coligny sends a Huguenot colony to Florida.
1565	Spanish found St. Augustine in Florida.
	Huguenot settlement destroyed by Spaniards.
1577–1580	Drake sails around the world.
1582	Hakluyt publishes first book of voyages.
1583	Sir Humphrey Gilbert's last voyage.
1585	Raleigh's company makes first English settlement in America.
1603–1608	Champlain makes voyages to Canada.
1607	Jamestown founded by England.
1608	Quebec founded by France.
1609	Galileo perfects telescope.
	Hudson discovers the Hudson River.
1614	Dutch trading posts on the Hudson.
1615	French as far west as Lake Huron.
1620	Plymouth founded by England.
1623	New Amsterdam founded by Holland.

INDEX

Pronunciation according to Webster's New International Dictionary.

KEY: ā, as in āle; ȧ, as in ȧm; ă, as in fi′-năl; ä, as in ärm; ȧ, as in ȧsk; ȧ, as in so′-fȧ; ē, as in ēve; ḙ, as in ḙ-vent′; ĕ, as in ĕnd; ĕ, as in no′-vĕl; ẽ, as in ev′-ẽr; g, as in go; ī, as in īce; ı̄, as in ı̄ll; ō, as in ōld; o͝o, as in to͝o-bac′-co; o͝o, as in fo͝ot; th, as in thin; ū, as in ūse; u͝, as in u͝-nite′; û, as in ûrn or her; ŭ, as in ŭp; ŭ, as in cir′-cŭs; N, as in French bon.

Acropolis (ȧ-krŏp′-o͝-lĭs), 38–40.
Adolf (ā′-dolf), 147–148.
Adrianople (ād′-rĭ-ăn-ō′-p'l), 145.
Ægina (ḙ-jī′-nȧ), 38.
Æschylus (ĕs′-kĭ-lŭs), *quoted*, 58–59.
Africa, Greeks visit, 12, 18, 43; Romans conquer, 114, 325; Moors conquer, 326, 379; map of, 343; Portuguese voyages around coast, 349–360, 374, 377, 381–382, 393.
Agricola (ȧ-grĭk′-o͝-lȧ), 120–121, 122.
Agriculture, German, 142; medieval, 250–253.
Alaric (ăl′-ȧ-rĭk), 146–147.
Alexander, 62–69.
Alexandria, 69–70, 128, 341, 344.
Alfred, 187–192.
Alva (äl′-vä), duke of, 390, 391.
America, voyages to, 159, 367, 369, 371, 375; Spaniards in, 379–385; Huguenots in, 387–388; Dutch in, 393; English in, 394–400, 408–415.
Angelo (ăn′-jḙ-lō), Michael, 273.
Angles, 181–184.
Anglo-Saxons, 181–192, 199–200.
Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, *quoted*, 182–184, 194–196, 197–198.
Aphrodite (ăf-rō-dī′-tḙ), 27, 28.
Apollo (ȧ-pŏl′-ō), 21.
Apphianus (ăp-fī-ā′-nŭs), 132–133.
Apprentice (ă-prĕn′-tĭs), 265.
Arabia, 43, 286, 322–323.
Argonauts (är′-gŏ-nȯts), 3–4, 14.
Aristotle (ăr′-ĭs-tŏt′-'l), 67.
Armada (är-mā′-dȧ), 401–405.
Armor, Greek, *picture*, 58; Roman, 106–107; German, 143; Norman, *pictures*, 194–196; medieval, 231–232; *pictures*, 226, 229, 237, 238, 248.
Army, Persian, 56; Roman, 84, 86, 105–110; Charlemagne's, 153–154.
Artemis (är′-tḙ-mĭs), 21.
Arthur, King, 239.
Assembly, 51, 154, 185–187.
Asser, *quoted*, 187–188, 190, 191–192.
Assyria (ă-sĭr′-ĭ-ȧ), *pictures*, 2, 3.
Astrolabe (ăs′-trŏ-lāb), 344.
Athene (ȧ-thē′-nē), 21, 23, 24; *picture*, 37.
Athens, 23, 38–45, 51–52, 59–61, 159, 271.
Augur (ô′-gŭr), 82.
Augustine, 297.
Augustus, 129.
Azores (ȧ-zōrz′), 355.

Balboa (bäl-bō′-ä), 379.
Ball, John, 259–262.
Banquet, 244; *picture*, 246.
Baptistry, 273; *pictures*, 269, 274.
Baths, 119, 121.
Battering ram, 102, 227; *pictures*, 104, 226.

Bavaria, 164.
Bede (bēd), *quoted*, 297.
Behaim (bā'-hīm), *maps*, 357, 362.
Belgium, 118, 150.
Benedict (bĕn'-ĕ-dĭkt), 302–303; rule of, 303–307, 312.
Beowulf (bā'-ō-wo͝olf), 181–182.
Bergen (bûr'-gĕn), 285.
Bishop, 299.
Black Sea, 4, 14, 16, 43, 128, 329.
Bojador (bŏj-*ȧ*-dōr'), Cape, 353.
Boniface (bŏn'-ĭ-fās), 298.
Books, 308–311; *pictures*, 46–47, 122.
Brazil, 369, 370, 385.
Britain (brĭt'-'n), 8, 17, 43, 120–122, 128, 181–184.
Bruges (bro͞o'jĕz), 285.

Cabot, John, 368.
Cæsar (sē'zȧr), Julius, 99–110, 115, 118, 120.
California, 399, 415; *picture*, 314.
Calvin, John, 338, 387.
Camp, Roman, 107–109.
Canada, 368.
Cannæ (kăn'-ē), 94.
Cape of Good Hope, 356, 359, 370, 374.
Capetians (kȧ-pē'-shănz), 175.
Carthage, 8, 90–96, 98, 105.
Cartier (kär'tyā'), 377, 385, 388.
Castle, 163, 217–227.
Catapult (kăt'-*ȧ*-pŭlt), 101–102, 227; *picture*, 104.
Cathedral, *picture*, 301.
Chalcis (kăl'-sĭs), 38.
Charlemagne (shär'-lĕ-mān), 151–157, 163–164.
Charles V, 385, 388; *picture*, 386.
Charter, Great, 207–212.
Chartered companies, 411–412.
Charters, 204, 207–212.
Chaucer (chô'-sẽr), *quoted*, 233.
China, 74, 287, 288, 328, 341, 346, 347–349, 355, 360, 361, 365, 411.
Chivalry, time of, 247–248.
Christianity, beginning of, 128–135.
Chronicles, 182, 311–312.
Church councils, 300, 340.
Cicero (sĭs'-ẽr-ō), *quoted*, 114.
City, Greek, 38; Roman, 78; English, 202–204; *pictures*, 269, 331.
Clovis (klō'-vĭs), 149–151.
Coligny (kō'-lēn'-yē'), 387.
Colonies, Greek, 13–19; in America, 380–385, 409–415.
Columbus, 360–368, 369, 385.
Compass, 342.
Constantine (kŏn'-stăn-tīn), 134–135, 145, 325.
Constantinople, 145, 290, 325, 331, 332, 337, 346.
Consuls, 84.
Copernicus (kō-pûr'-nĭ-kŭs), 406.
Corinth (kŏr'-ĭnth), 38, 98, 130.
Cortez (kôr'-tĕz), 379.
Costume, Assyrian, *pictures*, 2, 3; Greek, *pictures*, 20, 24, 33, 35, 37, 41, 46, 47; Persian, *pictures*, 53, 55, 56, 66; Roman, 78; *pictures*, 80, 81, 83, 85, 134; German, 141–142; *pictures*, 143, 150; Saxon, 182; medieval, 156, 244–245; *pictures*, 178, 202, 203, 206, 211, 259, 261, 266, 270, 272, 279, 289, 292, 294, 309; religious, *pictures*, 165, 296, 299, 304, 305, 306, 308. *See also* Armor.
Counts, 153, 154, 174.
Crossbow, 234.
Croyland, monastery of, 313.
Crusades, 329–333.

Da Gama, *see* Gama.
Danes, 190–192, 298.
Darien (dā'-rĭ-ĕn'), 379, 398.
Delian (dē'-lĭ-*ȧ*n), Confederacy, 59–61.
Demeter (dḗ-mē'-tẽr), 21; *picture*, 20.
Denmark, 157, 158, 281, 339.
De Soto, 380.
Diaz (dī'ȧs), 356.
Dionysus (dī'-ō-nī'-sŭs), 21, 39.
Doge (dōj), 291–293.
Domain, 249.
Doomsday Book, 197–198.

Drake, Francis, 396–400, 402, 409, 415.
Dukes, 163, 173, 174.
Dutch, the, *see* Netherlands.

Eannes, Gil, 353.
East, the, 286–287; Rome's conquest of, 96–98; Portuguese empire in, 359, 393.
Egbert, 185.
Egypt, 18, 43, 69, 97, 128.
Einhard (īn′-härt), *quoted*, 156.
Elizabeth, Queen, 336, 396, 398, 400, 401, 404, 408, 409, 411, 412; *pictures*, frontispiece, 407.
Emperor, Roman, 115, 117; Holy Roman, 152, 162, 164–173.
England, 181–212.
Eratosthenes (ĕr′-ȧ-tŏs′-thē̆-nēz), 69.
Etruria (ē̆-troo̅′-rĭ-ȧ), 76, 77, 88.
Eusebius (ū̆-sē′-bĭ-ŭs), *quoted*, 132–133, 134–135.
Excommunication (ĕks′-kŏ-mū-nĭ-kā′-shŭn), 170.
Exploration, Greek, 3–11; Viking, 159; Portuguese, 349–360, 369; Spanish, 360–368, 369–375, 379–380; English, 368, 398–400; French, 377, 412–413; Dutch, 393.

Factories (trading), Greek, 12–13; Hanseatic, 285; Venetian, 290.
Fairs, 288–290.
Ferdinand, King, 363, 385.
Feudalism (fū′-dăl-ĭz'm), 214–217.
Florence, 269–277, 290, 295.
Florida, 380, 387, 409, 413.
Fort Caroline, 387.
Forum (fō′-rŭm), Roman, 79–80.
France, 173–180, 375, 377, 385–388.
Francis I, King, 377, 385.
Francis, Saint, 316–317.
Frankland, East, 161–163.
Frankland, West, 162, 173–174.
Franks, 141, 148–151.
Frederick II, 168–172, 281, 293.
Froissart (froi′-särt), 237; *quoted*, 258–262.
Funeral, Roman, 86.

Galileo (găl′-ĭ-lē′-ō), 408.
Gama, Vasco da, 356–359.
Gauls, 12, 17; Cæsar's war with, 99–110; civilization of, 118–120; Goths conquer, 148; Franks conquer, 149–150, 162.
Genoa (jĕn′-ō-ȧ), 290, 361.
Germans, 128, 141–144; missionaries among, 298.
Germany, 163–173, 281, 284, 298.
Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 409.
Gild merchant, 263–264.
Gilds, craft, 265–268; emblems of, 275–276; changes in, 294–295; entertain pilgrims, 319.
Golden Fleece, 3, 4, 14.
Golden Hinde, 400.
Gonçalves (gôn-säl′-vĕsh), 353–354.
Gŏths, 141, 144–148.
Greece, 2–73; Rome conquers, 97, 98, 110, 128, 130, 136, 137–138.
Greenland, 159.
Guinea (gĭn′-ĭ), 361.
Gulf of Mexico, 380.
Gunpowder, 247.

Hakluyt (hăk′-loo̅t), 408–409; *quoted*, 401–402, 404.
Hamilcar (hă-mĭl′-kär), 92.
Hannibal, 92–95.
Hanseatic League (hăn′-sē̆-ăt′-ĭk lēg), 281–285, 288–289, 393.
Hapsburgs, 385.
Harold, King, 194; *picture*, 195.
Hastings, battle of, 194.
Hawking, 240–241.
Helleston, 204.
Hengist, 182, 183.
Henry II, of England, 200–202.
Henry the Navigator, 350–355.
Hephæstus (hē̆-fĕs′-tŭs), 21.
Herakles, 4.
Hermes (hûr′-mēz), 21, 28–29; *pictures*, 28, 35.
Herodotus, *quoted*, 8, 11, 12, 55, 59, 74–75.
Hestia (hĕs′-tĭ-ȧ), 42.
Holland, 150, 160, 392, 393, 401, 412.

Horatius, 88.
Horsa, 182.
House, Greek, 40, 42; Roman, 78; German, 142; medieval, 256, 264–265.
Hudson, Henry, 393.
Huguenots (hū′-gē-nŏts), 387, 415.
Huns, 145, 161.
Hunting, 239–240.

Iceland, 159.
India, 128, 286, 288, 355, 356–360.
Inquisition, 339–340, 384–385, 388, 390, 394.
Isabella, Queen, 363.
Italy, Greek colonization of, 12, 16; Rome conquers, 74–77; Hannibal enters, 93–95; Goths plunder, 147; Lombards in, 152, 171–172; Florence, 269; war over, 385.

Jamestown, 411, 413.
Jason, 3–4.
Jerusalem, 321–322, 330; *picture*, 331.
Jesuit (jĕz′-ū-ĭt), 339, 340.
Jesus, 129.
John, King, 205–212.
Joinville (zhwăx′-vēl′), *quoted*, 176–177, 178.
Justinian, 138.

Knighting, 236–239.
Kublai Khan (kōō′-blī kän′), 347.

Ladrone Islands (là-drōn′), 373.
Langland, William, 257.
Langton, Stephen, 207.
Latins, 12, 76.
Launcelot (län′-sĕ-lŏt), 230, 232.
Leonidas (lē-ŏn′-ĭ-dȧs), 57.
Leyden (lī′-dĕn), siege of, 391.
Libraries, in Alexandria, 69; Charlemagne's, 156; of monasteries, 311.
Lombards, 141, 152, 171–172.
London, 285.
Lorraine (lŏ-rān′), 164.
Louis IX, 176–179, 317, 320.
Luther, Martin, 338.

Macedon (măs′-ē-dŏn), 19, 62, 97, 98, 130.
Magellan (mȧ-jĕl′-ăn), 369–375.
Magna Græcia (măg′-nȧ grē′-shĭ-ȧ), 17, 61, 77.
Malory, *quoted*, 230, 232, 236, 238.
Manor, 249–258.
Maps, making of, 69, 343–344.
Marathon, 54–55.
Market-place, Greek, 42–43; Roman, 78–79; English, 203; Florentine, 270–271.
Mars, 81.
Marseilles (mär-sālz′), 17.
Martyrs, Christian, 132–134.
Massilia, 17.
Menendez (mā-nĕn′-dāth), 387–388.
Mexico, 379, 380.
Miletus (mī-lē′-tŭs), 14.
Mines, 103, 227.
Minstrels, 241–242.
Missionaries, 130, 153, 187, 296–298.
Mississippi River, 380, 413.
Mohammed (mŏ-hăm′-ĕd), 323–324.
Monasteries, 300–316.
Montauban, siege of (môn′-tŏ-bäx), 224–227.
Moors, 328, 351, 363.
Moots, Anglo-Saxon, 185–187.
Movable tower, 102–103.
Mucius (mū′-shŭs), Caius (kā′yŭs), 88.

National states, 334–336.
Neco (nē′kō), 354.
Negroes, 354, 381–382, 384.
Netherlands, 388–393.
Newfoundland, 409.
Non (nŏn), Cape, 351, 353.
Normandy, 192–193.
Normans, 192–200.
Northmen *or* Norsemen, 157–160, 161.
Norway, 157, 158, 159, 281, 284, 288, 339.
Novgorod (nôv′-gŏ-rŏt), 285, 288, 289, 290, 291.

Odess'a, 14.
Odysseus (ŏ-dĭs'-ūs), 4–5.
Olympia, 29–34.
Olympus, 20.
Ostia (ôs'-tyä), 98.

Pacific Ocean, Balboa discovers, 379.
Page, 234–235.
Palestine (păl'-ĕs-tīn), 129, 326, 330.
Pan, 21.
Paris, France, 175, 176, 177.
Paris, Matthew, *quoted*, 169, 172, 178.
Parliament (pär'-lĭ-mĕnt), 187; *picture*, 186.
Parthenon (pär'-thĕ-nŏn), 23–25, 38; *picture*, 22.
Patricians (pā-trĭsh'-ănz), 84.
Paul, 130, 297.
Peddlers, 277–278.
Pericles (pĕr'-ĭ-klēz), 59–61; *quoted*, 51.
Persia, war with Greece, 53–59; Alexander conquers, 62–69; Mohammedans conquer, 326.
Peru, 379.
Phidias (fĭd'-ĭ-ăs), 24, 30.
Philip of Macedon, 62.
Philip II, of Spain, 388–390, 392.
Philippines, 373.
Phœnicians (fĕ-nĭsh'-ănz), 8, 11, 73, 354.
Picts, 181.
Pigafetta (pē-gä-fĕt'-tä), *quoted*, 371–375.
Pilgrims, 318–322.
Pindar, *quoted*, 32, 34.
Piræus (pī-rē'-ŭs), 43–44, 159.
Pirates, Rome conquers, 97, 98–99; Vikings, 157–160; Angles and Saxons, 181; medieval, 281.
Pizarro (pĭ-zär'-rō), 379.
Platæa (plȧ-tē'-ȧ), 59.
Plato (plā'-tō), *quoted*, 45–46.
Plebeians (plĕ-bē'-yănz), 84.
Plowing, 250, 252.
Plutarch (plōō'-tärk), *quoted*, 37, 55, 64–67.
Plymouth, 413.
Pnyx (nĭks), 51.
Poles, 281.
Polo, Marco, 347–349, 350.
Pompey, 98–99, 111.
Ponce de Leon (pōn'-thā dā lā-ōn'), 387.
Pope, crowns Charlemagne, 152; struggle with emperors, 164–173; ruler of church, 300.
Portugal, explorers of, 349–360, 361, 369, 370, 375; slave trade of, 382; loses Eastern empire, 393.
Poseidon (pō-sī'-dŏn), 21; *picture*, 20.
Praxiteles (prăk-sĭt'-ĕ-lēz), 28–29.
Printing, 336–337.
Privateers, 396.
Propontis (prō-pŏn'-tĭs), 3, 16.
Protestantism (prŏt'-ĕs-tănt-ĭz'-m), 337–339, 340.
Provinces, Roman, 114, 118–122.
Ptolemy (tŏl'-ē-mī), 350; *map*, 341.
Punic wars (pū'-nĭk), 90–96.

Quebec, 413.

Raleigh (rô'-lĭ), 409–410; *picture*, 395.
Renaud (rĕ-nō'), 224–227.
Revolt, Great, 258–262.
Richard I, 205, 333.
Roads, Roman, 121, 122–125; medieval, 253, 277; Chinese, 349.
Roanoke (rō'-ȧ-nōk'), 410.
Roger of Wendover, *quoted*, 206–209.
Rolf the Ganger (găng'-ĕr), 192, 193.
Romans, 12, 73, 74–139, 140, 141, 142, 145–148.
Romulus, 79.
Runnymede, 209.
Russia, 281, 288.

Saewulf, *quoted*, 322.
Sailing directions, 342–343.
Saint Augustine, Fla., 388, 413, 414.
Saint Gall (săn gȧl'), monastery, 316; *plan*, 315.
Saint Julian's Bay, 371, 398.

Saint Lawrence River, 377, 388, 412, 413.
Saints, 316–318.
Salamis (săl′-ā-mĭs), 58–59.
Santa Fé, 413.
Santa Maria, 363; *picture*, 366.
Saracens (săr′-ā-sĕnz), 322–333.
Saxons, 141, 151, 153, 181–184.
Schools, Greek, 45–47; Charlemagne's, 156; monastery, 308, 383.
Science, Greek, 47–48, 69–70; later, 406, 408.
Scythians (sĭth′-ĭ-ănz), 11, 14.
Senate, Roman, 84, 112.
Shakespeare, 408.
Ships, Greek, 10–11; Roman, 91, 92; Viking, 157; *picture*, 158; Norman, *pictures*, 193, 198; medieval, 280–281; *picture*, 321; later, 345–346; *pictures*, 366, 371, 374, 403, 405.
Shops, medieval, 264–265; *picture*, 266. *See also* Market-place.
Sicily (sĭs′-ĭ-lĭ), 8, 16–17, 91, 92, 94, 95, 96, 114, 128, 168, 169, 173, 328.
Slaves, 16, 113, 354, 381–382.
Socrates (sŏk′-rā-tēz), 48–51.
Spain, Greek settlements and trade, 8, 12, 17, 43; Carthaginians in, 90, 92, 93; Rome rules, 96, 114, 120, 128; Goths conquer, 148; Vikings visit, 159; Saracens rule, 326, 328; *picture*, 327; explorers of, 363–368, 369–377; colonies in America, 379–385, 413, 414; enemies of, 385–408.
Sparta, 36–37, 57, 61.
Spice, 278, 286, 349.
Squire, 235–236.
Sweden, 157, 158, 281, 298, 339.
Syria, 97, 98, 326.

Tacitus (tăs′-ĭ-tŭs), *quoted*, 120–121, 141–144.
Tarik (tä′-rĭk), 326.
Thebes (thēbz), 61.
Themistocles (thĕ-mĭs′-tŏ-klēz), 55–56, 57–58.
Thermopylæ (thēr-mŏp′-ĭ-lē), 57, 98.
Thor, 150.
Thorold, 313.
Thucydides (thū-sĭd′-ĭ-dēz), *quoted*, 60–61.
Tortoise (tôr′-tŭs), 103–105.
Tournament (tōōr′-nā-mĕnt), 229–230; *picture*, 237.
Trade, Greek, 12–18, 43; Roman, 127–128; medieval, 277–293; later, 336, 393–394.
Trading posts, Greek, 12–13; Hanseatic, 285; Venetian, 290–291.
Travel, Greek, 3–6; Roman, 124–127; medieval, 277, 278–279, 312, 318–322.
Triumph, Roman, 86–87, 111.
Troubadours (trōō′-bā-dōōrz), 243–247.
Turks, 329, 331, 346.

Vandals, 141.
Vassal, 214–217, 249–250, 254–256.
Vellum, 308–310.
Venice, 290–293.
Venus, 28; *picture*, 27.
Verrazano (vĕr-rät-sä′-nō), 377, 385.
Vespucius (vĕs-pū′-shŭs), 369.
Vesta (vĕs′-tā), 80.
Vestals, 80, 82.
Vikings (vī′-kĭngz), 157–160, 161, 182, 190–191, 192.
Villain, 250–263.
Virginia, 409, 410, 413.

Washington, state of, 399.
West Indies, Columbus discovers, 365–367, 369; Spaniards in, 380–384.
William the Conqueror, 192–200.
William of Malmesbury (mämz′-bĕr-ĭ), *quoted*, 199–200.
William of Orange, 390–392.
Witenagemot (wĭt′-ĕ-nā-gĕ-mōt′), 187.
Woden, 150, 185.

Xenophon (zĕn′-ō-fŏn), *quoted*, 49–50.
Xerxes (zûrk′-zēz), 55–58.

Zeus (zūs), 21, 30–31, 40; *picture*, 20.

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: MAY - 2002
PreservationTechnologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION
111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
00022091025